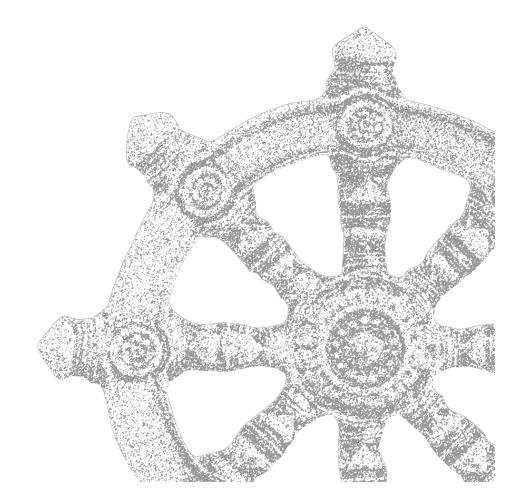


COURSE

THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 1

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 1-5



THE ASIAN CLASSICS

Thank you for your interest in the Asian Classics Institute's Correspondence Courses. A complete Formal Study Course consists of audio recordings from the original class series in New York, along with the supporting text materials from each class. The text and audio may be downloaded (see www.world-view.org in the on-line teachings section), or ordered by mail (see the Courses by mail section of the web site).

This Course consists of eleven classes, each of which has approximately one hour of audio, along with corresponding written materials. The audio can be ordered by mail, listened to on-line as streaming Real Audio, or downloaded onto your computer in mp3 or RA format for playback later. The written materials for this Course are contained in nine on-line files which can be downloaded, printed and assembled into a three-ring binder.

A complete Course binder contains the following sections in this order: a binder cover and spine, an overview of the teacher training program, prayers, a course syllabus, readings, class notes, homework, quizzes, a final examination, answer keys and Tibetan study materials. (The class notes were taken by a student in the original live classes, and you'll need these for reference as what's written on the board isn't always spoken.) For ease of binder assembly, be sure to print the files on three hole paper.

Please note that Geshe Michael taught the first half of each class in this Course. The second half of each class was conducted in smaller study groups, and was led by a student teacher. The second half of each class was not recorded.

Each class lecture has a corresponding reading, homework, quiz, meditation, and class notes. After listening to the audio from a class, the reading, homework, quiz and meditation should be completed for that class before continuing on to the next class. The homework can be completed using your class notes, open book style. The quizzes should be completed from memory only, without the aid of notes or other materials. (A good approach is to look at an answer key *after* you have finished that homework, and to use that answer key to study for that quiz.) A final exam is given at the end of the Course.

You may grade your own papers using the supplied answer keys if you wish to do so. All of the quiz questions come from the homework, and the homework answer keys are also used to grade the quizzes and the final exam. Please note that in this review Course 16 not all of the final exam questions are taken from the quizzes; some final exam questions are not on the quizzes, but are taken from the homework.

This review Course 16 is **not** available to be graded by the Institute as a correspondence course. *Please do not mail in any of the homework or quizes for grading.* To receive credit and a certificate of completion for a review Course, it must be taken in person with a teacher approved by the Institue.

We would like to emphasize that, although recordings and written materials can be extremely helpful, it is essential for serious practitioners to study directly with a qualified Teacher who can give the necessary guidance and personal instructions of the lineage.

In these teachings the wisdom of Enlightened Beings has been passed down in an unbroken lineage to you. May you take these teachings and put them into practice in your life to benefit all. May every goodness grow and spread in all directions right now!



Overview of the Formal Study Course Teacher Training Program

The Six Great Books of Buddhism outlined below are the subject of a geshe's eighteen year program of monastic study. The Asian Classics Institute condenses these Six Great Books of Buddhism into a series of 15 Formal Study Courses.

Book One

Geshe Study Subject: The Perfection of Wisdom (Prajnya Paramita)

School of Buddhism Studied: Beginning Middle-Way (Madhyamika Svatrantika); also includes some material from Mind-Only (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Text: The Jewel of Realization (Abhisamaya Alamkara)

Written by: Maitreya (the Future Buddha) as related to Master Asanga, circa 350 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Six years in a Tibetan monastery Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, Overview of the Art of Interpretation, Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, Overview of Dependent Origination, Overview of the Form and Formless

Written by: Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (fl. 1850)

Typical Subjects: The three kinds of refuge; The wish for enlightenment; What is nirvana?; The proofs for emptiness; Who is Maitreya?; The twelve links of dependent origination in the Wheel of Life; Deep levels of meditation; How do we know when the Buddha was speaking figuratively?; A flow-chart for liberation.

Book Two

Geshe Study Subject: The Middle Way (Madhyamika)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika); also includes some material from the Mind-Only School (Chitta Matra)

- Main Root Texts: Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamaka Avatara) and A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattva Charya Avatara)
- Written by: The first by Master Chandrakirti, circa 650 AD in explanation of Master Nagarjuna, about 200 AD; and the second by Master Shantideva, circa 700 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Four years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra

Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva

Courses X, XI, XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** Overview of the Middle Way; A Commentary on the Diamond-Cutter Sutra; The String of Shining Jewels, on the Three Sets of Vows; The Point of Entry for Bodhisattvas, a Commentary to the "Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life"
- Written by: Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1830)
- **Typical Subjects:** Emptiness and the Wish for enlightenment; Emptiness and the bodies of a Buddha; The future of the Buddha's teaching; Emptiness and karma; The direct perception of emptiness; Emptiness and paradise; How empty things still work; The root and secondary vows of a bodhisattva; How to keep the vows; How to purify bad deeds; Taking joy; How to fight mental afflictions; The perfection of giving; How anger destroys good karma; The nature of anger; Where bad things really come from; Dealing with jealousy; Quietude; Stopping attachment; On the joys of solitude; Devoting oneself to meditation; On the need to see emptiness; The two realities; The emptiness of feelings; The sliver of Diamond.

<u>Book Three</u>

Geshe Study Subject: Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma)

School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha)

Written by: Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course V: How Karma Works

Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: *Light on the Path to Freedom, a Commentary to the Treasure House*

Written by: Gyalwa Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474)

Typical Subjects: The nature of karma; The role of motivation; The correlation of deeds and their results; How karma is carried; The relative severity of deeds; The three realms of existence; The nature of the *bardo* (intermediate state between birth and death); A description of time and space; The destruction of the world; How to do death meditation

<u>Book Four</u>

Geshe Study Subject: Vowed Morality (Vinaya) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika) Main Root Text: A Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra) Written by: Master Gunaprabha, circa 500 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Course:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Course:** *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline; Daymaker--A commentary on the "Essence of the Ocean"*
- Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The nature of the vows of freedom; Their divisions; The specific vows (note: nuns and monks' vows are presented only to those with ordination); Who can take vows; How vows are lost; The benefits of keeping vows.

Book Five

Geshe Study Subject: Buddhist Logic (Pramana)

School of Buddhism Studied: Sutrist (Sautrantika)

- Main Root Text: The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika)
- Written by: Master Dharmakirti, circa 650 AD, on Master Dignaga, circa 450 AD
- **Traditional period to cover this subject:** Three months per year for 15 years in a Tibetan monastery
- Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives

Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** The Four Reasonings; Light on the Path to Freedom, An Explanation of the Commentary on Valid Perception; Jewel of the True Thought; An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning; An Explanation of the Path of Reasoning; The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son; The Collected Topics of Rato; A Clear Exposition upon Mind and Mental Functions
- Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); The First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen (1567?-1662); Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997); Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901); Master Ngawang Trashi (c. 1700); Master Chok-hla U-ser (c. 1500)
- **Typical Subjects:** The meaning of valid perception; The nature of omniscience; Proofs for past and future lives; The qualities of a Buddha; Why study the art of reasoning?; The definition of a reason; How to do Buddhist debate; The parts of a logical statement; Cause and effect; The nature of the subject mind; The concept of negatives and positives; The nature of definitions; The concept of time.

Book Six

Geshe Study Subject: The Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika) Main Root Text: The Great Book on the Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim Chenmo) Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419)

Traditional period to cover this subject: Intermittently over a period of 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: A Gift of Liberation, Thrust into Our Hands; The Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Commentary on the Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama); Preparing for Tantra (The "Source of All My Good" and its Commentary); A Collection of Lojong Texts; Offering of the Mandala; How to Offer the Mandala in Thirty-Seven Parts

- Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941); Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The Meaning of Rennciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and correct world view; How to do a daily practice; How to meditate; What to meditate on; How to practice at work and other everyday situations; How to offer the mandala; How to practice love and compassion; Brief presentations of the entire path to Enlightenment; How to prepare for the secret teachings.



mandel

เพาตุดิ สิ้พ ฏิพ อูสพ จิร พิ รัสา รามูพ

sashi pukyi jukshing metok tram,

าราราสีรารดิ 3.สีญารสูง เกรา

rirab lingshi nyinde gyenpa di,

เพรพาสูพาติรารูารมิยามาริารุฐณากรามสิบ

sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

१२व्रेंगुरु:इरु:न्य:बिर:य:ह्येंन:यर:वेंग ॥

drokun namdak shingla chupar shok.

เดิ้ำร้าญารูารฐามฐาณฑาริฐารานามิไ

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.



kyabdro semkye

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

ไป๊ะ.ชึน.นะ.บ๊.นะนะนะเม็นสมุม

jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

าวาทาทิพาฐิสาพักพาวฏิพานวิเวพัวาสมพาฏิพา

dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

१२र्वे.ज.सर्द.हुर.जटश.मुग्र.दर्यीय.तर्य. ११

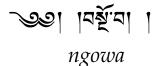
drola penchir sangye druppar shok.

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



ٳ٢ؚٵٜٛ؆؆٢

gewa diyi kyewo kun,

ารพัร สุมพาพิ เวิพาส์ โทพาย์ โกพา เวิรา

sunam yeshe tsok-dzok shing,

ารสัราสุมสาพิเวิสาณสาฏุรารสิ

sunam yeshe lejung way,

निश्रायाञ्जू याहेशावर्ष्ठेयायरा र्वेया 11

dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

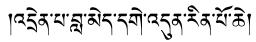
And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.



าสิุ้สานาสูามิราพรพาสูพาริสานีาธิา

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,



drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,



kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this To the guides Higher than any other, The precious Sangha.

I offer this To the places of refuge, To the Three Jewels, Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Course Syllabus

Reading One

Subject:	The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part One
	This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of the Steps to Enlightenment, or the <i>Lam-Rim</i> . The class will include a review of class policies, and an overview of the course.
Reading:	Selections from <i>The Three Principal Paths</i> of Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), and from its commentary entitled <i>The Principal Teachings of Buddhism</i> , by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941).

Reading Two

Subject: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from *The Three Principal Paths* and *The Principal Teachings of Buddhism*.

Reading Three

Subject: Buddhist Refuge, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of the Perfection of Wisdom, or *Prajna Paramita*.

Reading: Selections from monastic commentaries to the Ornament of Realizations of Lord Maitreya, as communicated to Master Asanga (350 AD). These commentaries are the Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom and the Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, both by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), an illustrious master from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

Reading Four

- Subject: Buddhist Refuge, Part Two
- Reading: Further selections from the two monastic commentaries to the *Ornament of Realizations.*

Reading Five

Subject: Applied Meditation, Part One

This and the next class represent Level Two of the tradition of the Steps to Enlightenment, or the *Lam-Rim*.

Reading: Selections from two of the greatest works of the *lam-rim* tradition: the *Great Book on the Steps to Enlightenment (Lamrim Chenmo)* of Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); and *A Gift of Liberation,* by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941)

Reading Six

Subject: Applied Meditation, Part Two

Reading: Selections from the *Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama)* and from the *Source of All My Good (Yunten Shirgyurma),* both written by Je Tsongkapa.

Reading Seven

Subject: The Proof of Future Lives, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of Buddhist Logic and Perception, or *Pramana*.

Reading: Selections from the following works—

Light on the Path to Freedom, a commentary on the works of Master Dignaga (440 AD) and Master Dharmakirti (630 AD) by Gyaltsab Je (1364-1432), the famed disciple of Je Tsongkapa.

Jewel of the True Thought, a commentary on the same works by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997) of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

A chart on levels of reality compiled from the First Dalai Lama, Gyalwa Gendun Drup (1391-1474); Kedrup Je (1385-1438); and Purbuchok Jampa Gyatso (1825-1901).

Reading Eight

- Subject: The Proof of Future Lives, Part Two
- Reading: Selections from the works just mentioned, including the text of "The Four Reasonings," by Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin.

Reading Nine

Subject: How Karma Works, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of Higher Knowledge, or *Abhidharma*.

Reading: Selections from the following works—

The *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha),* by Master Vasubandhu (350 AD).

The *Illumination of the Path to Freedom,* a commentary upon Master Vasubandhu's work by His Holiness Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474).

The *Schools of Philosophy*, by Master Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786).

The Illumination of the True Thought, by Je Tsongkapa.

Reading Ten

Subject: How Karma Works, Part Two

Reading: Selections from the works just mentioned, as well as from the following—

Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamakavatara), by Master Chandrakirti (650 AD).

Overview of the Middle Way, by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading One: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part One

The following selections are taken from The Three Principal Paths (Lam-gtzo rnamgsum), written by the incomparable Tibetan master Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The commentary is by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), who was a teacher of our root Lama, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin, and also a teacher of the teacher of His Holiness the Dalai Lama.

1 On the Life of Our Teacher's Teacher

It was at this time that the glorious Pabongka Rinpoche, the author of the commentary you are about to read, came into my life. Like me he had as a young man taken his course of studies at the Sera Mey College of Sera Monastery; in fact, he was from the same house, Gyalrong.

Pabongka Rinpoche was born in 1878, at a town called Tsawa Li in the Yeru Shang district of the state of Tsang, north of Lhasa. His family were of the nobility and owned a modest estate called Chappel Gershi. As a child he exhibited unusual qualities and in his seventh year was taken before Sharpa Chuje Lobsang Dargye, one of the leading religious figures of the day.

The lama felt sure that the boy must be a reincarnated saint, and even went so far as to examine him to see if he were the rebirth of his own late teacher. He was not, but the sage foretold that if the child were placed in the Gyalrong House of Sera Mey College, something wonderful would happen with him in the future.

Later on, the youngster was found to be a reincarnation of the Changkya line, which included the illustrious scholar Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786).¹ The lamas of this line had done much teaching in the regions of Mongolia and China—even in the court of the Chinese emperor himself—and the name "Changkya" had very strong Chinese connotations. Already in those days the Tibetan government and people were sensitive to the pressures put on us by

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

our powerful neighbor to the east, so the name "Changkya" was ruled out, and the boy declared to be "Pabongka" instead.

Pabongka, also known as Parongka, is a large and famous rock-formation about three miles' walk from our Sera Monastery. The very word "pabong" means in our language a large boulder, or mass of rock. The place is historically very important for Tibetans, for perched on top of the rock is the palace of Songtsen Gampo, the 7th-Century king who made Tibet one of the leading nations of Asia at the time, and who helped bring the first Buddhist teachings from India.

Until Songtsen Gampo's time, the Tibetans had no written language. The king, who desired that the great texts of Buddhism be translated into our language, sent a number of delegations to India with the charge of bringing back a written alphabet. Many of the young men who went died in the terrible rainy heat of the Indian plains and jungles, so different from our high Tibetan plateau, but the minister Tonmi Sambhota finally returned. He proceeded to create an alphabet and grammatical system that last to this day. And it is said that he performed this great labor in the palace of Songtsen Gampo, atop the cliffs of Pabongka.

Pabongka Rinpoche was actually the second Pabongka, for it was finally agreed to announce that he had been recognized as the reincarnation of the Kenpo (or abbot) of the small monastery atop the rock. For this reason he was sometimes referred to as "Pabongka Kentrul," or the "reincarnation of the abbot of Pabongka." Pabongka Rinpoche's full name, by the way, was Kyabje Pabongkapa Jetsun Jampa Tenzin Trinley Gyatso Pel Sangpo, which translates as the "lord protector, the one from Pabongka, the venerable and glorious master whose name is the Loving One, Keeper of the Buddha's Teachings, Ocean of the Mighty Deeds of the Buddha." He is also popularly known as "Dechen Nyingpo," which means "Essence of Great Bliss" and refers to his mastery of the secret teachings of Buddhism. We Tibetans feel that it is disrespectful to refer to a great religious leader with what we call his "bare" name—such as "Tsongkapa" or "Pabongka"—but we have tried here to simplify the Tibetan names to help our Western readers.

Pabongka Rinpoche's career at Sera Mey College was not outstanding; he did finish his geshe degree, but reached only the "lingse" rank, which means that he was examined just at his own monastery and did not go on for one of the higher ranks such as "hlarampa." The *hlarampa* level requires an exhausting series of public examinations and debates at different monasteries, culminating in a session before the Dalai Lama and his teachers at the Norbulingka summer palace. It was only after his graduation from Sera Mey, and the success of his teaching tours through the countryside outside the capital, that Pabongka Rinpoche's fame started to spread. Gradually he began to build up a huge following and displayed tremendous abilities as a public teacher. He was not tall (as I remember about my height, and I am only 5'6"), but he was broadchested and seemed to fill the entire teaching throne when he climbed up on it to begin his discourse.

His voice was incredibly powerful. On many occasions he would address gatherings of many thousands of people, yet everyone could hear him clearly (in those days in Tibet we had never heard of microphones or loudspeakers). Part of the trick of course was to pack the audience in Tibetan-style, crosslegged on the floor, with the lama on an elevated platform. Still the audience would flow out onto the porch of the hall, and sit perched above on the roof, watching through the steeple windows.

Pabongka Rinpoche had an uncanny ability to relate to his audience, and for this reason he became a teacher for the common man as well as for us monks. Generally speaking, the majority of the Buddha's teachings as we learn them in the monastery are extremely detailed, deep and sometimes technical. Moreover, we use rigorous tests of formal logic to analyze them as we move up through our classes. These methods are important for gaining the highest goals of Buddhist practice in a systematic way, and for passing these teachings on to others. But they were beyond the abilities and time of many of our Tibetan laymen. The Rinpoche's great accomplishment was that he found a way to attract and lead listeners of every level.

His most famous weapon was his humor. Public discourses in Tibet could sometimes go on for ten hours or more without a break, and only a great saint could keep his attention up so long. Inevitably part of the audience would start to nod, or fall into some reverie. Then Pabongka Rinpoche would suddenly relate an amusing story or joke with a useful moral, and send his listeners into peals of laughter. This would startle the day-dreamers, who were always looking around and asking their neighbors to repeat the joke to them.

The effects on his audience were striking and immediate. I remember particularly the case of Dapon Tsago, a member of the nobility who held a powerful position equivalent to Minister of Defense. Public teachings in Tibet were as much social as religious affairs, and aristocrats would show up in their best finery, often it seemed not to hear the dharma but rather to put in an appearance. So one day this great general marches in to the hall, decked out in silk, his long hair flowing in carefully tailored locks (this was considered manly and high fashion in old Tibet). A great ceremonial sword hung from his belt, clanging importantly as he swaggered in.

By the end of the first section of the teaching he was seen leaving the hall quietly, deep in thought—he had wrapped his weapon of war in a cloth to hide it, and was taking it home. Later on we could see he had actually trimmed off his warrior's locks, and finally one day he threw himself before the Rinpoche and asked to be granted the special lifetime religious vows for

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

laymen. Thereafter he always followed Pabongka Rinpoche around, to every public teaching he gave.

The Rinpoche had never spent much time at the small monastery atop the Pabongka rock, and his fame soon reached such proportions that the Ngakpa College of Sera Monastery offered him a large retreat complex on the hillside above Pabongka. The name of this hermitage was Tashi Chuling, or "Auspicious Spiritual Isle." There were some sixty Buddhist monks in residence there, and as I remember about sixteen personal attendants who helped the Lama with his pressing schedule: two monk-secretaries, a manager for finances, and so on. The Rinpoche would divide his time between his quarters here and a small meditation cell built around the mouth of a cave, further up the side of the mountain.

The cave was known as Takden, and it was here that Pabongka Rinpoche would escape for long periods to do his private practice and meditations. The central chamber had a high vaulted ceiling, so high that the light of a regular fire-torch could not even reach it, and the darkness seemed to go up forever. In the center of the ceiling there was an odd natural triangle in the rock, which looked exactly like the outer shape of one of the mystic worlds described in our secret teachings.

In the corner of this wonderful cave, an underground spring flowed from a rock—and above it was another natural drawing, this one just like the third eye that we see painted on the forehead of one of our female Buddhas. By the way, this "third eye" you hear about is largely metaphorical, and stands for the spiritual understanding in one's heart. We believed the cave was home for a *dakini*—sort of a Buddhist angel—because people often said they saw a wondrous lady come from the cave, but no one had ever seen her enter.

2

On the Importance of the Three Principal Paths: Renunciation, the Wish for Enlightenment, and the View of Emptiness

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

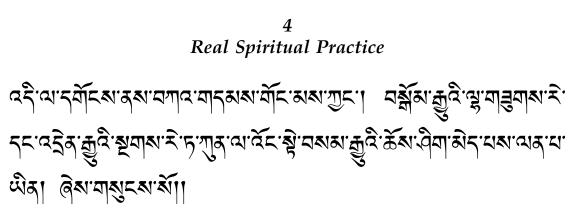
Now there is a great highway along which each and every Buddha of the three times travels. It is the single guiding lamp for living beings in all three lands.² It is none other than the teaching known as the "Steps to Buddhahood." And the heart, the very life of this teaching, is the instruction on the three principal paths.

We would all like to become Buddhas so we could help others; but to do so, we have to work to achieve this state. To do this though we have to know how. And to know how, we must study the dharma. The study that we do, moreover, must center on a path that never errs.

say on the one hand that you could be one of those people who has mastered all five sciences,⁴ who has gained the firmest of single-pointed concentration, someone with each of the five types of clairvoyance,⁵ who's experienced all eight of the great attainments.⁶ And let's say on the other hand that you could be a person who had yet to gain any full realization of Lord Atisha's teachings,⁷ but who nonetheless had developed such a firm recognition of their truth that no one else could ever change your mind. Which of the two would you choose to be?"

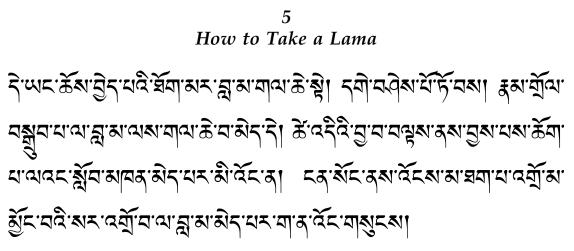
And Chen-ngawa spoke in reply, "My master, leave alone any hope of realizing all the steps to Buddhahood—I would rather even to be a person who had just begun to get some glint of understanding, who could say to himself that he had started off on the first of these steps to Buddhahood.

"Why would this be my choice? In all my lives to now I've been a master of the five sciences, countless times. And countless times I've gained singlepointed concentration, even to where I could sit in meditation for an eon. The same with the five types of clairvoyance—and the eight great attainments. But never have I been able to go beyond the circle of life—never have I risen above it. If I were able to gain a realization of the steps to Buddhahood that Atisha taught, I would surely be able to turn from this round of births."



The Seers of the Word in olden days were making the same point when they used to say, "Everybody's got some mystic being they're meditating about and everybody's got some mystic words that they're talking about and all because nobody's got any real practice they're thinking about."⁸

Therefore those of us who are thinking about doing some really pure practice of the spirit should try to find one that will take us on to freedom and all-knowingness. And for a practice to be this way, it should make us masters in the three principal paths. These three are like the heart, the very life within the teachings on the steps to Buddhahood. As the all-knowing Lord, Tsongkapa, once said: "I used the *Lamp on the Path* as my basic text, and made these three the very life of the path."⁹



Now a lama is extremely important at the outset of any attempts at a spiritual life. As Geshe Potowa said,

To reach liberation, there is nothing more important than a lama. Even in simple things of this present life, with things that you can learn just by sitting down and watching someone, you can't get anywhere without a person to show you. So how on earth are you going to get anywhere without a lama, when you want to go somewhere you've never gone before, and you've only just arrived from a journey through the lower births?¹⁰

Therefore you're absolutely going to have to go and learn from a lama; just reading dharma books is not going to work. There has never been a single person in history who gained his spiritual goals without a lama, just by reading books on dharma. And it will never happen in the future either.

Now what kind of lama should he or she be? It takes a guide who knows every turn of the path just to get you somewhere you can reach in a single day. For a lama who's supposed to lead you on to freedom and the state of knowing all things, you're going to need one who has all the requisite qualities. It's important to find a really qualified lama; it's not something you shouldn't care much about, because you're going to end up like him—for better or for worse. The student comes out according to the mold, like those little clay tablets with holy images pressed into them.

শ্ব અભે અર્ઢ ન છે ન ગામ ભાષા અંત મન ભાષા અંત મન ભાષા અંધ માથ છે. આ માથ આ માથ છે. આ

What are the characteristics that make a lama qualified? According to the teachings on vowed morality he or she should be, as they say, a "source of all

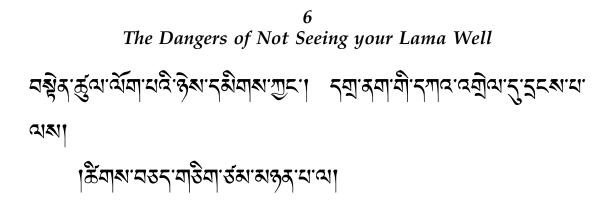
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

good qualities" and so on.¹¹ This means that the lama should possess the two good qualities of being steady and wise.¹² According to the secret teachings, he should fit the description that starts with the words "all three gateways well restrained." According to general tradition—that of both the open and the secret teachings—the lama should have ten fine qualities, as mentioned in the verse that begins with "You who have all ten..."

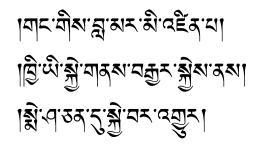
At the very least, your lama must absolutely be a person who has controlled his mind by practicing the three trainings,¹³ who possesses a knowledge of the scriptures, and who possesses actual realizations. As the *Jewel of the Sutras* states,

The prospective disciple on his part should familiarize himself with these descriptions of a proper lama's qualifications, and then seek out a lama who possesses them. Whether the disciple himself turns out to be more or less blessed with virtues depends on the degree to which his lama possesses high personal qualities. If the disciple enjoys a relationship with a lama who is capable of guiding him through the entire range of the open and secret paths, then the disciple will come to be one blessed, in the sense of having heard about and gained some understanding of the paths in their entirety. Even just gaining this general idea of the overall paths represents greater merit that any other good qualities that the student might possess.

Once the disciple does manage to locate a lama with the qualities described above, he must rely on him in the proper way. Here there are eight great benefits a person can gain through proper behavior towards his teacher, beginning with being "close to Buddhahood."¹⁵ There are also eight different dangers of improper behavior towards one's lama—these are the opposites of the benefits just mentioned.



Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One



1921551

We should speak here too of the dangers in improper behavior towards one's lama. A reference in *Difficult Points to the Black Enemy* puts it this way:

A person who doesn't treat as a lama Someone who's taught him so much as a line Will take a hundred births as a dog And then be born in the lowest of castes.¹⁶

The root text of the secret teaching on the Wheel of Time states as well:

Seconds of anger toward your lama Destroy equal eons of virtue collected, Then bring equal eons in which you endure The terrible pain of hells and the rest.¹⁷

ૡૺ૱ૻૻૻૻૹૻૻૣઽ૱ૻૡૻૡૢૻઽૻૹ૽ૢ૾ૢૺ૱ૻૡૢ૱ૻ૱૽ૼૡ૽ૼ૱ૻૻૹ૾૾ૡ૽ૻૡૻ૱ૻઌૡ૱ૻૡ૱ૻ૽ૡ૽ૻ૱ૻ૽૽૿ૢ૽૱ૻ ૱ૼૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡ૽ૼૼ૱ૺ૱૱ૹૢૢ૾ૺ૱૱ૡૢ૾ૡૻઌૻૡૢ૱ૡૻૡૢ૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૱૱ૡ૱૱ૡૼ૱

ڠेया'य'ૡ૾ૼૼয়'અૡ૾ૺ'ૡૢૻਸ਼ૡૻૡૢૻૻૻ૾ઌ૿ૡૢૻ૽૽ૹ૾૽૱૽ૻૹ૾૾ૡૻ૱૽૿ૡ૽ૻ૱ૡૻ૽૱ૡૻૡ૽ ૡ૾ૼૼૢૣ

Now the length of time in the snap of a finger is itself made up of no less than sixty-five of what we call "instants of minimum action." If an emotion of anger towards your lama comes up in your mind for this period, for sixty-five of these split-seconds, then you will have to stay in hell for a period equal to sixty-five *eons*. This by the way is how the tradition of the lesser way describes it; according to the teachings of the greater way, the period is even longer.¹⁸

And there are even more dangers; a person who behaves improperly towards his lama will, as the *Fifty Verses on Lamas* describes, suffer even more in this present life: spirits, various sicknesses, and other such problems will harass him constantly. In the hour of death, he is tormented by excruciating pain at the vital points and overwhelmed by terror. Moreover, he dies through one of the thirteen causes of a premature death—and so on.¹⁹

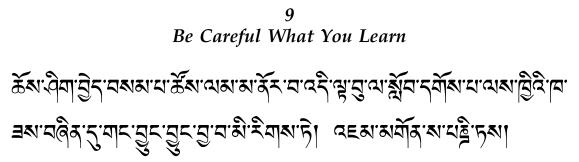
7 How the Three Paths are Every Teaching વેવૈઃક્ષુૈર વાયા રેસાવરે વઢન બુવ ર્જર વારેવા ગુરુ વચા ગુદ વર્દ્ય ગ્નેર વાર્પેન પવે વાયુદ રત્ત ચેં કે ખેંદ્ર સંદેવાય ગોું ક્ર્રેદ ચેં વર્કેવ વયા વઠન બુવ ગુયા યાયોવા

Thus we can say that, within just a single teaching session devoted to this work on the Steps to the path to Buddhahood, the teacher has taught and the disciples have heard the essence drawn from every single volume of Buddhist teaching that exists on this entire planet. 8 A Master of the Teachings

A person who develops a good understanding of these Steps to the path reaches a point where he can go to any one of those *tsatsa* sheds around town where we dispose of old scriptures and images, pick up any scrap of writing that he finds there, and know just where it fits into his lifetime practice. When you go from here to there, meaning from this single teaching on the Steps out to the mass of the Buddhas' other teachings, the Steps are like a magic key that opens a hundred different doors. Going from there to here, the total contents of that mass of teachings has been packed into these Steps.

Having the ability we've just described is, by the way, what we mean when we say someone has "gained an understanding of the teachings in their entirety." Therefore too the expression "master of all the Buddhas' teachings" is not at all meant to refer to somebody who has put together some neither-here-and-neither-there concoction of all the earlier and later systems, and who is trying to practice that. This point we get as well from something that Tuken Dharma Vajra spoke: "Try to mix up all the systems, the earlier and the later, and you end up outside of both."²⁰

When we say here that the entire teachings of the Buddha are packed into the Steps of the path, what we mean is that every vital point of the teachings has been expressed through an abbreviated presentation of the topics contained in the three collections of scripture.



People who have hopes of doing some kind of spiritual practice should study an unerring path such as this one. It's not right just to practice anything you can get ahold of, like some stray dog that gobbles down anything he can find. As the gentle protector, the Sakya Pandita, has said:

*বি*শ্বাম্যুদশা

Even in some insignificant business Over a horse, a gem, or the like, You check: ask everyone, consider it well. We see people taking pains like this over Even the smallest matters of this life. Gaining the ultimate goal of all our Countless lives depends on dharma, Yet we prize any dharma we might come across, Not checking if it's good or bad, And act like dogs with a scrap of food.²¹

That's just how it is—even in every little matter of this present life, like when you're buying or selling something, you take a lot of care: you do everything you can think of, you run around and ask other people, you spend a lot of time thinking over what to do yourself. But no matter how big a mistake you make with something like this, it's not going to help or hurt you in your future life at all. If you meet up with a spiritual teaching that's wrong though, you make a mistake that affects the ultimate goal of all your lives.

10 The Mark of a True Spiritual Teaching

Now the master translators of old undertook a great many hardships, journeying afar to the land of India to bear authentic dharma teachings back here to Tibet. But those in Tibet who followed a mistaken path couldn't live up to them at all. Really good water should at the end of ends trace back to some pure snow. Just so, whatever dharma we choose to practice should have its ultimate origin in something infallible: in the very Lord of the Word, in the Teacher, in the Buddha.

You can spend a thousand years struggling to practice some dharma teaching that has no authentic origin, and you still won't get a single sliver of true realization. It's like thrashing water to make butter.

Therefore we can say that the teaching we decide to practice should have three distinguishing features:

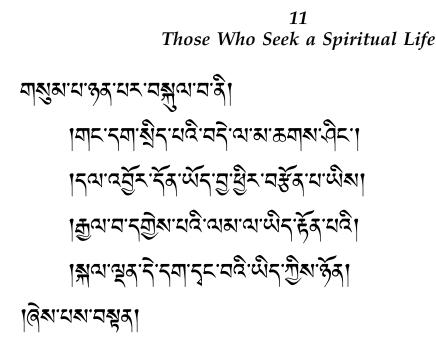
- 1) It should have been taught by the Buddha.
- 2) It should have been cleaned of any errors: sages must have brought the teaching to its authentic final form, having examined it to determine whether any wrong ideas crept into it after the Buddha taught it.
- 3) It should have brought true realizations to the hearts of master practitioners, once they have heard, considered, and

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

meditated upon it. And then it must have passed to us through the various generations of an unbroken lineage.



If the dharma we seek to practice has these three characteristics, it is authentic. We from our side still might fail it, through lapses in our effort and daily practice, but we need never fear that the teaching from its side will fail us.



We have now reached the third and final of the preliminaries that lead into the composition of the text. This one consists of a strong encouragement for the reader to study the work well, and is contained in the next verse of the root text:

Listen with a pure mind, fortunate ones Who have no craving for the pleasures of life, And who to make leisure and fortune meaningful strive To turn their minds to the path which pleases the Victors.

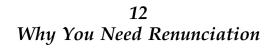


Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

Here the great Tsongkapa is urging his readers to study the work: "You, you people *who* are seeking freedom and *have no* single moment's *craving for the pleasures of life;* you, who want to get the absolute most from the body you've found, *to make your leisure and fortune meaningful;* you now are going to have to train yourself in a path that never errs, a path that never strays, a path that is whole and complete, *the path which pleases* even *the Buddhas*—the one in the end they advise, a path that is no erring path, a path that is no path that strays, a path that is more than just some piece or part of a path. And if you want to train yourself in a path like that, you're going to have to be a student who has all the requirements of a student; you're going to have to fit the description from the *400 Verses:*

We call someone a proper vessel for study Who's unbiased, intelligent, and willing to strive.²²

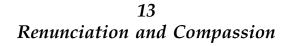
And *fortunate ones* like you, disciples who have *turned their minds* to the dharma, are going to have to *listen with a pure mind;* avoid in your study those things which are opposed to its success—the three problems of the pot; rely in your study on those things which are conducive to its success—the six images for the instruction."²³



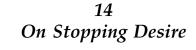
> There's no way to end, without pure renunciation, This striving for pleasant results in the ocean of life. It's because of their hankering life as well that beings Are fettered, so seek renunciation first.

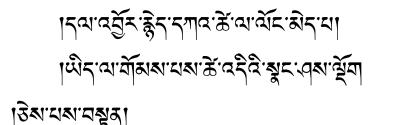
Now for all of us to escape from the cycle of life, we have to want to escape. If we never develop the wish to get out, and we get attached to the good things of this circle of life, then there will never be any way to escape it.

A prisoner can sit in a jail, but if he never really wants to escape, and never really attempts an escape, he never will escape. It's the same for us—if we never try to find some way to escape this cycle of life, the day of our escape will never arrive. If we work to develop the wish to escape, then surely there will come a time when we do.



The point here is that, to develop the wish to achieve enlightenment for all living beings, you must first develop a kind of compassion where you can no longer bear to see these beings tormented by the sufferings of life. To develop this, you must develop renunciation over your own situation; there is no way otherwise you could gain compassion, for it contemplates the situation that others must face. This too, concluded our Lama, is what Lord Atisha meant in his gentle rebuke to us Tibetans: "Only in Tibet have they found people with the wish for enlightenment who haven't yet found love and compassion."²⁴





Leisure and fortune are hard to find, life's not long; Think it constantly, stop desire for this life.

What we mean by "desire for this life" is this desire for happiness and fame in this life—where you say to yourself, "If only I could get more of the good things of life than anyone in the world—the best food, finest clothes, biggest name, and all the rest." Anyone who hopes to do some spiritual practice must stop his desire for this life.

How to stop it? You must contemplate the two Steps known as (1) the "great importance of this life of leisure and fortune, and the difficulty of finding it," as well as (2) our "impermanence, the fact that we must die." These thoughts then will turn back your desire for this life—in your mind, you will give up on it. The fact that you and I right now never do any spiritual practice—no, worse, the fact that we try and what we do is anything but spiritual practice—is all because of our desire for this life. *Free of Four Loves*, the mentaltraining text, puts it this way:

No practitioner, a person who loves this life. No renunciation, a mind that loves the cycle.²⁵

15

Giving Up on this Life

The border that separates spiritual practice from what is not, and the border that separates real spiritual practice from what is not, is this attitude of having given up on this life. Practice, in the form of reciting some lines, and the world may somewhere meet; but there is no way that practice in the form of giving up on this life will ever meet the world, in the form of happily participating in this life. There is no way you can keep the world, and still keep your practice.

This is what the precious preceptor, Drom Tonpa, had in mind when he said to a certain monk, "It makes my heart glad, uncle, to see you walking round this holy place to pay your respects; how much gladder would I be, if you did something spiritual!" And he went on to say the same thing about making prostrations, and reciting prayers, and meditating, and everything else. So finally the monk couldn't decide at all what was supposed to be spiritual practice and he asked Drom Tonpa, "Well then, how am I supposed to practice?" And the only answer he got was "Give up on this life!"—repeated three times, and loud.²⁶

16

The Three Concerns

In a broad sense we can start with what are known as the "eight worldly thoughts." These then can be shortened into three concerns of this life: food, clothes, and a big name. These three are what you have to give up on.

The worst of the three by the way is Big Name. Sages, holy men, great meditators of the past—even we can say a majority of them—have been able to live without great food, keeping themselves alive on one of those mystical practices where all you eat is some tiny pills or the essence of a flower. And they've been able to live without great clothes too: they sit in deep retreat, wearing tattered robes covered with dirt—they glue their backs to the wall of a cave and seal the only entrance. But in the bottom of their hearts they still crave fame—the Big Name—and they dream that all the local people outside are talking about what a holy master meditator they are.

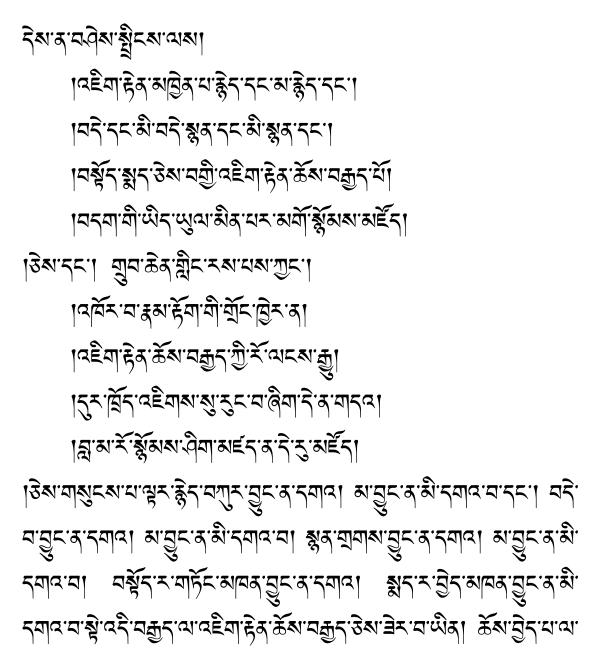
There have been many, many sages and scholars and monks who were pure in their moral lives but misled in this same way. As the great Droway Gonpo has said,

They go into seclusion, post a sign on the door, See not a soul, these master contemplators who still Hope in this life they call me the "Great Meditator."²⁷

As well as,

And so they fill their minds with hopes and plans, Thoughts that come in everything they do, And so their spiritual practice goes to waste, Spirited away by bandit locals. Take a spear then, strike it into every Thought that comes for this life, and remember Should a single spear not hit the mark Being a sage, saint, scholar, meditator Cannot close the door to the three lower realms.

17 The Eight Worldly Thoughts



ૡદેશા દેવ છે. આ પ્રયુટ ન તે આ પ્રાંગ્ય સંસ્થાય તે આ પ્રાય સ્થળે સંસ્થાય તે આ પ્રાય સંસ્થાય સંસ્થ સંસ્થાય સંસ્થય સંસ

Therefore if we want to do any spiritual practice we must quell the eight worldly thoughts—we must stand neutral, free of both members of each of its four pairs. "Eight worldly thoughts" is a name we give to the following eight emotions:

- 1) Being happy when we acquire some thing,
- 2) And unhappy when we don't.
- 3) Being happy when we feel good,
- 4) And unhappy when we don't.
- 5) Being happy when we become well known,
- 6) And unhappy when we don't.
- 7) Being happy when someone speaks well of us,
- 8) And unhappy when someone speaks ill of us.

As the Letter to a Friend states,

Oh worldly wise! To gain or not, feel good Or not, be well-known or not, be spoken of Well or ill, these are the eight worldly thoughts. Quell them; let them not come to your mind.²⁸

The great saint Lingrepa has said as well,

In the city of daily concerns in our circle of life Scurry the waked cadavers of eight worldly thoughts. This is where you can find the most frightening cemetery of all; This is where you lamas should keep your midnight vigil among the dead.²⁹

18 The Ten Ultimate Riches

ઽૺૡ૾૾ૡૢ૾ૺ૾૾૱૾૾ૡઽ૾ૡ૾૾૾૾૾૾ૡૡઌૡૢૢૢૢૼૢૡૻૢૹૻૹ૽૽ૹૼૡૹૡ૾ૼૹૡ૾ૼૡૡૢૢૢૼૡ૱ૡૡઌૣૡ૱ૡ૾૽ૼૼ ฑิ ฏิ ส์ ซีม พราสิญม พรารๆ สู้สมพา ธิ สีพากรีราสฉามสารภาษาการมพาผูกพาส์ราสุจารมพาผูาณิสา



Therefore if a person fails to stand free of the eight worldly thoughts for this life he will find it hard even to shut the doors to a birth in the realms of misery, much less do something that's a spiritual practice. To do such a practice, you must take up the instruction called the "Ten Ultimate Riches"—a teaching of the masters called the Seers of the Word for quelling the eight worldly thoughts, and giving up on life. These ten "ultimate riches" are the following:³⁰

The Four Aims. The Three Diamonds. The Three of Being Thrown Out, and Reaching, and Attaining.

য়ঢ়ৢৢৢৢয়ৼয়ঀ৾য়৾য়য়য়৾য়য়য়ঢ়ৢঀ৾৾য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য় หุมาง จิ ณ มากรา จิ หุมาง ส์ มาร์ พุมาร์ ณ มากรา นารราสดา

The "four aims" are,

Aiming your mind ultimately to practice. Aiming your practice ultimately to the beggar. Aiming the beggar ultimately to death. Aiming death ultimately to some dusty ravine.

र्दे'हे'गस्य मंत्री वेनस'सेन'र्दे'हे'र्श्वेत'य'नहना द्विय'सेन'र्दे'हे'हेस'य'नलग เพิ่.จิฆาร์ายิารรารราวที่ฤฆายารรามผูญ

And the "three diamonds" are,

Sending the uncatchable diamond ahead of you. Laying the unabashable diamond behind you. Keeping the wisdom diamond at your side.

त्र-क्रेमार्श्वत्रामस्यात्री त्रे'म्यायात्रह्यात् द्वि'म्यायायक्रेमहा यु'म्यायार्वत्रया <u>শ্বীয় শিল্প প্</u>রায় গ্রিয় গ্র

The three of "being thrown out, and reaching, and attaining," are, lastly,

Being thrown out from the ranks of men. Reaching the ranks of dogs. Attaining the ranks of the gods.

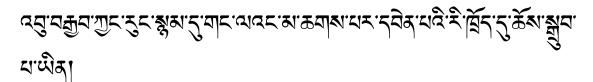
રેપ્બર્ટ્સ્સિય્યાશ્વ ત્રેશ્વાયાયાત્રાપ્રયાય પ્રાપ્ત સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વર સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વર સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વ સ્ટેશ્વર સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેશ્વર્ય સ્ટેશ્વર્ય સ્ટેશ્વર્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેશ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેશ્વર્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેશ્વર્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટે સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ્સ્ટેલ્સ્ય સ્ટેલ

"Aiming your mind ultimately to practice" means to practice religion with the following thoughts: This time I've been able to obtain a good human body and circumstances; they are extremely hard to find, they are incredibly valuable, and they include all the necessary leisure and fortune. This is the one and only time I will have such a life. And it will not be here long; it is absolutely sure that I will die, I have no way of knowing when my death will come. And when I die, only this holy spiritual practice will be of any use to me. All the things and honors I have gathered in this life, every bit of fame I've gained, everything else of the money and possessions I may have with me, will not be the slightest help to me.

"Aiming your practice ultimately to the beggar" is like this: Suppose you think to yourself "But well now, if I stop trying to do what it takes to live well in this life so I can do my spiritual practice, I'm afraid that I won't even find the bare necessities for doing the practice: I'll become a beggar." Think then to yourself this way: "I will undertake any hardship for my practice; and if it means I have to become a mere beggar, then let me become a beggar. I will find a way to do my practice, even if I have to live on lousy scraps of food that I beg off others, and wear any old clothes they give me."

"Aiming the beggar ultimately to death" means never giving up on your practice. Suppose you think to yourself, "So I try to do some practice, and I turn into a beggar, because I haven't taken the time to collect even the single smallest material thing. But then I won't even have what it takes to sustain this human life. I'm afraid some day I'll die, without enough food, without enough clothes." But instead you should think this way: "In all my many previous lives, I've never given up my life for the sake of my practice. If I can die this one time trying to practice, I might make up for it. And anyway we are all the same: rich or poor, we all are going to die. Rich people, to get rich, have collected a lot of bad deeds and will die with them. I, on the other hand, will accomplish something of very great meaning if I die from the hardships of trying to practice. So if for my practice I freeze to death, let me freeze. If for this I starve, let me starve."

शैक्षुणश्रः र्योगार्थे आस्राधां आणाहनाय की रुदाया भों छना गहना का का स्वान्ता के स्वान्ता स्वान्ता के स



"Aiming your death ultimately to some dusty ravine" comes like this: Suppose you think to yourself, "But there are certain things that I need from now up to the time I die. If I don't have any money at all, how am I going to get someone to help me when I'm sick? Who will attend me in my old age? Who will be there at my deathbed? And who will take care of things after I die—who will take the body away, and all the rest?" All these kinds of thoughts come under the category of attachment to the good things of this life. There's no way at all you can be sure that you'll even live long enough to reach any old age. Better to go to some lonely mountain retreat, and give up attachment to anything at all, and think to yourself "Now I'm going to practice, and I don't care if I die like some stray dog in a dusty ravine, with no one to look after me, and maggots crawling all over the corpse."

"Sending the uncatchable diamond ahead of you" has this meaning: You may be able to give up on life as described above, and start to try your practice. But then your parents and other family, your friends and all the rest will try to catch you and bring you back. Make yourself uncatchable; keep your mind as firm and unchanging as a diamond, even if you have to leave behind your most beloved family and friends, those close to you as the heart in your breast, standing with tears in their eyes from the pain. Leave, go to some lonely mountain hermitage, without any regrets, without any attachments. Stay there and devote yourself to the purest of practice.

"Laying the unabashable diamond behind you" looks like this: Suppose you do give up on this life, and leave. People will despise you, and condemn you, and say things like "Now he's nothing but a useless wandering beggar." But whatever they say you must give up on all of it, and think to yourself, "If they say I'm as pure as a god, that's fine. If they say I'm as evil as a devil, that's fine too. It doesn't make any difference to me. Trying to keep up a good image with friends who are all devoted to this life can lead to a great many problems, and acts as a great obstacle to spiritual practice."

"Keeping the wisdom diamond at your side" means never transgressing the pledge you have made to yourself. Abandon, and abandon forever, all the absolutely meaningless actions you do out of desire for this life. Keep your mind in the spiritual, firmly, and make your life and your practice one and the same.

"Being thrown out from the ranks of men" comes like this: Now you will start to see that desiring the good things of this present life is your real enemy. Your whole outlook then will start to clash with the outlook that other men have, men high or low, who all nonetheless strive for this life's happiness. To them you are acting like a madman, and so you will be thrown out from the ranks of men—men who live for this life.

"*Reaching the ranks of dogs*" means that you live your life without any great food, or clothes, or reputation. For the sake of your practice, you endure whatever comes to you in the way of hunger, or thirst, or tiredness.

"Attaining the ranks of the gods" starts with going to some secluded place, and giving up on all the normal activities of the world. You bring your practice to its desired end, and within this very life attain the state of a Buddha—the very god of gods.

19 Never Fear for Money

51

By the way, you need never fear that if you give up on things to practice the way we've described it above you'll become some poor beggar and starve to death. It is possible for a worldly person to die of hunger, but absolutely impossible for a religious practitioner to do so. This is because our compassionate Teacher, when he reached the state of total enlightenment, still had merit enough from his past deeds to go and take some 60,000 births as a

"Wheel Emperor"—one of those incredibly powerful beings who rule the entire world. Instead he took the fantastic power of these deeds and dedicated it to the food and other necessities that all his future followers might require. In the *White Lotus, the Sutra on Compassion,* we hear the following oath from the Buddha as he first commits himself to reaching enlightenment for the sake of living kind:

And in the days when my teachings spread in the world, any man who wears so much as four inches of the saffron robe shall find food and drink to his heart's desire. If he does not, then I shall have cheated the state of Buddhahood. And then may I lose my Buddhahood.³¹

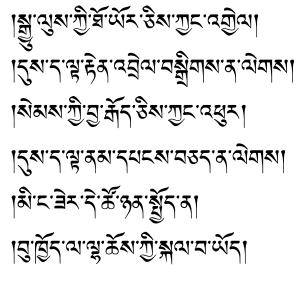
20 How Should We Think about Money?

 \tilde{a} \tilde{a}

Now when we say to "give up on this life," the main thing that you have to give up is those eight worldly thoughts or attachments, towards the pleasures of this life. Giving up these thoughts doesn't necessarily mean that you have to throw away all your material possessions and become a beggar. Holy teachers of the past have pointed out for us examples of people who succeeded in giving up on life, and these have included personages of fantastic material wealth such as Gyalchok Kelsang Gyatso and the Panchen Lobsang Yeshe.³²

21 Lord Maitreya about Giving up on Life

₹^ຒૡ૽૽ૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૠ૽૽ૢ૾ૺૢૻઽૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૢૢૢૢૻ૱ૢ૾ૡૡ૽૾ૡ૽૾ૡૡ૱ૡૢૻૣ ।<</p>
न्यः बियायाहित्य कथः भ्रीरुप्यः का ાર્જે વરે વાસુ સેવા સે ભૂગ્યુ าสริสานราราชิราวสุราสา ารุรส์สามรูลาวุรีเราส์รา ૧૧૬૨૨. વૈદ્ર: દ્વ રેં વદેવ અગય ર્ટ્સે દ્રશ્ય ાવર્નેન ખેંત વર્ત શે લગયા ય ખેતા <u>૧</u>૨૪૮.૨૪.૬૪.૪.૭૮.૧.૩ ।মর্লির শ্রীমাঝ মন্ত্র শ্রী মু রা মিরা [য়ৢ'བར་ངོས་མོ་འོང་ོོན་གྱིས།
 [
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
]
 [
] <u>ૡૡૢ</u>ૣૣૣૣઌૡઽૢઽૻૹ૽૿ૢ૽ઌઙ૽ૼૼૼૼૼ૱ઽૡ૾૽૱ เลง.ขง.ว่มเง.พูพ.พี่ง.วี.ฮูพไ เณรายมพางราวิตุญาสุพาวญี้เราที่พาสุ र्रिश्व-राष्ट्रे-राष्ट्रिय-अयाश्च



1321551

The great master of all master meditators, Milarepa, has said as well:

If in your heart you wish to keep the holy practice, son, Within the very depths of it then find this thing first—faith, Never turn and look back once again upon—this life. If in truth you'll follow after me, Your loved ones turn to demons, hold you back; Do not think them true—cut all the ties. Food and money are the demons' advance guard; The closer the worse, give up all want for them. The objects of the senses are the demons' snare; "They will entrap me!" stop your craving them. Your young love is the daughter of the demons; "She will mislead me!" so be on your guard. The place you grew up is the demons' prison; Hard to free yourself from, flee it quick. You will have to leave it all behind and go on-later, Why not make it meaningful and leave it all—right now? It will fall down one day anyway, this mannequin apparition; Better to use this body now, get off to a good quick start. This skittish bird of mind will anyway fly from the corpse one day;

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

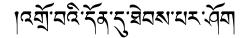
Better now to soar across some wide expanse of sky. If you listen and act upon this one man's words—of mine, Then the grace to keep the holy practice, my boy—is yours.³³

ٳڲٳ؉ؽڗۥڟۣڂ؞ؾڕۑڟڡٳڟڡٳڰٳ ٳڲٳڂۥڽڔڟ؞ڝڿ؞ڲؚٳۼٮۻڡ؞ڂڮٳ

૧૮ ગમ સેંદ વર્ડ સેં સેન્પ્ર ન્ય ન્ય ૧ વેરે સેંદ ગાદ્દ સેં સેન્ડ પર્ડા ૧ સેં સિંદ વેરે સુવર્ત્ત સેં સુરુપ્ત ૧ સવ્ય વર્ત્તુ સ્વરૂસ અસ્ય સેં ગ્રાહ્મ સાથે સા

ૻ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૡૻૻૡ૽ૼૺૼૼૼૻૻૼૻ૽૱ૻ૽ૺ૱ૻૺ૱ૻૻ ૡ૿ૺ૱ૢૼૻૹ૽ૺૻૹૺૺઽૻૻઽૻૻૢ ૡ૿ૺ૱ૢૼૻૹ૽૿ૹ૽ૺઽૻૻૻઽૢ ૡ૾૾ૺૼ૾૾ૡૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૾ઌ૾૾ૼૺૼૼૼૼૻ૾ઌ૾૾ૼ૾૾ૡૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૾ૺૼૻ૾ઌ ૱ઌ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱

ૻ૾ૺૡ૽ૼૼૼઽૻૡઽ૾ૺૻઽૢૻૡ૾૾૾૾ૡૢ૾ૼૹૻૻૡૻ ૢૢૢૢૢૢૡઌૡૢ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻઌૹ૱ૡૻૼૹૣ૱ૡઌ૾૾ૡૢ



เสิกพาสากพพานายักพานาพิสุ เดิพากุญุรพานาริรุเ จริารกาฏราชาสู้พา नहट नदे नासुट सग्र रेसे

Lord Milarepa said too,

No way my loved ones know I'm glad, No way my enemies know I'm sad; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No way my friends know I've got old, No way my sister knows I'm sick; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No way that people know I've died, No rotting corpse that vultures spy; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

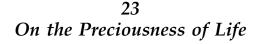
Flies will suck my meat and bones, Maggots eat tendons, ligament; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No footprints leading from my door, No bloodstains left here on the floor; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No one to hold a deathbed vigil, No one to weep when I am gone; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No one to wonder where I went No one who knows where I am found; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true. May this death prayer of a beggar In the wild of a mountain cave Come to help all living beings; Then my wishes have come true.³⁴

Now there is one instruction which we can call the very essence of all the teachings on how to get rid of the eight worldly thoughts of this life. This is the meditation on one's own impermanence and death. People like us though must prepare our minds for this meditation by first contemplating how valuable, and how hard to find, our present life of leisure and fortune is. Then gradually we will be ripe for the realization of death.



The all-knowing Lord Tsongkapa has said himself,

This body of leisure's more valuable than a jewel that gives any wish, And now is the only time you will ever find a one like this. It's hard to find, and easily dies, like lightning in the sky. Think this over carefully, and come to realize That every action of the world is like the chaff of grain, And so you must strive night and day to make the most of life. I, the master meditator, put this into practice; You, who seek for freedom, must conduct yourselves this way.³⁵

24 The Freedom of Renunciation

ૡ૾ૺૹૻૻ૾ૹૣૡૢઽૹૻૻૻઽૡૡ૾ૻ૱ૻૡ૾૾ૡ૾૾ૼૡૻૹૼૹૻૻઌ૱ૢૼૼૻૡ૽ૣૼૹૻૻઌૢઽૻૹ૽ૣ૾ૺૹૣ૽ઌૻૻઌૻૹૢ૱ૹૻઌ૽ૡૻ૱ૡૡ รัสพานาริยาวาติสารสัญาราริเพิ่มารารารสพมายราสายราวรา สายสมมายราวัง พ พิเซฟพาชางาาาที่เสลารูญาาบารพิเฟศัการฏิยาสางสาณาาร์เอลาฏิสา यःस्ट्रूरःबेरायायाहेरः रहाः स्वायाया बिया सेंदा हेया के का का सारी स्वायाया हे स्वायाया से सिंह स्वायाया के सा वज्ञुर नर नहु रें दें न य की

The point here is that, to rid yourself of the eight worldly thoughts and undertake a spiritual practice which is truly pure, you must gain two different realizations: first, of how valuable and hard to find one's life of leisure and fortune is; secondly, of one's own impermanence and the fact that he must die. Once you gain these realizations, it doesn't matter—the hills can turn to gold, the rivers into milk, and every man your slave—but to you it's all repulsive, useless, like a feast set before a sick man vomiting. And it's not enough for these realizations to come to you just from the outside—from sitting and listening to someone describe them. They must come from the inside, from thinking about them yourself. Then they will be firm in your mind, and never change again.

25 How Rare a Life Like This Is

Finally a life like ours is hard to find from the viewpoint of the "classical example." Suppose there were a single yoke-like ring of pure gold that could float upon the surface of the great ocean. The swells of the sea push it back and forth, in every direction you can imagine. Far down in the very depths of the ocean lives a great sea-turtle. He is sightless. Once, and only once, in the span of an entire century he swims to the surface, to poke his head up momentarily. And suppose the golden ring happens to catch him around the neck. The odds against it are nearly infinite.

…તલે વર્ષે શ્વર્યા શ્રી સ્ટ્રે શ્વર્યા છે. ત્ર સ્ટ્રે વર્ષે સ્ટ્રે શ્વર્યા સ્ટ્રે શ્વર્ય શ્વરે સ્ટ્રે શ્વર્ય સ્ટ્રે શ્ર્ય સ્ટ્રે સ્ટ્રે શ્ર્ય સ્ટ્રે સ્ટ્

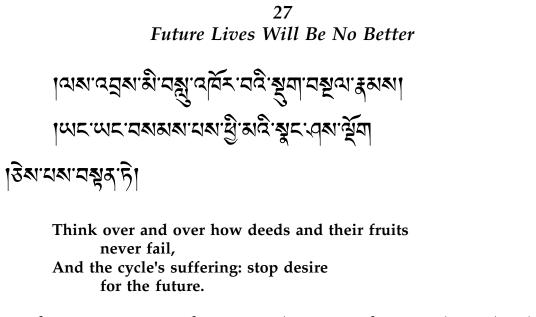
Our case is the same. The teachings of the Buddha pass now and again among the various planets of the universe. Here are we, blinded by our ignorance. We are permanent inhabitants of the deepest reaches within the ocean of cyclic life. A human body, complete with leisure and fortune, will be fantastically hard to find; the odds against it are almost infinite. But this time we have found one.

So our life of leisure and fortune is incredibly valuable, and difficult to find; this is the first and last time we will ever have such a chance. We must now make the greatest use we can of it. The single highest thing we can do with this life is to practice the Greater Way.

26 Being Mindful of Our Death

And we must begin this practice now, right now. Little time remains before the inevitable death comes to us. We must constantly bring our death to mind; just some vague awareness that someday death will come, or thinking some about death, is not enough to really keep your coming death in mind. You must train yourself, meticulously, in what it is to die.

In our root text, the instruction on how to keep your mind on death is presented in the words "life's not long." This instruction includes a number of categories: the benefits that come from keeping your mind on death, the problems that come from not keeping your mind on death, and how then actually to keep your mind on death. This last category itself includes the three basic principles, the nine reasons for them, and the three resolves to be made because of them—all ending with the meditation on what it's like to die.³⁶ A person who trains himself in these categories over a long period of time is able to develop the true attitude of keeping his mind on death, and then gains the ability to turn back his desire for the pleasures of the present life. When a person through the process of careful contemplation has developed this attitude of keeping his mind on his own death and impermanence, then we can say the virtuous way has taken its root within him.



Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

Now what we mean by "desire for the future" is the kind of attitude where you think to yourself, "I hope in my future births I can live like some god-like being, such as the creatures they call Pure-One and Hundred-Gift, or like one of those Wheel Emperors who rule the entire world. May I live in some wonderful state of happiness, in the best of places, with the best of things, with a beautiful body and everything I wish for at my fingertips." Incidentally, we also see people who pray to be born in one of the truly pure realms of a Buddha, where they will never have to suffer and can enjoy everlasting happiness—but they pray so without any intention of reaching this high state in order to help other beings. If we really follow this line of thinking to its end, it would appear that people like this have for the most part simply slipped into the base desire for future lives.

28 The Four Principals of Karma

ସବ୍ଧୟ:ଝିଏ:ଜମ୍ୟମ୍ୟ:ସ୍କିଷ:ସ୍ଟ୍)ેશ્રાત્વશ્વાર્ટશ્વાચ્ચ્રાત્વ્રહેત્વા અશ્વાત્વ્રહેત્વા અશ્વ
ૹ੶ਜ਼ૢੑૹ੶ਸ਼੶៹៹੶ଈୖ੶ૡਖ਼ੑੑ៹੶ਸ਼	<u> </u>
ปส์วี่สม.ศ.สีทพ.ตูป.ยิ.ปพร	ૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡ
ર્નેમ ભાષા ભોષા શેનુ માન મુખ્ય મુખ્ય છે. આ ગામ મુખ્ય સંસ્થાય છે. આ ગામ મુખ્ય સંસ્થાય છે. આ ગામ મુખ્ય સંસ્થાય છે આ ગામ મુખ્ય સંસ્થાય છે. આ ગામ સંસથળ છે. આ ગામ સંસથળ છે. આ ગામ સંસથળ છે આ ગામ સંસથળ છે. આ ગામ સંસથળ છે.	

This contemplation is done by considering, very carefully, the four principles of action which the Buddha enunciated:

- 1) Actions are certain to produce similar consequences.
- 2) The consequences are greater than the actions.
- 3) One cannot meet a consequence if he has not committed an action.
- 4) Once an action is committed, the consequence cannot be lost.

Once a person has gained a well-founded belief in these principles, he will automatically in his daily life avoid doing wrong things and begin doing right things.

29 Where Death Takes You

After you die, your consciousness doesn't just go out like a lamp—you must take another birth. And there are only two kinds of birth you can take: one of the births of misery, or one of the happier births. As for which of the two you do take, you are totally helpless: you must follow the direction of your past actions. Virtuous actions throw you into one of the happier types of birth, and non-virtuous actions throw you into one of the three of misery.

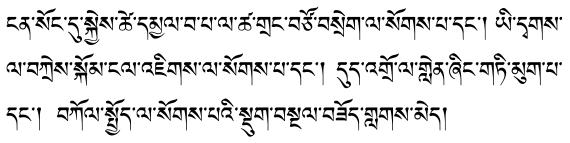
Great non-virtuous acts lead you to the hells; medium ones lead you to a birth as an insatiable spirit; and lesser non-virtues make you take birth as an animal. Great virtuous acts, on the other hand, bring you a birth as a pleasure-being in one of the two higher realms; medium virtues make you a pleasure being of the desire realm; and lesser virtues bring birth as a human in the same realm.³⁷ As our glorious protector, Nagarjuna, has stated,

اڲ૾ૢૺૻૣૻૺૻૻૻૻૣ૱ૢૢૢૼ૽ૻ૱૽૾ૺ૱ૻૻ૱

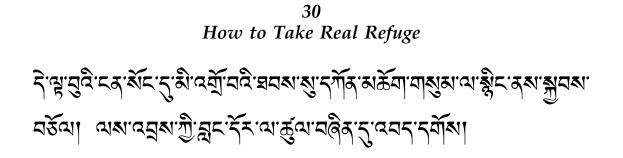
। উষ্ণ বাষ্যু ন ষা

Non-virtue brings all sufferings And all the births of misery. Virtue brings all happier births, And happiness in all one's births.³⁸

Since this is the case, and since all the virtues you and I have are feeble—while all our non-virtues are ever so mighty—then if we were to die in our present condition it's a foregone conclusion that we would take birth in one of the realms of misery.



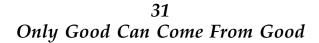
Taking our birth in one of these realms, we would meet unbearable sufferings. As a hellbeing there would be unspeakable heat or cold, our bodies boiled or scorched, and more. As insatiable spirits we would always be hungry, or thirsty, in a constant state of exhaustion and fear. As animals we would be mindless brutes incapable of saying a thing, exploited by humans for their work or food.

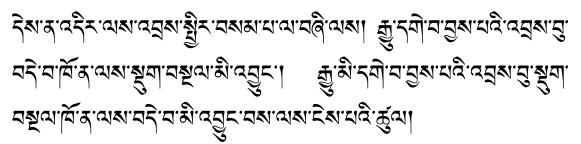


There is a way to avoid these births of misery, and this is to turn ourselves over to the three rare jewels³⁹ for their protection, and do so from the bottom of our hearts, and strive our best in choosing correctly which actions we should undertake, and which we should abandon.

This correct decision in choosing our actions is actually the single most important instruction in the entire teaching on how to go for refuge. Once we disregard the principles of action and consequence, it's already decided that we will take our birth in the realms of misery. People like you and I here in this assembly, mostly monks, are not likely to take one of these lower births simply because we know nothing of the spiritual teachings. But remember: there have been absolute multitudes of people like us, who had a knowledge of the teachings, but who passed to the realms of misery because they could not put these teachings into actual practice, or because they chose to disregard the laws of action and consequence.

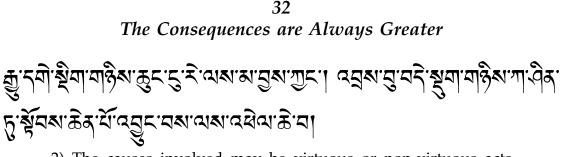
And we must heed these laws. A man who does not must take a lower birth, and it doesn't matter how knowledgeable he was, or how saintly. You can be a sage who has mastered the entire contents of the canon, you can be an advanced meditator with fantastic spiritual accomplishments, you can have great extrasensory powers, and ability to perform miracles; but if you cannot behave with care around action and consequence, you will suffer.





So this brings us to the four most general principles in our contemplation of actions and their consequences:

1) If the cause involved is a virtuous act, then the consequence it produces can only be pleasure, and never pain. If the cause involved is a non-virtuous act, then the consequence it produces can only be pain, and never pleasure. Thus the first principle is that *actions are certain to produce similar consequences*.



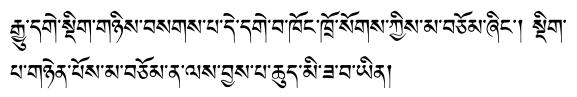
2) The causes involved may be virtuous or non-virtuous acts which are relatively minor, but the consequences they each produce—the pleasure or the pain—will be of tremendous power. The second principle then is that *the consequences are greater than the actions*.

33 No Action, No Result

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

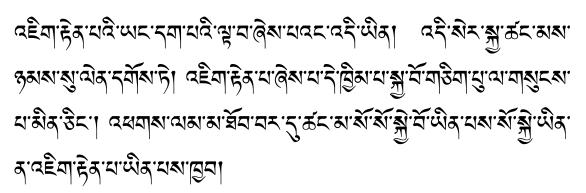
3) If one never performs the virtuous or non-virtuous action to act as a cause, he will never experience a consequence of either pleasure or pain. Thus the third principle: *One cannot meet a consequence if he has not committed an action.*

34 Karma Never Just Goes Away



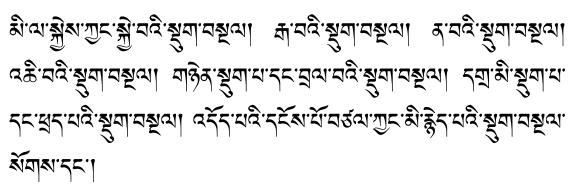
4) The fourth principle states that once a person has collected a virtuous or non-virtuous action to act as a cause, *once an action is committed, the consequence cannot be lost*—so long as the power of a good deed, for example, is not destroyed by an emotion like anger, or a bad deed by applying an appropriate antidote.

35 What it Means to be "Worldly"



You've heard of the correct view that we call the "worldly" one—well this understanding of actions and consequences is what it refers to. This view by the way is something that everyone should adhere to, regardless of whether they're a monk or nun or layman. You should realize that the word "worldly" in this case is not just meant to refer to people who are still living the secular life. There is an expression we use, "ordinary people," to refer to any person who has yet to reach the path of a realized being [or someone who has seen emptiness directly.] Whatever else we may be, we are "worldly" people so long as we are ordinary people in this sense. 36

How Humans Suffer



Let's say you are born as a human; still you must suffer as you come from the womb. Still you must suffer as your body gets older, day by day. Still you must suffer when you are ill. Still you must suffer as you die. You must suffer the pain of missing your beloved family. You must suffer the pain of encountering your hated enemies. You must suffer the pain of working for the things you want, and not being able to get them—and on and on.

37 The Six Sufferings

Lord Tsongkapa, in his great exposition on the Steps of the path to Buddhahood, divides the contemplation of life's general sufferings into three sections. These are contemplating the eight sufferings, the six sufferings, and the three sufferings. The group of eight though applies more to life as a human, and the group of three is given as sort of a summary. Here then we'll speak some of how to do the contemplation on the six sufferings.

พราสุฆาพราราวรัราสวิชิฆาน พราพราชิรามส์มฆาฐัราสวิชิฆาน พราพรามส์รามสาราวญราสลารา สุโยสมเพิรานลาราสงงาา

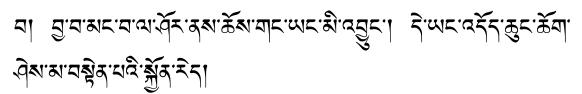
These six are as follows:

- 1) The problem that life has no certainty.
- 2) The problem that we always want more than we have.
- 3) The problem that we have to keep shucking off bodies, over and over again.
- 4) The problem that we have to keep going into a new life, over and over again.
- 5) The problem that we go up and down in our fortunes in life, over and over again.
- 6) The problem that no one can come along with us; ultimately we are alone.

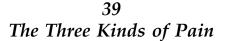
38 On Wanting Things

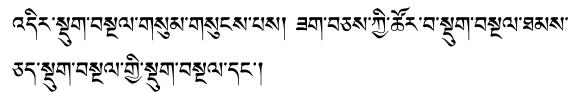
These six problems are described at length in the standard works on the Steps to Buddhahood. We should remember though King Mefeed, whose last words were "There is no greater evil in the world than the fact that we always want more than we have."⁴⁰ You and I are monks, and there are only two things we should be doing:

Read the holy books, get teaching on them, contemplate their meaning. Live a life of rejection, and stay in meditation.



Here a "life of rejection" means a life where we keep our morality, and reject bad deeds. If we can keep from going beyond these two activities, then one day we can become both wise and realized. If though we neglect these two, we will lose ourselves to what they call "lots of things to think about and lots of things to do." And then we won't do any spiritual practice at all. People make this mistake, by the way, because they are unable to stick to the precept of "Keep your wants few; be easy to satisfy."⁴¹





Since the three types of suffering are mentioned later on in our root text, we'll describe them briefly. All impure feelings of pain constitute the first type of suffering: the "suffering of suffering."

$$=\pi_1 - \pi_2 + \pi_3 + \pi_$$

All impure feelings of pleasure constitute the second type of suffering: the "suffering of change." We can explain this suffering as follows. When you're in a place that's very hot, then something cool seems like pleasure. When you're in a place that's very cold, then something warm seems like pleasure. The same is true when you've had to walk a long way (sitting would seem a pleasure), or had to sit for a long time (walking would seem a pleasure).

None of these things that seem to be pleasure though is pleasure by nature, or pleasure in its very essence. If they were, then you would feel more pleasant the more you had of them. But this is not the case, for as you get more and more of them they too start to give you pain. When this happens we can understand that they are not pleasure by nature. They are, in fact, suffering—they are what we call the "suffering of change."

રૈષાશ્વ સુયાય પ્રદર્શો શ્વે ગાદ સે સે લે છે ર લો સુયી બુશ યુવ ઇ સા સ્થ રે દ ર દે તે સુયાય સ્વ પર દ અશ્વ પોર્ટ પોર્ટ સે લે છે ર લો સુયાય સુયાય સુધ છે ર લો સે દ સે લો છે ર લો સે દ સે લો છે ર લો સે દ સે લો છે સુયાય સુધ જે ર લે સે લો છે ર લો સે દ સે લો છે ર લો સે દ સે લો છે ર લો છે ર લો સે લો છે ર લ

The third type of suffering is known as the "pervasive suffering, which brings in more." The point here is that, regardless which one of the six kinds of birth we take, we take on a body which, by its very existence, comes complete with its own particular sufferings built in. From the first moment we take the various impure parts of our being on, from the first moment of their existence, they provide a basis for all the sufferings we have to look forward to in life: birth, aging, sickness, death, and all the rest. The impure parts of ourselves are like a big pot, sucking in the suffering of suffering, sucking in the suffering of change, in both this and our future lives. We must find a way to stop taking births, to stop taking on all the impure parts we're made of. Until we do, our existence will be like lying on a bed of upright needles—never a thing but pain. 40 What it Means to "Escape"

When we talk about "escaping cyclic life," it's not like running away from one country and managing to reach another. "Cyclic life" is precisely the continued existence of, the very fact of, the impure parts that make us up, the impure parts of our being that we've taken on. And when the continued existence of these parts is stopped at its root by the wisdom that realizes that nothing has a self-nature, this then is our "escape from cyclic life."

41 How to Know When You've Found Renunciation

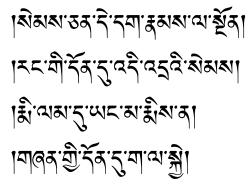
6

The third and final section of our explanation of renunciation describes the point at which we can say a person has succeeded in developing it; as the next verse of the root text reads,

When you've meditated thus and feel not even A moment's wish for the goods things of cyclic life, And when you begin to think both night and day Of achieving freedom, you've found renunciation.

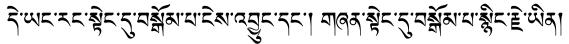
42 Your Pain, and Others'

As the famous verses of *The Bodhisattva's Life* say,



<u>|</u>ৰিম'মাম্যুদমা

If people like these have never before Even in the dreams they dream Felt such a wish just for themselves, Then how can it come to them for others?⁴²



Thus we can say that renunciation and compassion are the same state of mind, just that one is developed by meditating on your own situation, and the other by meditating on others' situation.

NOTES TO READING ONE

1. *illustrious scholar Changkya Rolpay Dorje:* An excellent introduction to the history of the Changkya line has been written by E. Gene Smith and is included in his foreword to the collected works of the Tibetan sage Tuken Dharma Vajra.

2. *three lands:* That is, below the earth (where the serpent- beings and similar creatures live), upon the earth (where men are found), and in the sky above the earth (where deities make their home).

3. *Geshe Puchungwa* (1031-1106) *and Chen-ngawa* (1038-1103): Source of quotation not found. Geshe Puchungwa, full name Shunnu Gyeltsen, was one of the "three great brothers," direct disciples of Lord Drom Tonpa who helped him found and spread the Seer tradition of the early Tibetan Buddhist masters. Chen-ngawa, also known as Tsultrim Bar, was another of the three, as was the great Potowa.

4. *five sciences:* Classical grammar, logic, Buddhist theory, the fine arts, and medicine.

5. *five types of clairvoyance:* Supernormal powers of emanation, sight, hearing, perception of the past, and knowledge of others' thoughts.

6. *eight great attainments:* These are to gain "the sword," which allows one to travel anywhere; "the pill," which enables you to become invisible or assume any outer form; "the eye ointment," which helps you see minute or very distant objects; "swift feet," the ability to travel at high speeds; "taking essence," an ability to live off nothing but tiny bits of sustenance; "sky walk," the ability to fly; and "underground," the power to pass through solid ground like a fish through water.

7. *Lord Atisha* (982-1054): Full name Dipamkara Shri Jnyana, illustrious Indian sage who brought the teachings of the Steps of the path to Tibet. Author of *Lamp on the Path*, a prototype text of this genre.

8. *Everybody's got some mystic being...* Original source of quotation not found; it appears also in Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation in Our Hands*. The Seers of the Word were an eminent group of early Buddhist masters in Tibet whose lineage descended from Lord Atisha and his principal disciple, Lord Drom Tonpa. The school's name in Tibetan, "Kadampa," is explained as meaning that they were able to see the Word of the Buddha (*ka*) as personal instruction (*dam*) that applied immediately to their own practice.

9. *I used the "Lamp on the Path":* The full context of this quotation appears in Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation in Our Hands;* it reveals much of the sources of our text and restates its comprehensive nature. Lord Tsongkapa has just related the contents of a major section of his massive *Greater Steps on the Path to Buddhahood* to his divine mentor, Gentle Voice. And then,

Gentle Voice asked the Lord in a playful way,"Well now, is there anything in your work that isn't covered in those three principal paths I taught you?"

Lord Tsongkapa replied, "This is how I composed my work. I took the three principal paths which you, oh Holy One, taught me, and made them the very life of the path. I used the *Lamp on the Path* as my basic text, and supplemented it with many other advices of the Seers of the Word."

10. *To reach liberation...* Geshe Potowa (1031-1105), full name Rinchen Sel, was a master of the Seer tradition and one of the three great disciples of Lord Drom Tonpa. His *Metaphors* are an important predecessor to later works on the Steps. The quotation here is found on p. 14 of Hladri Gangpa's commentary to the *Blue Book*, a compilation of the great Potowa's teachings written out by his student Geshe Dolpa.

11. *source of good qualities:* Opening words of a supplication from a famed devotional text, the *Offering to Lamas*, by the venered Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen, first of the illustrious Panchen Lamas of Tibet. The three verses mentioned here read as follows:

Source of all good qualities, great sea of morality;

Brimming with a mass of jewels, teachings you have learned;

My lord, second Lord of the Able, wearing a saffron robe;

I seek you blessing, master who keeps the knowledge of the vows.

You who have all ten qualities that one must possess to be

Worthy to teach the path of all those who have gone to bliss;

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

Lord of the dharma, regent standing in for every Victor;

I seek your blessing, spiritual guide for the greater way.

All three gateways well restrained, wise, and patient, and straight;

Free of guile, deception; learned in the secrets and their texts;

Master at writing and edifying two tens of secret lore;

I seek your blessing, first among all of those who hold the diamond.

"Lord of the Able" refers to the present Buddha; the "ten qualities" are listed in the verse directly following.

12. *steady and wise:* A Buddhist monk is "steady" when he has kept his vows pure for at least ten years following his ordination. "Wise" refers to knowledge of a whole list of subjects in the study of ethics, such as understanding what is a moral downfall and what is not, or which misdeeds are more serious than others.

13. *the three trainings:* These are exceptional morality, exceptional concentration, and exceptional wisdom.

14. *Jewel of the Sutras:* A "sutra" is an open teaching of the Buddha. The verse is from a famed commentary taught to Master Asanga (c. 350 A.D.) by Loving One, the Future Buddha.

15. *eight great benefits:* The eight are described as coming close to Buddhahood, pleasing the Buddhas, overcoming evil influences, avoiding improper activities and thoughts, reaching high realizations, always meeting teachers, never falling to the lower realms, and attaining temporary and ultimate goals with ease.

16. *A person who doesn't treat as a lama...* The quotation is found on f. 161b of a commentary on the secret teaching of the Lord of Death composed by Ratnakara Shanti, also known as Shantipa. He was a famed master of the great Vikramashila Monastery in northeast India during the 10th Century, and taught Lord Atisha before his journey to Tibet.

17. Wheel of Time: Original source for the quotation not found; it appears in

Pabongka Rinpoche's great work on the Steps of the path, attributed only to the "Wheel of Time" with no mention of "root text." The root text for the secret teaching on the Wheel of Time was huge, twelve thousand verses long, and only abridgements have been included in the Tibetan canon.

18. *the greater way:* The Buddha gave various levels of teachings for disciples of different capacities; these are known as the "greater" and "lesser" ways.

19. *Fifty Verses on Lamas:* Traditional manual on how to behave towards one's spiritual guide, by the great Buddhist poet Ashvaghosha (c. 100 A.D.). The thirteen causes of a premature death are listed on f. 10a and explained by Lord Tsongkapa in his commentary as follows: an unbearable pain in the skull, injury by various powerful animals, different illnesses, demonic forces, plague, poison, authorities of the land, fire, snakes, water, spirits, thieves, and fierce demigods. After dying in one of these ways, the person descends directly to the hells.

20. *Try to mix up all the systems...* Source of quotation not found. Tuken Dharma Vajra, also known as Lobsang Chukyi Nyima (1737-1802), was the third of the Tuken line of spiritual masters and is famed for his work on comparative Buddhist school systems, as well as for biographies of saints such as Changkya Rolpay Dorje, said to be the former life of Pabongka Rinpoche himself (see the Foreword, and also his collected works.)

21. *Even in some insignificant business...* Quotation from f. 95a of his famed work on the three types of vows.

22. *We call someone...* From a classic text on the teachings of emptiness by Master Aryadeva (c. 200 A.D.).

23. *six images for the instruction:* For these and the three "problems of the pot."

24. *Only in Tibet...* Original source not found. The quotation also appears in the greater work on the Steps by Lord Tsongkapa.

25. *No practitioner, a person who loves this life...* Quotation from p. 436 of this classic "mental training" text of the venerable Drakpa Gyeltsen. The "four loves" are listed this way:

Love for this life, which makes one no practitioner.

Love for this world, which is no renunciation.

Love for one's selfish interests, which makes one no bodhisattva.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

Grasping to a real "me," which is no correct view.

26. *repeated three times, and loud:* A full account of the incident is found in the *Collected Sayings of the Seers,* compiled by Tsunpa Chegom.

27. *They go into seclusion...* Source of this and the following quotation not found. Both appear in Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation in Our Hands*. "Droway Gonpo" is a name applied to a number of Tibetan sages; Pabongka Rinpoche adds the word "Gyer" before the name in one instance, but it is still not clear to whom the quotations are to be attributed.

28. *Oh worldly wise!* From the famed epistle of spiritual instruction sent by the great Buddhist philosopher Master Nagarjuna (c. 200 A.D.) to the Indian king Udayibhadra.

29. *In the city of daily concerns...* Original source of quotation not found; the lines appear as well in Pabongka Rinpoche's work on the Steps. It is a practice for Buddhist meditators to go to some frightening place, like a cemetery or a high cliff, to observe their heightened sense of a "self" and better understand it. Graveyards in Tibet and India were especially fear-inspiring because bodies were simply laid out rather than buried, and this would attract dangerous wild animals. The great Lingrepa, full name Padma Dorje (1128-1188), was a student of Droway Gonpo Pakmo Drupa and founded one of the orders of the Kagyu tradition of Tibetan Buddhism.

30. *ten "ultimate riches":* We see the roots of these ten riches in the instructions of Geshe Shawopa among the *Collected Sayings of the Seers*.

31. *And in the days when my teaching...* The Buddha's eloquent oath appears on f. 414. The "saffron robe" is that of a Buddhist monk.

32. *Gyalchok Kelsang Gyatso* (1708-1757) *and Panchen Lobsang Yeshe* (1663-1737): The former was the seventh of the Dalai Lamas, spiritual and temporal rulers of Tibet. He built the Norbulingka, magnificent summer palace of the Dalai Lamas, and sponsored a carving of the wooden printing-blocks for the entire collection of over 4,000 titles in the Tibetan Buddhist canon. The latter figure was the second of the Panchen Lamas, another exalted lineage of spiritual and temporal leaders centered at the great Tashi Lhunpo Monastery in south-central Tibet. He was an eminent practitioner and scholar of Buddhism while still one of the most powerful political figures of his time.

33. *If in your heart...* The quoted lines appear on p. 163 of the famous biography of Lord Milarepa by his disciple Rechung Dorje Drakpa (1083-1161).

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

34. *No way my loved ones know...* The lines are found in the section about Lord Milarepa (ff. 72-100) from the *Ocean of Songs of the Kagyu* by Karmapa Mikyu Dorje (1507-1554).

35. *This body of leisure…* Another quotation from the very brief version of Lord Tsongkapa's *Steps on the Path to Buddhahood*.

36. *benefits that come from keeping your mind on death, etc.:* In his masterwork *Liberation in Our Hands,* Pabongka Rinpoche lists six benefits of keeping your mind on death: your practice becomes really pure; it gains power; the thoughts help you start practice; they help you strive hard during your practice; they help bring your practice to a successful conclusion; and in the hour of death you go with satisfaction, for you know you have spent your life meaningfully.

The Rinpoche also lists six problems that come from not keeping your mind on death: you neglect your religious life, and spend all your days in thoughts of what to eat or wear-- this life's distractions; you consider death occasionally but always think it will come later, and delay your practice; or you do practice, but for the wrong reason--with hopes of reputation; you practice but with no enthusiasm, and drop it after a while; you get deeper into this life, your attitude gets worse, and life begins to hurt you; and at death you naturally feel intense regret, for you have wasted all your efforts on this present life.

The three principles, for how actually to keep your mind on death, have three reasons each, making a total of nine. First of all, death is certain: no power in the universe can stop death when it arrives; there is no way to add time to your life, you come closer to death every minute; even while you are alive, the free time available for your practice is extremely limited before you have to die.

The second principle is that there is absolutely no certainty when you will die. We are in a time and realm where the length of life is uncertain; we can be sure we will never have enough time to defeat all our enemies, raise up all our friends, and still complete our religious practice before we die. The things that can kill us are many; the things that keep us alive are few. And in general the body we have is fragile, weak: a small splinter in the hand can give us an infection that kills us--we are like bubbles, like candles in a windstorm.

The third principle is that, at the moment of death, nothing at all can help us but our spiritual practice. None of your money or things can help you. None of your friends or family can help you--they can be holding you tightly by the arms and legs, but still you will slip away alone. And not even your own body can help you--you have to give up your most cherished possession, your beloved body, along with everything else. The three principles call for three resolves on our part. Knowing that we shall have to die, we must resolve to begin our practice. Knowing that we could die any time, we must quit our worldly work immediately and start our practice today. And finally, since nothing else can help us, we must devote ourselves to our practice only. A man who is hiking many miles doesn't fill up his pack with a lot of crap that he won't be needing.

The above points are paraphrased from the works on the Steps of the path by Lord Tsongkapa and Pabongka Rinpoche. For the last point mentioned in the text, the meditation on what it's like to die, we quote the Rinpoche directly (ff. 182b-183a):

They try all different kinds of treatments and holy rituals but your condition gets worse and worse. The doctors start lying to you. Your friends and relatives say all sorts of cheery things to your face, but behind your back they start wrapping up your affairs, because everyone can see you're going to die.

Your body starts to lose its familiar warmth. It's hard to breathe. The nostrils collapse. The lips curl back. The color starts to drain from your face. All sorts of repulsive signs begin to show, inside and outside of you.

You think of all the wrong things you did in your life, and wish so badly you had never done them. You can't quite be sure if you ever really got rid of them all when you confessed; or that you really did any true good deed.

Then comes the final pain, the unspeakable searing pain that comes with death. The basic building blocks of your body begin their domino collapse, you are blinded by catastrophic images, hallucinations of pure terror crowd into your mind, and carry you away, and the whole world you have been living blinks out.

People take your corpse and wrap it up in a sheet and lay it in some corner. They hang up a curtain to hide it. Somebody lights up a smudgy little candle and leaves it there. If you're one of those reincarnated lamas, they dress you up in you fancy ritual robes and try to make you look good.

Right now we are all running around trying to arrange ourselves a nice house, soft clothes, cozy chairs. But you know the custom here in Tibet--when you die they'll tie your arms and legs up against your chest with a leather strap, carry the body far from town, and throw it naked out on the rocks. Right now we all go home and try to cook ourselves up some delectable dish--but there will come a day when you stand there praying for a little taste of those cakes they offer the spirits of the dead. Right now we have the big name--they call us Doctor Professor, or Respected Sir, or Your Reverence. But there will come a day when they look at your body and call you nothing but "that stinking corpse." There will come a day when the title they put in front of your name is "the late," or "that guy they used to call..."

So now when you respected lamas out there in the audience look at your ritual robes, let it come into your thoughts that these are the robes they will dress your remains in after you have expired. And all the rest of us, when we look at our bedsheets before we go to sleep, should try to remember that these are what they will wrap our stinking corpse in when we die. As Milarepa said,

> That frightful corpse they talk about Is the very body you wear, meditator.

He means look at your own body now, and always see the future corpse.

37. *the realms:* Buddhism teaches that there are three realms of existence. We live in the "desire" realm, so called because our principal interests are food and sex. Higher up is the "form" realm, where beings live in a state of meditation and have beautiful forms. Even higher is the "formless" realm, where beings are free of gross suffering and have only mental bodies.

38. *Non-virtue brings all sufferings...* Quotation from f. 116b of the Master's *Jewel Rosary*.

39. *the three rare jewels:* So named because they are supremely valuable and infrequently found--the Buddha, defined as the ultimate shelter, a being who has completed the highest possible good for himself and others; the Dharma, realizations or the end of undesirable qualities within a person's mind; and the Sangha, or any being who has perceived the true nature of reality directly.

40. *King Mefeed:* A legendary king of yore who was said to have been born spontaneously; he was named from the fact that the concubines of his father competed to breast-feed the miraculous child and thereby become the Queen Mother. His story is mentioned in many works; see Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation* (f. 252a), as well as the list in Prof. Edgerton's *Dictionary* under the king's Sanskrit name, Mandhata.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading One

41. *Keep your wants few...* The dictum is expounded upon by the great Buddhist philosopher Vasubandhu (c. 300 A.D.) in the sixth chapter of his classic *Treasure of Wisdom*.

42. *If people like these...* From the eloquent manual for bodhisattvas by the Buddhist poet-philosopher Shantideva (695- 743 A.D.).

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Two: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part Two

The following selections are taken from The Three Principal Paths (Lam-gtzo rnamgsum), written by the incomparable Tibetan master Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The commentary is by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), who was a teacher of our root Lama, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin, and also a teacher of the teacher of His Holiness the Dalai Lama.

43 Why You Need the Wish for Enlightenment



We have now reached the second of the four parts in the actual body of the text. This is an explanation of the wish to achieve enlightenment for the sake of every living being. This explanation itself will include three sections: why you need the wish for enlightenment, how to go about developing this wish, and how to know when you've finally developed it. The next verse of the root text tells us why we need this great wish:

Renunciation though can never bring The total bliss of matchless Buddhahood Unless it's bound by the purest wish; and so, The wise seek the high wish for enlightenment.

You may be able to gain some fierce feelings of renunciation as we described it above; any good deeds you do under their influence though can only bring you an ordinary nirvana—they alone can never serve to bring you to omniscient enlightenment. We can see this from the fact that even practicioners of lower paths—people we call "listeners" and "self-made victors"—can possess true renunciation.⁴³

$$\begin{split} \widehat{f}_{A^{i}} \widehat{q} \cdot \widehat{q} \cdot \widehat{d}_{i} \cdot \widehat{q}_{i} \cdot \widehat$$

For full enlightenment then a person needs to develop within his mind all three of the principal paths—and more specifically, he must have gained the second path: the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. You may possess extra-sensory powers, you may be able to perform miracles, you may have any number of fantastic qualities—but unless you have this precious jewel in your heart, you will never enter that select group of people who practice the greater way. Without this highest wish, none of your qualities will ever bring you total bliss—none of them, none of them at all, will bring you Buddhahood: the ability to free each and every living being from all the troubles of cyclic life, and from those of a lower escape from cyclic life.⁴⁴

44Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment มีราสูสาขิ) ฟิมมาลาร์าพัราสา ผู้ราวธุสารราก วรุสานา รทัสานชิสาม พัสามาณมาสมูรมานานราวฉุ้านานหมีมารุรานชานมาสูสารฐานสิ่งสัมามูา จุสารราริสามาชิมพีซิสังนารุราก สุรารราสามาชิมพีซิสานารุราก สุรารรา ริสารราชาชาซิสาชราสุชิสาชราสุชิสาชราชิสาชส์สานารุราก สุรารสา ริมารุสารราชาชาซิสาชราสุชิสาชราชิสาชส์สาชราชิสานาชิสาร์นี้รัชมามูา หน้า

If you do gain this great wish, you become a person who truly deserves to have the entire world—with all its different kinds of beings up to humans and gods—bow down at your feet, just as holy books like *The Bodhisattva's Life*, and *Entering the Middle Way*, and *The Rare Stack* describe it.⁴⁵ You find yourself in a different class of being, and then you completely outshine listeners and self-made victors—practitioners of the lower paths. Every virtuous act you do, even down to throwing a scrap of food to some wild bird, becomes a practice of the greater way; becomes a cause for your future Buddhahood; becomes the way of life of a bodhisattva.

If a person possesses this holy wish to achieve enlightenment for the sake of every living being, then all the countless Buddhas in all the ten directions of space look upon him as their son. And all the great bodhisattvas look upon him as their brother.

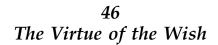
But that's not all; the whole question of whether you have reached the greater way, and the whole question of whether you will be able to achieve Buddhahood in this one short life, depend on whether you have truly gained this wish. So if you want enlightenment, our Lama concluded, you must train your thoughts in the wish.

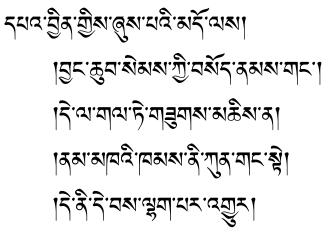
45
How to Develop the Wish for Enlightenment
ᡰᠿᢩᡘᠯᢂ᠄ᡔᠴᠯ᠂᠊᠋᠊᠋ᢐ᠂ᠴᢅ᠂ᠴᢙᢆ᠂ᡅ᠂ᠼᢆᢖᡘ᠂ᡚᢩᢂ᠂ᡛᢋ ᡆ᠍᠊ᡜᢆᠳᢄᡃ᠋ᡢᡆ᠙᠙ᢂ᠉᠋ᢆᠯ᠂ᡆᢆᢡ᠅᠋ᠼᢆᢖᡘ᠂ᡚᢩᢂ᠂ᡛᢋ
ารสิ์ฦารุฑฺฉฺณฺฆฺาฏิฺฉธิรฺาฺรารุมฺารัฺฆฺารฺฆฺฌฺฆๅ
ૡઽૡૻૡૻૡૻૡૡઌ૾ૻૡૻ૾ૡૻ૽ૡૡ૾ૻૡૻૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡૡ
ષ્ય મૈયા સુવ પવે જ્ઞુયા હેવ ગાવ વર્ષા વજે વજા
ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
ૡૢૻ૱ૢૻ૾ૡૹ૾ૡ૽ૻૡૻ૱૱ૡ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
માં નચા સુવચા વર્ડે વર્ડ્ડ શુરુ પવે ચા સુચચા શી
ๅ๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛๛

เชิญเนญเวลียงไ

They're swept along on four fierce river currents, Chained up tight in past deeds, hard to undo, Stuffed in a steel cage of grasping "self," Smothered in the pitch-black ignorance.

In a limitless round they're born, and in their births Are tortured by three sufferings without a break; Think how your mothers feel, think of what's happening To them: try to develop this highest wish.





The Sutra that Viradatta Requested says as well,

Were the merit of the wish for enlightenment To take on some kind of physical form It would fill the reaches of space itself And then spill over farther still.⁴⁶

47 The Actual Steps

Here in the teachings of the Buddha there are two methods given for training one's mind in this precious jewel, the wish for enlightenment. The first is known as the "seven-part, cause-and-effect instruction." The second we call "exchanging self and others." No matter which of the two you use to train your mind, you can definitely gain the wish for enlightenment. The way to train oneself in the wish, the way which is complete and which never errs, the way unmatched by any other here upon this earth, is the instruction of the Steps of the path to Buddhahood, the very essence of all the teachings of our gentle protector, the great Tsongkapa. Thus you should train your mind in the wish for enlightenment by using this very instruction.

ૡૹૣૹૻૡૢૻ૾ૻઽૻૻ૾ૻ૾ૹ૾૾ૣઽૻૻ૽૾ૺૹ૾૾૱ૻઌ૽ૼૡ૽૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૢ૽ૢૻ૿ઌ૿૾ૡૢૺ

Here we'll give just a brief summary of how one trains himself in the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. The start-off is to practice feelings of neutrality towards all beings; after that, one begins meditation on each of the steps from "mother recognition" on up. The first three steps are to recognize all beings as one's mothers, to feel gratitude for their kindness, and to wish to repay that kindness. These three act as a cause for what we call "beautiful" loving-kindness. This type of loving-kindness is itself the fourth step; it is both an effect brought about by the first three, and a cause for the fifth: great compassion.

৫৯২.৯১%

The relative intensity of one's wish for enlightenment depends on the intensity of one's feeling of great compassion. If you find it difficult to develop compassion, you can practice the meditation known as "Lama Loving-Gaze" to help you gain it. If you make good efforts to perform this meditation and the proper supplications, as well as the practice where you visualize that your mind and that of Loving-Gaze are mixed inseparably, then you can gain a blessing for it.⁴⁷ This is a very special personal instruction for developing great compassion. There were, our Lama explained, a number of other profound points in this regard—but he would not detail them in a public gathering.

Once you develop great compassion, then you can develop the extraordinary form of personal responsibility, where you take upon yourself the load of working for others' benefit. And the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being comes from this.

The meditation on neutrality goes like this. First you put your thoughts in an even state, free of feelings of like and dislike, by thinking about someone who is for you a neutral figure: neither your enemy nor your friend. Then you imagine that two people are sitting before you: one of your best-loved friends, and one of your ugliest enemies. Next you think very carefully about how the friend has, in many of your previous lives, taken birth as your enemy and hurt you. You think too about how the enemy has, in so many of your past lives, taken birth as your friend and helped you. This puts your mind in the even state, free of feelings of like and dislike.

You go on then to think about how all living beings are equal in that, from his own point of view, each one of them wants to be happy. They are equal too in not wanting pain. And they are equal in that every one has acted as both my enemy and my friend, many many times. So who am I supposed to like? And who am I supposed to dislike? You have to keep on practicing this way until, one day, you gain neutral feelings towards all sentient beings, as vast in extent as space itself.

The next step is the meditation where you recognize that every living being is your mother. Gaining this recognition is much easier if you apply the line of reasoning mentioned in the *Commentary on Valid Perception* for demonstrating the infinite regression of one's awareness. We'll present this reasoning here, in brief.⁴⁸

Your awareness of today is a mental continuation of the awareness you had yesterday. This year's awareness is a mental continuation of the awareness you had the year before. Just so, your awareness over this entire life is a mental continuation of the awareness you had in your former life. The awareness you had in your former life was, in turn, a mental continuation of the awareness you had in the life before that. You can continue back in a regression like this and absolutely never reach some point where you can say, "Prior to this, I had no awareness." This then proves the infinite regression of one's awareness.

My own circle of life then must also be beginningless, and the births I have taken as well can have no starting point. There exists no place where I have never taken birth. I have taken birth in every single place, countless times. There exists no creature whose body I have not worn. I have worn every kind of body, countless times. Just the lives I have taken as a dog are themselves beyond any number to count. And the same is true for every living being.

Therefore there exists no being who has never been my mother. Absolutely every single one of them has been my mother a countless number of times. Even the number of times that each has been my mother in just my births as a human is past all counting too.

Do this meditation over and over until you gain a deepfelt certainty that each and every living being has been your mother, over and over, countless times.

Developing a sense of gratitude is the next step, and you can start by taking your mother in this present life. She began her hardships for me while I was still in her womb, gladly taking it upon herself to avoid anything she felt might hurt me—even down to the food she ate—treating herself with care, as though she were sick. For nine months and ten days she carried me in her womb, looking at her own body as though it belonged to someone else, someone very ill, and hesitating even to take big steps.

As she gave me birth, my mother was torn with violent suffering, excruciating pain, and yet still felt an overwhelming joy, as though she had discovered some precious gem that would grant her any wish.

Right then I knew absolutely nothing more than to cry and wave my arms around somehow. I was totally helpless. Totally stupid. Incapacitated. Nothing more than some baby chick with a red-rubber beak still yet to harden. But she swayed me on her fingertips, and pressed me to her body's warmth, and greeted me with a smile of love.

With joyful eyes she gazed on me, and wiped the snot from my face with her lips, and cleaned my filthy shit with her hands. Sometimes she chewed my food for me, and fed me things like milky porridge straight from her mouth to mine. She did her best to protect me from any hurt. She did her best to get me any good.

ઽ૽ૺઽૣૹૻૻૹૻ૾ૢૣૣૣૣઌૹૻૻૹૻૢૻઽઽૹ૽૿ૺૹ૿ૢૢ૾ૺૢૼૻૣૹૢૻૣૹૻૻૡ૽ૻૹૻૹૺૹૻૻૹૼૻૹૻૹૹૹૻૻ૱૱૱૱૱ ૡૻઌૡૢૹૻઌ૽૾ૺ૱ઽૺૹ૾૾૱ઌ૱ઌ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ઌઌૡૢૹૻઌ૾૾૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱

In those days I had to look to her for everything; good or bad, happy or sad, all the hope I could have lay in one person: mother. But for her kindness, I wouldn't have lasted an hour; they could have set me out in the open right then and some birds or a dog would have come and made a meal of me—I'd have no hope of coming out alive. Every single day she protected me from harms that could have taken my life, no less than a hundred times. Such was her kindness.

And while I was growing up she gathered together whatever I needed, avoiding no bad deed, and no suffering, and caring nothing for what other people might say of her. All the money and things she had she handed over to me, hesitating to use anything for herself.

For those of us who are fortunate enough to be practicing the monastic life, it was mother who put forth all the necessary expenses, giving without reservation, to arrange our admission into the monastery. And from that time on she supported us here, from whatever resources she had. Thus the kindness she has shown us is truly without measure.

And this is not the only life in which my present mother has given this kindness to me. She has showered me with this kindness, great kindness, over and over, countless times, in my many lives before. And she is not the only one; every single living being has been my mother in my past lives, and during those lives cared for me no less than my present mother does—it is only my transitions from death to birth that prevent me from recognizing all these mothers now.

Look now, concluded our Lama, at the way any common animal—a dog or bird, even the tiny sparrow—shows affection for its young, and cares for it well. From watching this we can imagine what kindness we were given too.

The next step in gaining the wish for enlightenment is to develop a wish to repay this great kindness. So every living being is my mother, and has given me her loving care over and over endlessly, for time with no beginning. And we know from what was described above that they are being swept along by four great currents, out to sea—to the vast expanse of the ocean of cyclic life. They are tormented, without a break, by the three types of suffering, and all the other pains. Their situation is desperate.

And here am I, their child. Right now I have a chance to rescue them from this ocean of cyclic life. Suppose I simply sit and bide my time, and give no thought to them. This is the lowest a person could stoop—base and absolutely shameless.

Right now I could give them things that they would be happy to get—food, or clothes, or beds to sleep on, whatever. But these are only some temporary happiness within the circle of life. The very highest way of repaying their kindness would be to put them into the state of ultimate happiness. So let me decide within myself that every living being must come to have every happiness. And every one should be freed as well from every form of pain.

Right now it's absurd to say that these beings have any kind of pure happiness—they don't even have any of the impure kinds. Every single thing they think is happiness is, in its essence, nothing more than pain. They want wantables but don't want to know about doing the good deeds that bring happiness. They want no unwantables but don't want to know about giving up the bad deeds that bring pain. They act ass backwards: they do what they shouldn't and don't what they should. And so my dear aged mothers, these living beings, are made to suffer.

"How good it would be if they could all find every happiness, and every cause of happiness. I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

"How good it would be if they could all be free of every pain, and every cause of pain. I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

Let these two trains of thought run through your mind; meditate on them over and over again. Then you will come to feel the very strongest loving-kindness and compassion.

קטיותדיקידריאריאקאילו

Some people might come up with the idea that "Why should I take upon myself this great load, of every living being? There are plenty of Buddhas and bodhisattvas around to guide them on their way." This kind of thought though is absolutely improper. It's base. It's shameless. It's as if your mother in this life was hungry, and parched, and you expected someone else's child to go and give her food and drink. But it's you for whom she has cared, and the responsibility of paying her back has fallen only to you.

It's the same with all these living beings, who for beginningless time have served as my mother so many times, and who in each of these times cared for me in every way with the kindness of this present mother. Returning their kindness is no business of anyone else at all, not for some Buddha or bodhisattva—it is my responsibility, and only mine.

ଈୖ୶୶୕୰ଌ୶୕୳ୖୠ୕୳୷ୠ୵ୄୖଌ୶୳୷ୠ୵ୄୢୖୡ୕ୣ୩୲୴ୢୖୄଌ୕ୖୖୖୖୖ୴୲୳୰୷ୠୖୠ୵ଽ୲ୠୄୡ୶ ୴୵୶୲୶୲୶୶୶୳୵୕ୖଈ୶ଈ୲୰ଌୠ୲ଌ୕୶୶୰୰ୠୖ୳୷ଽଌ୶୶୲୰ୠୄ୵ୠ୵ୢଌୡ୲୳୲୴୷୵୵ଽ ୶ୗୖୖୖୖଌ୶୲ୠୄୢୄୢ୶୲ୠୄୢୖଌ୶୲୷ୢୄୖଌ୶୲୵ୠୄଌ୶୲ଽ୲ୡ୶୲ୠୠୄ୵ୠ୵୲ୠୄୡୠ୲ୄୠୢୄୡୠ୲ୠୄୡୢ ୠ୲୶୲୶୵ୠୄ୶୲ୠୄୢୄୢୠୠ୲ୄୠ୲୵ୠୄୖୢୄୣ୶ୠ୲ ୠ୶୶୲୶ୠୣୠୠ୲ୠୄୠ୲ୠୄୢୄୠୠୄୢୄୖ

So someone is going to do it—to make sure every sentient being has every happiness, and never a single pain. It is going to be myself; I'll rely on no one else. I by myself will see to it that every single being comes to have every single happiness. And I by myself will see to it that every single being gets free of every single pain. I will by myself put them into the state of the Lama, the state of Buddhahood. Meditate strongly on these thoughts; they are the step we call the "extraordinary form of personal responsibility."

I may be able to develop this noble intention, but the fact is that I'm completely incapable of leading a single being to Buddhahood—much less every one of them. Who then has the capacity? This power is had by a fully enlightened Buddha—only by him, and by no one else at all. If I can reach the same state, I will by definition have brought both mine and others' benefit to its perfection. And then every single ray of light that emanates from me, whether it be an action of my body, or my speech, or my thoughts, will have the power to accomplish the ends of countless sentient beings.

And so, for the sake of every living being, I will do anything I can to achieve this one great goal—the state of a Buddha—with every speed. Think this way to yourself, and do anything you can to develop the genuine wish to reach enlightenment for every living being.

48 Authentic Practice

ริราพราฐสพารมาฏิเพชิณาสราณาฏิราชิพาริพาสาพารพาดิสาณาฏิราฮิราสา ณพา ธูราสูสาฏิเพิ่มพาณาฏิราฮิรามศาสาชราดิ์สา าธูราพิมพาณริกาฮุสาพา

नमाम्रीम्बियान् मुनिनन्त्रीसायमायेसाम्बरायमान्त्रीवायमावन्त्रा ।

Nowadays when you go up to someone and ask him what his very most important practice is, he'll tell you he's meditating on one of those powerful tutelary deities. You don't meet people who say their chief practice is meditating on the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. Much less, for in fact it's quite difficult to find anyone who even realizes that he should make this wish his centermost practice.

We see people making all different sorts of things their central practice: the Elimination Ritual for getting rid of bad spirits, the Golden Tea offering, the Spell for Ending Evil Litigation, the ritual they call Stopping All Harms, the Sheep Spell, the Horse Spell, the Money Spell, the ritual for No More Problems, the ritual for Stopping Bad Luck at the End of the Twelve-Year Cycle, the ritual for Preventing the Praise that Others Give You from Turning to a Curse, and on and on. These are all so bad that they make it look pretty good when a person can say he's making a central practice out of anything at all associated with some authentic tutelary deity.⁴⁹

We also see a number of works gaining some popularity in different localities that seem to be just anything somebody could think up: the String of Jewels for those Bound by Blood, the Blade of Gold for Confessing Sins, the so-called "Dog Sutra," the so-called "Wolf Sutra," the so-called "Fox Sutra," the so-called

"Bear Sutra," the so-called "Snake Sutra," and all the rest. We find though absolutely no legitimate origin for any of these works.

If you really do need a text to use for confessing your bad deeds, you should stop wasting your time with fake scriptures and meaningless efforts like these. The Victors have, in all their open and secret teachings, given us more than enough appropriate works: the *Three Heaps Sutra*, the *Sublime Medicine Sutra*, the *Sutra of the Great Freedom*, the *Sutra of the Eon of Fortune*, and others of the like.⁵⁰ It is texts like these, our Lama told us, authoritative texts with a legitimate origin, that we must use for our study and recitations.

49 The Real Wish

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Two

Now there are also some people around who think to themselves, "But I *do* have the wish for enlightenment. After all, at the beginning of all my devotions I recite the 'Buddha-Dharma-Sangha' prayer⁵¹ and think about achieving Buddhahood so I could help every living being." This though is just expressing a hope that you gain the wish for enlightenment—it's just making a prayer about the wish. It's not the actual wish itself. If it were, then developing the wish to achieve Buddhahood would have to be the very easiest of all the many practices of virtue we are supposedly trying to do. And so, concluded our Lama, we must rather gain this true wish by putting our minds through the training described above—one by one through each of the steps, in order.

How to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

ષાસુસાય સેસસાને સુસાય જે જત્તી સુંસામેસાનન પેંગ્યસાય સુન્સાય ગયા મે	EI.
ૹૺઃ હુઽ ઃ સેંગચાયયાલે ન પ્રાપ્ય સાથે છે. આ સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે છે. આ સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે સાથે	<i>दे</i> ।
૨.૨.૨.૩.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨.૨	الح.
ҵु [੶] ᠗᠂ᡝᢅ᠆᠄ᢋ᠍᠉᠂᠙ᡬᢋ᠂ᡘᡃ᠋᠈ᠺᡆ᠂ᢆᡍ᠂ᢜ᠆ᢩᢂ᠂᠋ᡘ᠋᠂᠌ᡇᠵ᠋	

This brings us to the third and final section in our explanation of the wish for enlightenment: how to know when you've finally developed it. This point is covered with great detail in various works, including both the more extensive and the briefer presentations on the Steps of the path to enlightenment, which at this point employ material from the first of the *Stages of Meditation*.⁵² To put it briefly, suppose a mother has watched her beloved child slip down into a pit of red-hot coals. The fire is searing his body. She cannot stand to see it go on for a single second. She throws herself forward to pull the child out.

นลามสุราสาณาฐารชิญาฏรามิาส์รานรา จิมลางสายมลางราฏิรัสารูา ૻ૾ૣૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૣૹૻૡૡ૾ૺૻૹઽૹૻૡૢૢૼૹૻૻ૽૽ૢ૿૽ઌ૽ૼૡૡઽૻૡૢૻૢૻૢૻૻૻઌૻૹ૾ૢૺઽૻઽૢૻઙ૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼઌૻઌ૾ૼૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૻ૽ઌ૽૿ૢ૽ૼૡ૽ૣૼૼૼૼઌ૾ૼૹૼૹૻૻૹૻૻ૿ઌ૿ૡૼ

⁵⁰

All the living creatures of the universe, all our dear mothers, are burning in the same way, in the unbearable pain of the three lower realms, and the circle of life in general. When we cannot stand to see it go on for a single second more, when we finally feel the true wish to reach total enlightenment, immediately, for the sake of every living being, well then—our Lama concluded—you can say you have gained the wish for enlightenment.

51 Why You Need Correct View

We have now reached the third of the four parts of the body of the text: the explanation of correct view. Here there are five sections; the first, which explains why you need to meditate on correct view, is expressed in the next verse of the root text:

You may master renunciation and the wish, But unless you have the wisdom perceiving reality You cannot cut the root of cyclic life. Make efforts in ways then to perceive interdependence.

অর্উন্'শ্বম'র্মা

19

What the verse is saying is this: "Unless you have that very profound correct view about suchness—unless you have the wisdom that perceives reality, or ultimate truth—you can strive to perfect renunciation and the wish for enlightenment (along with all the other 'method' practices) as much as you please; but you cannot cut the root of cyclic life, grasping to a 'self,' since these practices alone do not act as a direct antidote for your grasping."

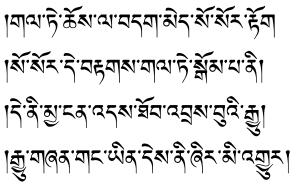
52 Meditation Must Include Emptiness

Certain non-Buddhist sages can put themselves into a deep, single-pointed state of meditation—and they attain all eight levels of concentration and formlessness.⁵³ But they lack the view with which you realize no self exists, and fail therefore even to reduce their harmful emotions slightly—much less to eliminate them. As the sutra called *King of Concentration* says,

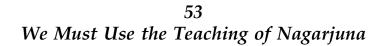
The worldly meditate on concentration But it doesn't destroy their concept of a self. This feeds their unhealthy thoughts, stirs them up, And ends like the meditation of Udraka.⁵⁴

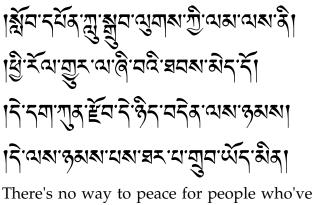


Our tendency to grasp to some "self" is the very root of our circling life. To cut this root we absolutely must gain the view that perceives that no such self exists. As the same work says,



Suppose you analyze, see the no-self of things, And suppose you meditate on what you've seen; It leads you to the result of gaining nirvana— Nothing else can lead you to this peace.





Stepped from the path Of the system taught by the Master Nagarjuna. They've lost the truths, the conventional and the real; Those who've lost the truths cannot be free.⁵⁵

The matchless Lord Atisha has said as well:

Nagarjuna's student was Chandrakirti; The instructions handed down from them Bring you to see reality, truth.⁵⁶

You can see then that this profound viewpoint on things is indispensable for both the open and the secret teachings.

Broadly speaking, there were four great schools of Buddhist thought that came out of India—the "land of the realized." Members of the Vatsiputriya section of the "Detailist" school⁵⁷ assert that what we seek to see does not exist is any self which is unchanging, and singular, and independent. Other members of the Detailist school, as well as those of the "Scripturalist" school,⁵⁸ teach that what we seek to deny is something that can stand on its own, something which exists in a substantial way.

The "Mind-Only" school⁵⁹ says that what we come to realize does not exist is any case where the subject that holds an object and the object which it holds are made from any different "substance."⁶⁰ What we call the "Independent," one part of the Middle Way school,⁶¹ believes that what we come to refute is any object that exists in some unique way of its own, rather than being established as an existent thing simply by virtue of its having appeared to an unaffected awareness.⁶²

The "Implication" section of the Middle Way school,⁶³ finally, teaches that what we come to see has no existence is an object which exists from its own side, rather than simply existing through a concept supplied from our side.

55 What "Interdependence" Really Means

Different schools have different ways of explaining "interdependence." The "Functionalist" group⁶⁴ says that when something is "interdependent," it's because it has come about through various causes and conditions. This doesn't allow them to establish interdependence for those objects which are unchanging, and have no causes.

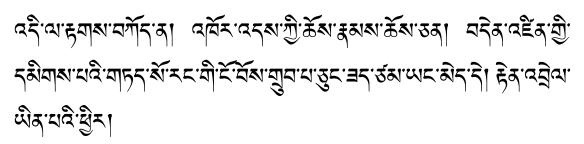
The "Independent" group has a way of describing interdependence that's a little bit better. They say that something is interdependent whenever it exists in dependence upon its parts. They then can establish interdependence with both changing and unchanging objects: for those with causes and without.

The way the last group, the one we call "Implication," decides that something is interdependent is subtler than all the rest. They say that something is interdependent when we have taken two things—a reasonable basis to be given a name and a reasonable idea to give it a name—and come out with an object we gave a name.

> 56 The Emptiness of "Me"

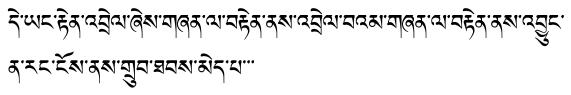
ริ'୴ଽୖଈ୕[ୢ]୶୲ଽ୶୶୲୰ଽୄଽ୶୲୶୶୲୶ୡୖ୲ଽ୵ଌୖଽ୕୶୲୶ୄୖୠୄଽୖ୷୶୶ୄୠୄୢଽ୕ଽ୷୷୶୲ ଽୖ୲୷୲୶୲ୢୖୄ୶୶୴ଽ୕ଽଽଽ୶୶୶ୄୣୠ୷୴ୄୢଽ୷୲୰୶୲୴ଽ୲ୠୄଽ୶୶୶ୄୄୠୄଽ୕ୖ୷୷୶୶୲ ଈ୶୶୲୶ୖୠ୶୲ଌୖ୕୶୲୶ୄୖୄୖୢୗ୲ୖୢୄଌଽୄଽ୴ଽ୕ଌ୕ୠ୶୲୴୰୰୶୲୴ୖୡ୶୶ୠୄୄୠୄଽ୕ୖ୷୲୶୶୲ ୠ୶୲ଈ୶୶ୠୖୠ୶୲ଌୖ୕୶୲୶୲୰ଌୖୢଌଽୄଽ୴ଽ୕ଌୠ୶୲ୠ୶୲୷୲୶୶ୖୄୡ୶୲୶ଽୄ୲ୖ୕ଽ୕ଽ୶୶୲ ୠ୶୲ୠ୶୶ୢୄୠଽୄୠ୲ୢୠ୲ୢୠ୲ୠ୶୲ୠ୶୲୶ୠୄୖ୶ୖଽଽୠ୶୲ୠୠ୲ଽ୲ଽ୲ଽଽଽଽୠୖ୲ଽୡ୲ୠ୶ ୠଽୄୠୣୠୠୠୠ

Now every existent object is a product of something to be given a name and something else to give it a name. There is not a single atom of anything in the universe which does not rely on this process—there is nothing which exists from its own side. I too then am a product: someone has taken two things together, my body and my mind, and called it "me." I am nothing more than that. There is no "me" which exists from its own side; there is no "me" which does not rely on someone taking my body and mind together and granting it the name. Neither in fact do my body or my mind themselves exist from their own sides.



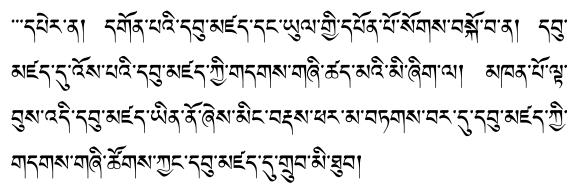
We can express all this in the classical form of a logical statement:

Consider all objects, those of the cycle and those beyond it. They have none of the true and solid existence that I hold them to have; they cannot exist on their own, Because they are interdependent.



What we mean here by "interdependence" is that all objects are interrelated with others on which they depend; that is, they occur through dependence on other objects. This is why there is absolutely no way they can exist on their own.

57 Names and Projections



We can take for example the way we appoint the chanting master of a monastery, or the governor of some district, or any similar figure. First there must be a reasonable basis to be called "chanting master": there must be a person who is worthy of being the chanting master. Then there must be someone like the abbot of the monastery who says, "He is now the chanting master." Until the abbot does so, until the abbot applies the name and the concept to this person, he cannot be the chanting master—even though he may have all the qualities you need to be named "chanting master."

If this were not the case, and if the person were somehow the chanting master from the beginning, all on his own without anyone putting the name or idea on him, then he would have to have been the chanting master all along—from the time he lay in his mother's womb. And when he was born, the moment he came out of her womb, people then should have said, "Here comes the chanting master!"

But people didn't say it, because getting to be the chanting master depends on many other factors. We don't call someone "chanting master" until there is a basis to give the name—a monk who is fit to be chanting master, and until a person qualified to give him the name hangs it on him, and says "This is the chanting master." Neither until this time does the person himself think "I am the chanting master." But once the concept has been applied to him, "You are the chanting master," then people start to talk about him as "chanting master," and he too begins to think "I am the chanting master."

58 Why We Can't Make Any Projection We Want

"Well then," you might think to yourself, "if every object is nothing more that what we label it, then I can go out and call gold 'brass,' or call a pillar a 'pitcher,' and that's just what they will be." But it's not; we do say that things are just labelled what they are, but for the label to be applied, the basis that gets it must be a reasonable one for the particular label.

When we apply a label, three conditions must be present. The three are as follows: (1) the object must be known to a conventional perception; (2) no other conventional perception can contradict its existence; and (3) no ultimate analysis can contradict its existence either. All three must be there.

ଽଽୄୡ୵୳ୖୖୖ୳ୖଌ୵୶୲୶୲ଵ୶ୄୖୠୡ୲୶୲ୡୖ୵ୄୠ୕ୣୄ୰୲୴ଽୄୢୠ୵ୖଽ୵ୖୖ୳ୖୖୖୖୖୖଽ୲ୖୖୖ୴୵ୄଌ୲ୣୄୣ୵୲୰୲୶୲ଵ୶ รี่สานริ.พ.ศิมเนามีพ.ริ.ษ.ณีร.กระมีพ.ก.ย่า สี.พร.มู.ภูมามาย่าง ริ'สารสานณารู'ฉฐิ์'สาสิ'สารสามาสาติ'สรามามิสานฉิ'สสามาริรา

Now here is what we mean when we say that one conventional perception has been contradicted by another. We can be standing looking at a scarecrow way off in the distance, and someone next to us says "That's a man over there," and we believe him. Then someone comes up who's seen for himself that the thing is a scarecrow and tells us "It's just a scarecrow." Our initial perception of the

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Two

thing as a man then vanishes. This is an indication that the basis was not a reasonable one for the given name.

That's not all—we can go around giving out all sorts of names, we can say "Rabbits have horns," but that's not going to make the horns exist; there's no reasonable basis to get the label. Therefore we must have a reasonable, conventional state of mind that is applying a name to a reasonable collection of parts which acts as the basis we want to give the name—and which actually exists.

59 What "No-Self" Really Means

Here what we call "self" refers to any nature or state objects could have in which they relied on nothing else. The non-existence of this is what we call "no-self."⁶⁵

Now the conventional "me"—the one that does exist—is only something we've created with a label, using some basis to take the label and some idea to give the label. This is what those lines in the ritual for the secret Frightener teaching are referring to as they start off, "Since every object is labelled, in dependence..." The same sentiment is expressed, among other places, in the ritual for the secret teaching of Highest Bliss: "Like an illusion, just labelled with a concept."

60 What "Me" Isn't There At All?

It's just the same when we investigate this idea of "me." Suppose someone comes up and calls you out by name. At first the "me" that appears to you is simply the conventional one: you think to yourself, "He's calling me." But then he says to you, "So you're the thief!" or something like that. Then your "me" starts getting stronger and stronger; you start thinking to yourself "Why is he pointing the finger at me? It wasn't me who stole it. They can't blame ME!" You start saying "me" "me" and the "me" starts looking like a "me" that can stand on its own, a very vivid "me."

Now we are not denying the existence of the ordinary, conventional "me" that first appeared to you. Nor are we denying that "me" appeared to stand on its own, that it appeared to truly exist. We are not even denying the "me" that appears to stand on its own, the "me" that appears to truly exist. Rather we are denying that "me" could actually stand on its own, that "me" could actually exist naturally: we are denying any "me" that could actually naturally exist.

નેશ્વ.ચે.બ.ચ.રેશેશ.તપુ.અશ્ર.ક્રેટ.ત.જીથી

And when you deny this "me," when you see that this "me" does not exist—when for your this so-vivid "me" that stands out there on his own without relying on the two of mind and body ceases to be, and all that's left is simple emptiness of him, then as the sages say you have first found the "view of the middle way." And then you have found the "path that pleases the Victors."

61 Emptiness Means You Must Be Good



Any person who really understands interdependence in the sense that we've just described it begins to develop a strong recognition of the laws of actions and their consequences—they become more and more important for him.

And this is why. First of all, good deeds lead to pleasure and bad deeds lead to pain; each cause is connected to its own result—it can never go wrong somehow and produce the other result. This invariable relationship comes from interdependence.

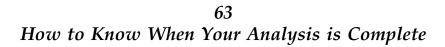
Once you understand the sense in which "interdependence" refers to lack of any natural existence, then you understand by implication that interdependence in the form of cause and effect is, in a merely conventional way, entirely proper or infallible. This then allows you to gain a total conviction towards the laws that govern all actions and consequences—whether they be those within the circle of life or those that are beyond it.

62 How to Know When Your Analysis is Still Incomplete

The third of the five sections in our treatment of correct view explains how to know when the analysis you are conducting with the view you have is still incomplete. This point is brought out in the next verse of the root text:

You've yet to realize the thought of the Able As long as two ideas seem to you disparate: The appearance of things—infallible interdependence; And emptiness—beyond taking any position.

Let's say you've meditated on the instructions we've given above. You are directing your view to analyze all phenomena. If your analysis is really complete, then interdependence and emptiness must appear to you to go hand in hand, supporting each other.



୲୶୶ୖଵ୶୲ୖୖୖ୕୕୕୕ଈୖ୲ଌୖଽ୕୕୩୲ୖୖୖୖୖ୶୵୳୕ୖ୕ଽୖୖୖୖୖୖ୶୲୰ଽୖଽୄୢୗ ୲ୖୖୠ୶୕ୖୖ୶ୠ୕୴ୖଈୖୖ୲୕୕ୠୄୖୢୄୠୄୖ୕ୖ୷ୖୖୖୖୖୖ୶ଽ୴ୖୠୖୠୖୖୠୄୖ ୲ୖୖଽୖୖୖୖୖ୶ୄୠ୲ୖୖୖୖୖୖୖ୷ୄୠ୲ୠୖୡୄୖଽୠୄୢୖୠ୵ୠ୰୲ ୲ୖୖୠୖୄୠ୲ୠୖୠ୲ୠୢୗ

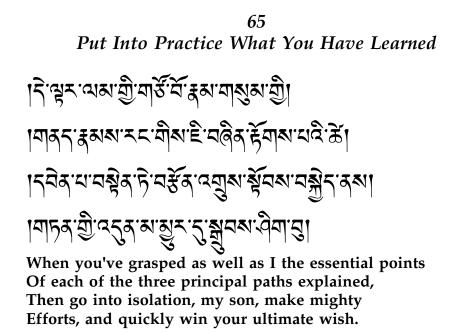
At some point they no longer alternate, come together; Just seeing that interdependence never fails Brings realization that destroys how you hold to objects, And then your analysis with view is complete.

Now here's what we mean when we say that "at some point they no longer alternate." We take two things: first, the fact that everything about the way things work, and about good deeds and bad deeds, is perfectly proper, despite the fact that no single object is anything more than labels, just names. Secondly there is the fact that, when we try to seek out the thing that got the name, we find only emptiness: that there is not a single atom of natural existence in whatever object we have chosen.

64 Fourfold Perfect Emptiness

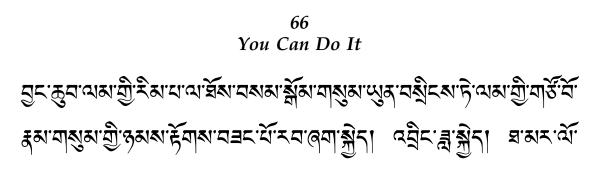
য়ঢ়য়৽য়৽ঀয়ৢয়য়য়য়৾য়ৼয়য়৾ঀয়৾য়য়য়য়ৼয়৾য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য়য় ૹૹૣઽૻૹૼ૱ઽૻૢૻ૾ઌ૽ૼઽૼૺૺૺઌૢૻઽૻૻઽઽૻૻૻૡ૾૾ૡૺ૱ૹ૽ૢ૿ૢ૾૱ઌ૽ૼઽૼૻ૱ૻૻૡ૾ૻ૱ૻૡ૽૾૱ૡ૽ૺ

The real sages of the Middle Way school make a fourfold distinction: they say that nothing exists naturally, but not that nothing exists at all; everything exists merely by convention, but everything exists without existing naturally.



This verse is a very personal instruction that Lord Tsongkapa, out of deepest feelings of love, has granted to all of us who hope to follow him. He is saying to us, "Go first and try to grasp the essential points of the three principal paths as I have explained them above; do so by listening to teachings on them over and over again.

"Then use contemplation to gain a recognition of the truth of these points; do this in retreat, staying in a state of isolation where you cut all ties to this life, and live according to the principle of having few material wants and being satisfied with whatever you have—keep your concerns and activities few. Make mighty efforts at this practice; act quickly, never lose yourself to putting off your practice; and then win, my son, the ultimate wish of all your many lifetimes."





We must spend much time in learning, and reasoning out, and then meditating on the various Steps on the path to Buddhahood. To do this we have to set a goal for ourselves, for practicing and then fully realizing the three principal paths: we have to say, "At best, I am going to gain them in a day. If it takes me a month, I'll consider it average. But at the very least I will see that I have them within this year."

สฑุณฑุรุมพานณิรุณิาสุจิพาร์ณานพาฏรา ณพาริพาณพาริพาติพานาริณรา

ส์สามพูมาพิลา มิสาสูรารมิกา ส์สารฏิกา ศักรายมารารู้กา

We should follow the words of Geshe Dolpa, one of the Seers of the Word, who said:

Steps of the path! Steps of the path! They all come down to three short words: "Look far ahead," "Think very big," "Keep a pace."⁶⁶

What he meant by the expression "Look for ahead" was that we should set our sights on becoming a Buddha. "Thinking big" means we should think to ourselves, "To reach my enlightenment, I'm going to practice absolutely all the paths, one by one: those of the three increasing scopes, and those of the secret teaching—the levels of creation and completion."

ઽ૾ઽ[.]ઌૼૹ૰ૡૼૻૻ૱૱ૢૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹ૾૱ૹૻૣઽૼૻ૱ૹ૾ૹૻૻઌ૽૿૾ૻઌ૾ૢૻૡૻૻઌ૱ૡ૽ૻઌ૾૾ૡ૽૾ૢૻૡૻૻૡ૾ૻૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૢૻૼૻૻૡૡૻ૽ૢૼૻૻૻઽઽૻૹ૿ૢઽૻ

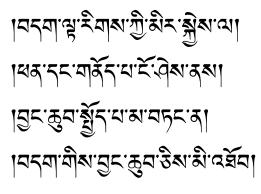
Now in the worldly side of things, people who know they must die within the year still make grand plans and act as if they're going to live a hundred. In the spiritual side of things, you and I are the opposite: we set our sights as low as we can when it comes to the threefold practice of learning, contemplating and meditating—even down to the few prayers we're supposedly reciting daily. We always pick out the easiest practice possible—we always think small, we think "This is about all I could manage."

But you're wrong: if you really put forth the effort, there's no question that you can even become a Buddha. As *The Bodhisattva's Life* says,

Don't be a quitter, and think to yourself "How could I ever become a Buddha?" Those who've Gone That Way only speak The truth, and this is a truth they spoke:

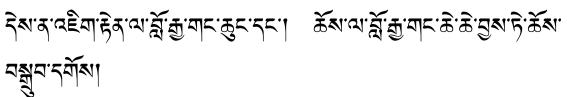
।রূৎ:রূবার্স্রিরান্যার:রু:মীন্রার্য্রিরা

"Even those who live as bugs, Flies or gnats, and even germs, Reach matchless, hard-won Buddhahood If they really make an effort."



াউঝ'ন্যার্থ্রু<জা

Here am I born as a man, Able to tell what's right and wrong; What's to keep me from getting enlightened If I keep on acting an enlightened way?⁶⁸



Therefore you should think as small as you can in your worldly work, but as BIG as you can in your spiritual.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Two

Now the words "Keep a pace" mean that you should avoid the kind of practice where you go back and forth between making fierce efforts at it and then letting it go completely—laying around and doing nothing. You should rather keep a steady pace in the effort you give your spiritual practice: let it flow on constant, like some great river. Do anything in your power, our Lama concluded, to draw the very essence from this life of opportunity.

NOTES TO READING TWO

43. *listeners and self-made victors:* Practicioners who have not yet developed the highest motivation of attaining Buddhahood for the sake of all beings. "Listeners" are so named because they can listen to the higher teachings and relate them to others, but not practice thse instructions themselves. "Self-made victors" can reach their goal without relying on a spiritual guide in this life, although only because of extensive instruction by countless teachers in their past lives.

44. *a lower escape:* This refers to lower nirvana, or the permanent end of all one's mental afflictions, and is equivalent to Buddhahood if one attains it with the wish to liberate all beings. Nirvana without this wish is a "lower nirvana."

45. "The Bodhisattva's Life," "Entering the Middle Way," and "The Rare Stack": This manual for bodhisattvas was written by the Buddhist poet-philosopher Shantideva (695-743 A.D.). The classic text on correct view by Master Chandrakirti, the illustrious 7th Century Indian philosopher of Buddhism, will be covered below with the third of the principal paths. In each case, the benefits of the wish for enlightenment appear in the opening verses. The Rare Stack is a separate section of the Buddhist canon containing some 49 different sutras. One often quoted in explanations of the wish for Buddhahood is The Chapter of Light Protector; it contains eloquent descriptions of the benefits of the wish throughout, and the section around f. 237 is particularly relevant here.

46. *Were the merit of the wish...* Quotation from f. 352b of this teaching of the Buddha himself.

47. *Loving-Gaze:* The divine form of the Buddha that represents all his compassion. The practice mentioned can be learned from a qualified lama.

48. *Commentary on Valid Perception:* Famed treatise which forms the basis for the study of formal logic in Buddhist monasteries. It was composed by Master Dharmakirti (c. 630 A.D.) in explanation of the *Compendium on Valid Perception* written by Master Dignaga (c. 450 A.D.), great forefather of the Buddhist logic traditions. The reasoning mentioned is found in the second chapter, the "Proof of Infallibility," beginning from line 142 (ff. 108b-109a).

49. the Elimination Ritual, etc.: We have not located the spurious texts listed.

50. *Three Heaps Sutra, etc.:* These four teachings of the Buddha himself are listed at entries 39, 21, 33, and 10 respectively.

51. *Buddha-Dharma-Sangha prayer:* A traditional prayer for refuge and developing the wish for enlightenment. It reads,

I go for refuge, until I reach enlightenment, To the Buddha, Dharma, and the highest Sangha. By the merit of giving and other goods deeds I do May I become a Buddha to help all living beings.

The Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha are also called the three rare jewels. They are so named because they are supremely valuable and infrequently found--the Buddha, defined as the ultimate shelter, a being who has completed the highest possible good for himself and others; the Dharma, realizations or the end of undesirable qualities within a person's mind; and the Sangha, or any being who has perceived the true nature of reality directly.

52. *Stages of Meditation:* The point is discussed by Lord Tsongkapa at ff. 89-92 of his shorter *Steps on the Path,* and ff. 191-202 in his longer version. Here a number of times he quotes the *Stages of Meditation,* a treatise in three parts by the eighth-century Buddhist master Kamalashila. Kamalashila is best known for his successful defense of the Indian Buddhist teaching of analytical meditation before the Tibetan king Trisong Detsen. His opponents were Chinese monks who wrongly asserted that meditating on nothing at all would be of any benefit.

53. *all eight levels:* Refers to intensely deep forms of meditation that lead to later births in the eight sections of the form and formless realms, which are still counted as suffering.

54. *The worldly meditate on concentration...* The verse is found on ff. 44a-44b of this famous teaching of the Buddha. The following citation is the next verse in the sutra, from f. 44b. The wording of the edition available to us is slightly different, but the intent equal. Udraka was a non- Buddhist sage who woke from an extended period of meditation and went into a rage because mice had in the meantime chewed away at his impressive yogi's locks of hair; because of his anger, he was then born in the hells.

55. *There's no way to peace...* From the sixth chapter of Master Chandrakirti's work (f. 205a). Briefly, the "two truths" mentioned are what are usually called "deceptive truth" and "ultimate truth." Both are valid, and all objects have both. The dependence of objects (especially in the sense described below, upon concepts and names) is their conventional or deceptive truth. Their appearance is "deceptive" because to the minds of normal people they appear to be something other than what they actually are. The "ultimate" (here called "real") truth of objects is their lack of non-dependence, and is first seen directly in the all-important meditative state known as the "path of seeing." Seeing this truth directly acts immediately to stop the process through which we suffer.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Two

56. *Nagarjuna's student was Chandrakirti...* The lines are from his work on the two truths.

57. "*Detailist*" school: So called because "they devote their study exclusively to the classical commentary known as *Detailed Exposition*, or else because they understand the *Exposition*'s meaning" (the First Dalai Lama).

58. "*Scripturalist*" school: The name is said to come from the fact that "this school of philosophers holds that scripture [eg. sutra] is valid, but denies the validity of classical commentaries such as the Seven Works on Knowledge" (ibid).

59. "*Mind-Only*" school: The name comes from the school's assertion that "every existing object is nothing but part of the mind," although this general description is further refined by the school.

60. *made from any different "substance":* That is, come from any different principal cause or latency.

61. "Independent" part of the Middle Way school: The school is so named because its followers advocate a middle way which avoids the extreme of thinking things exist (naturally) and the extreme of thinking things can't exist (if they don't exist naturally). The "Independents" are one of the two parts of the school; they believe one must lead a person to the correct view that things are empty of natural existence by means of taking an independent object and discussing it in common terms--rather than starting from the person's own incorrect view and demonstrating the absurdity that it necessarily implies. These points are illuminated by the great Changkya Rolpay Dorje, said to be a former life of Pabongka Rinpoche himself, in his *Comparative Systems*.

62. *unaffected awareness:* Any normal, "reasonable" perception--the vast majority of our everyday perceptions; the opposite would be those infrequent cases where we take something wrong, such as mistaking a moving leaf for a small animal as we drive a car, or believing in something unreal that we think we see under the influence of alcohol or a drug.

63. *"Implication" section of the Middle Way school:* So named because of their belief that a line of reasoning which implies a necessary absurdity in an opponent's incorrect view on the subject is sufficient to inspire in his mind the correct view of the nature of existence.

64. *"Functionalist" group:* Refers collectively to the Detailist, Scripturalist, and Mind-Only schools, since all assert that functional things exist truly.

65. *Here what we call a self...* Quotation from his commentary on the 400 Verses of Master Aryadeva.

66. *Steps of the path!* Original source of quotation not found. Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation* twice credits the three instructions to Gompa Rinchen Lama (entry 47, ff. 168a, 334a), who is said to have been a student of Lord Atisha (see Lord Tsongkapa's *Greater Steps*), and of Lord Drom Tonpa (*Blue Annals*, entry 94, p. 264). Geshe Dolpa, full name Marshurpa Rok Sherab Gyatso (1059-1131) was a student of the great Potowa and compiled his mentor's teachings into a famed text of the Seer tradition entitled the *Blue Book*.

68. *Don't be a quitter...* From the chapter on effort in Master Shantideva's classic. "Those who've Gone That Way" refers to the Buddhas.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Three: Buddhist Refuge, Part One

The following selections on the Buddhist idea of "taking refuge" are found in the Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, composed by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), a famed writer of monastic textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

1 The Three Goals of Refuge



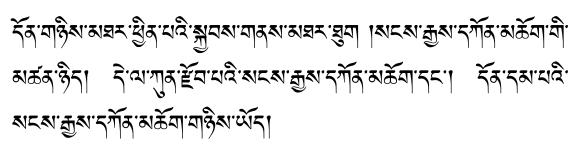
Here is the second section, in which we present our own position.

There is a specific reason why the Three Jewels are established as being the refuges for practitioners of the three classes. From the point of view of cause refuge, practitioners of all three classes take refuge in all three of the Jewels. But from the point of view of result refuge, those of the Listener class aspire chiefly to attain the state of a foe destroyer.

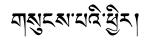
Those of the class of Self-Made Buddhas aspire chiefly to attain that meditative wisdom where they abide in a meditation of cessation, a state where all the obstacles of the mental afflictions have been eliminated.

Those of the Greater Way aspire chiefly to attain the Buddha Jewel, one who possesses that cause within Him which will allow Him to turn the wheel of the dharma, in its entirety, for disciples of all three classes. This then is the reason why the Three Jewels are established as being refuges for practitioners of the three classes.

2 The Buddha Jewel



The definition of the Buddha Jewel is "That ultimate place of refuge, the one which has completely satisfied both the needs." There are two kinds of Buddha Jewel: the apparent Buddha Jewel, and the ultimate Buddha Jewel.



This Buddha Jewel possesses eight different fine qualities, beginning with the quality of being uncaused. As the *Higher Line* states,

This is the One, the Buddha: He is uncaused, He is spontaneous, He is realized by no other way; He has knowledge, and love, and power; He has satisfied both the needs.

> 3 The Dharma Jewel

The definition of the Dharma Jewel is "The enlightened side of truth, either in the form of a cessation, or in the form of a path, or both." In name only this Jewel can be divided into two kinds: the ultimate Dharma Jewel, and the apparent Dharma Jewel.

The Sangha Jewel

The definition of the Sangha Jewel is "A realized being who possesses any number of the eight fine qualities of knowledge and liberation." In name only, this Jewel can be divided into two kinds: the ultimate Sangha Jewel, and the apparent Sangha Jewel.

5 Ultimate Refuge

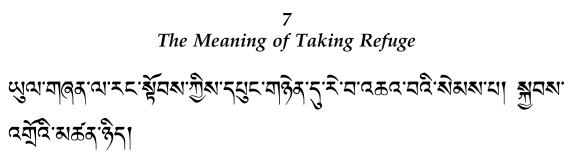


The definition of an ultimate refuge is "Any refuge where the journey along the path has reached its final goal."

6 Apparent Refuge

๛มาฏิเานิ์รานามรา มาผู้สาฐาญ ทูสารัรานวิ ฐามาฏิเมสสาชิรา

The definition of an apparent refuge is "Any refuge where the journey along the path has not reached its final goal."



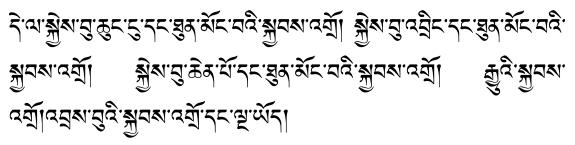
The definition of taking refuge is "Any movement of the mind that acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that some object outside of one's self will be able to render one assistance."

In name only, taking refuge may be divided into two: taking refuge in words, the expression of refuge; and taking refuge in thoughts, the reliance on refuge. An example of the first would be something like the words you use as you take refuge.

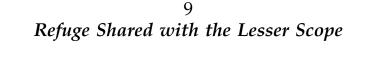
The latter is of two types: ordinary taking of refuge, and exceptional taking of refuge. The definition of the first is "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that some ordinary type of refuge will render one assistance."

The definition of the latter is "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels will render one assistance."

8 The Five Ways of Taking Refuge



There are five different kinds of this extraordinary taking of refuge: the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a lesser scope, the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a medium scope, the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a greater scope, cause refuge, and result refuge.

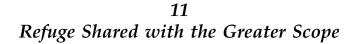


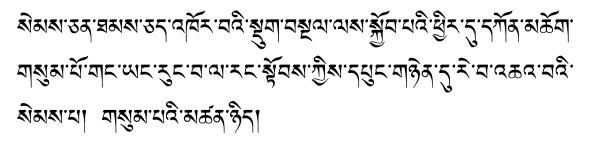
અર્ઠ્વ છેન મેચાય વલેવા માં કેને મુંચ સંચ છેને સ્ટ્રાય છે સંચ સ્ટ્રાય સ્ટ્રય સ્ટ્રાય સ્ટ્રય સ્ટ્રાય સ્ટ્રય સ્ટ્રાય સ્ટ્રય સ્ટ્ય

Here are their respective definitions. The first is defined as: "First, you feel a personal fear for the sufferings of the births of misery. Second, you believe that the Three Jewels possess the power to protect you from these sufferings. Finally you have a thought which acts of its own accord: it is a hope, or something of the type, that some one or number of the Three Jewels will render you assistance, to protect you from these sufferings.

10 Refuge Shared with the Medium Scope

The second is defined as: "First, you feel a personal fear for each and every suffering of the cycle of life. Second, you believe that the Three Jewels possess the power to protect you from these sufferings. Finally you have a movement of the mind which acts of its own accord: it is a hope, or something of the type, that some one or number of the Three Jewels will render you assistance, to protect you from these sufferings.



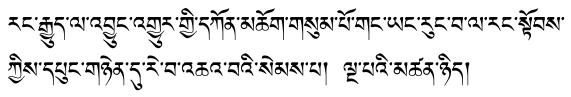


The third is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels will render assistance, to protect every living being from the sufferings of the cycle of life."

12 Cause Refuge মান্তব্যক্তুণ আয়ুন শ্রীব এই পর্যাব আর্জ মার্ম মার্ মীর্ম দেশ মান্টব দেশ মার্ম ম

The fourth is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels, as already achieved in another person, will render assistance."

13 Result Refuge



The fifth is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels, as they are to be achieved within ones self, will render assistance."

สั้มานายมพางราฏาริสาฏิรานารรา สุรานาพรพาสูญานราสู่รานารรา รสา

¹⁴ Why We Take Refuge



There is a specific purpose for taking refuge in the Three Jewels. A temporal purpose is that They can provide you the highest form of protection. The ultimate purpose is to attain the state of enlightenment.

Taking refuge also serves as the foundation for all the different kinds of vows. When you take refuge, you thereby join the ranks of the "ones inside": you become a Buddhist. This taking refuge acts as well to slam shut the door to the births of misery. These and others are the purpose for taking refuge in the Three.

As such, we can understand the definition of the wish for enlightenment as "The wish to achieve total enlightenment for the benefit of others."

> 16 The Full Definition of the Wish for Enlightenment

Here is the section in which we present our own position. The definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment is as follows.

First, it is that main mental awareness belonging to the greater way, which is focussed on achieving total enlightenment for the benefit of others, and which is matched with a state of mind that is associated with it: the aspiration to achieve total enlightenment.

Secondly, it is a knowledge belonging to the greater way, which acts as a door for entering the greater way (or is something of the type), and which is included into the activity side of the standard division into the two of "view" and "activity."

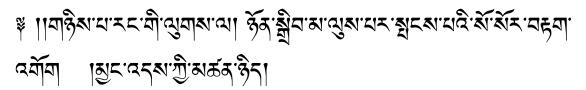
Here next are the divisions of this wish. Nominally, the wish can be divided into the apparent wish for enlightenment and the ultimate wish for enlightenment. In essence, it can be divided into the wish of prayer and the wish of engagement. In terms of level, it can be divided into the four types that begin with "the wish that acts out of belief." In terms of how the wish is developed, there are three types, starting with the "king's wish."

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

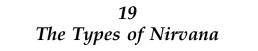
Reading Four: Buddhist Refuge, Part Two

The following selections on the Buddhist idea of "taking refuge" are found in the Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, composed by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), a famed writer of monastic textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

18 The Definition of Nirvana



Here secondly is the section in which we present our own position. The definition of nirvana is "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety."

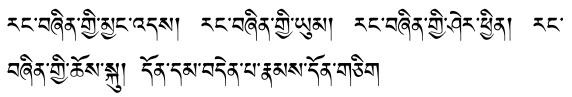




In name only, nirvana can be divided into the following four types: natural nirvana, nirvana with something left over, nirvana with nothing left over, and nirvana which does not stay.

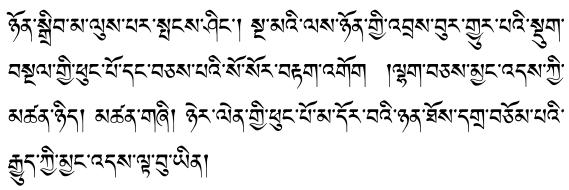
20

Natural Nirvana

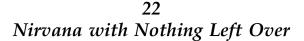


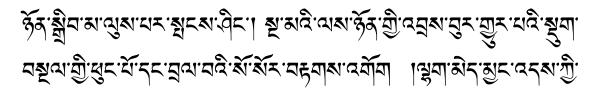
The following all refer to the same thing: natural nirvana, the natural Mother, the natural perfection of wisdom, the natural Dharma Body, and ultimate truth.

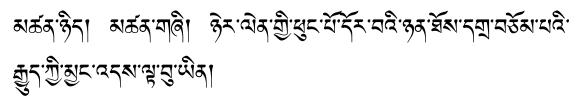
21 Nirvana With Something Left Over



The definition of nirvana with something left over is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety, but where one still has the suffering heaps that are a result of his past actions and bad thoughts." A classical example of this would be the nirvana found in the mental stream of a listener who is a foe destroyer, and who has not yet shucked off the heaps he took on.

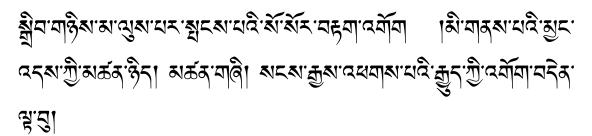






The definition of nirvana with nothing left over is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety, and where one is free of the suffering heaps that are a result of his past actions and bad thoughts." A classical example of this would be the nirvana found in the mental stream of a listener who is a foe destroyer, and who has shucked off the heaps he took on.

23 Nirvana Which Does Not Stay



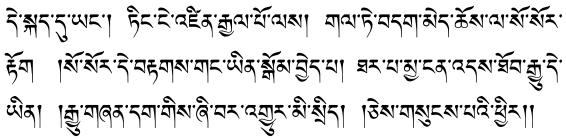
The definition of nirvana which does not stay is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated both kinds of obstacles in their entirety." A classical example of this would be the truth of cessation in the mental stream of a realized being who is a Buddha.

24

How to Achieve Nirvana

The nirvana we are describing here is not something that one can achieve by using any method at all. Rather, you must achieve it with the training of wisdom, which realizes that nothing has any self nature; this wisdom must be under the influence of the first two trainings, and with it you must habituate yourself to what you were already able to realize.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Four



This fact is supported by the *King of Concentration*, which states:

Suppose you are able to analyze One by one those things that have no self; And after that you habituate Yourself to what you analyzed individually.

This is what then leads you to Achieve your freedom; nirvana beyond grief. It is impossible for any other Cause to bring this peace to you.

25 What Emptiness is Empty Of

The first of these has two sections of its own: a demonstration of why we must identify what it is we deny, and then the actual identification of this object. Before a person can develop within his mind that correct view which realizes

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Four

emptiness, he must first identify the final object which is denied with reasoning that treats the ultimate. As the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* states,

Until you can find what you thought was there, You can never grasp how it cannot exist.

Suppose that what you sought to deny was the existence of a water pitcher in a certain place. If before you started you had no mental picture of what a water pitcher looked like, you would never be able to verify with an accurate perception that it wasn't there. Here it's just the same. What we seek to deny is that things could really exist. If before we start we have no mental picture of what a thing that really exists would be like, then we can never have a clear idea of emptiness: the simple absence where the object that we deny isn't there.

Here now is the actual identification of the object we deny. Suppose something were to occur in some way that was opposite to the way that all the phenomena of physical form and so on exist deceptively. Anything that could occur this way would be precisely the final object we deny with reasoning that treats the ultimate. Therefore we must first explain how it is that all the phenomena of physical form and the rest exist deceptively.

26 Deceptive Reality

महिश्राय सुर मी रेंब मवन या सुर रेंब छुट वन मवन य रा सुमाय की दे นริสาทุธิพาล์รัญาส์ณารนารายจพานาทุธิพา รราวักญา มาสุมพาพัญภา ઽૡૼૹૻૡ૾ૼ૾ૡઽ૾૾ૡૹૹૡૻૻ૾ઌૻૣૡૻૡૼૼ૱ૢૼૡ૽ૻૼઽૡૡ૾ૺૹૡ૱ઽૡૡ૾૾ૡૢૢૼૹૹૼૡૡ૽ૼઽઽૺ

The second part to the discussion of how things exist deceptively consists of an explanation of the various scriptural references. First we will give a brief treatment of these references, and after that talk about how this system establishes the two truths; this latter step will include an instructive metaphor. Here now is the briefer treatment.

There is a specific reason why we say that all these phenomena, physical form and the rest, exist deceptively. They are described this way because their existence is established by means of a deceptive state of mind, one which is not affected by a temporary factor that would cause it to be mistaken.

27 The Magician's Show

There is an instructive metaphor we can use for describing how physical form and other such phenomena are from our side established as existing, by the fact of their appearing to a state of mind which is not impaired; while at the same time these objects of our mind exist on their own side through their own way of being.

Suppose a magician is making a little piece of wood appear as a horse or cow. Seeing the piece of wood as a horse or cow comes from the side of the viewer, by the force of his own mind, as his eyes are affected by the spell of the magician. And yet the piece of wood, from its side, is appearing this way as well. Both conditions must be present.

There is a reason why the first condition must be present: the condition of being established from the side of the viewer, by force of his own mind, as his eyes are affected by the spell of the magician. If this condition didn't have to be present, then a spectator whose eyes were not affected by the spell would have to see the wood appear as the animal, whereas in actuality he does not.

At this same time the second condition, that the piece of wood appear from its own side as a horse or cow, must be present as well. If this condition didn't have to be present, then the piece of wood's appearing as a horse or cow would have to show up as well in places where there were no piece of wood, whereas in actuality it does not.

In this same way are the phenomena of physical form and the rest established by force of a state of mind which is not impaired. They are labeled with names, through an unimpaired state of mind and a name which is consistent with what they are. They do not however exist on their side through their own unique way of being, without their existence having to be established by the fact of their appearing to a state of mind that is not impaired. If they were to exist this way, then they would have to be the ultimate way things are. And if they were, then they would have to be realized directly by a state of mind which was not mistaken; by the wisdom of a realized being who is not a Buddha, and who in a state of balanced meditation is directly realizing the way things are. In fact though they are not directly realized by such a wisdom.

Suppose a magician makes a little piece of wood appear as a horse or cow. Spectators whose eyes have been affected by his spell both see the piece of wood as a horse or cow and believe that it really is. The magician himself only sees the horse or cow; he has no belief that it is real. A spectator who arrives later, who hasn't had the spell cast on him, neither sees the piece of wood as a horse or cow nor believes that it is.

Three different combinations of seeing and believing exist as well with physical form and other such phenomena. The kind of people we call "common" people, those who have never had a realization of emptiness, both see and believe that form and the rest really exist. Bodhisattvas who are at one of the pure levels see phenomena as really existing during the periods following

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Four

emptiness meditation; but they do not believe it. Realized beings who are not yet Buddhas, and who are in the state where they are realizing the way things are directly, neither see physical form and other such phenomena as really existing, nor do they believe that they really exist.

28 Difference between the Two Middle-Way Groups

The Implication and Independent branches of the Middle Way school are identical in asserting that to exist really, to exist purely, to exist just so, to exist ultimately, and the idea where you hold that things could exist these ways are all objects which are denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate.

The Independent branch though does not agree that to exist from its own side, to exist by nature, to exist in substance, to exist by definition, and the idea where you hold that form and other such phenomena could exist these ways are also objects which are denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate. They say that in fact anything that exists must exist these ways, with the exception of existing in substance. (There is some question though about things that are nominal.) They assert that any functional thing that exists must exist in substance.

Neither the Implication nor the Independent branches of the Middle Way school asserts that to exist as the way things are, to exist as ultimate truth, or to exist as the real nature of things is the final object which is denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate; for if something is ultimate truth, it always exists in all these three ways.

29 Proving Emptiness with One or Many

॥माहेश्वायाययायायात्री अयात्र मात्र मात्र का माह्य के का प्रति स्वयाया के स्वयाय स्वयाय के स्वयाय के स्वयाय के स्वयाय के स्वयाय स्वयाय स्वयाय स्वयाय के स्वयाय स स्वयाय स स्वयाय स स्वया

Here secondly is our own position.

Consider the three: basic knowledge, path knowledge, and the knowledge of all things.

They do not really exist;

For they exist neither as one thing which really exists, nor as many things which really exist.

They are, for example, like the reflection of a figure in a mirror.

ने झन रुप्ता न्यु अ कुर अश्वा मनमा नन्या नन्य स्वे पवे रहे रुप ने प्रया प्र न्या पन के योहेया प नन्या नि अवे नन्या नन्या नवे खेन्छो न्या प्रमानके से स्वे से स्वे से न्ये न्ये या ज्या यह के प्रविद्या विश्व या सुन्य पवे खेन्य

The Jewel of the Middle Way supports this when it says,

The things of self and other Are free of being purely one Or being purely many, And so they have no nature: Just like a reflection.

रे के अञ्च मने व सुन गु ज के मानु आ सुन क्षे क न क अभ्ये व भवे रे के बानु न क्षे मने व सुन गु ज के मानु सुन के मानु रा सुन के सुन के स्व रा के का का के बान के सुन गु ज के मानु सुन के स्व रा के का का के साम का साम का साम का साम के साम का साम क साम का का का का का साम का सा

Consider these same things.

They do not exist as one thing which really exists;

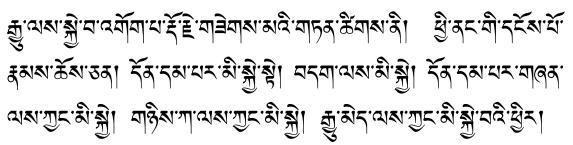
For they are things with parts.

The one always implies the other, for if something existed as one thing which really exists, then it could never be a thing which appeared one way but actually existed in a different way.

They do not exist as many things which really exist, because they do not exist as one thing which really exists. The one always implies the other, for many things come from bringing together a group of things that are one.

The implication in the original statement is true, for if something really existed, it would have to exist either as one thing that really existed or as many things that really existed. This is always the case, for if something exists it must exist either as one or as many.

30 Proving Emptiness with the Sliver of Diamond



Here is the "Sliver of Diamond" reasoning, for denying that things can come from causes:

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They do not arise ultimately,

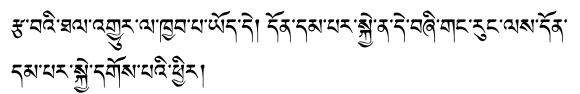
For they do not arise from themselves, and they do not arise ultimately from something other than themselves, and they do not arise from both, and they do not arise without a cause.

These things do not arise from themselves, because they do not arise from a cause which is such that, if something were the cause, it would have to be the thing it caused.

They do not arise ultimately from something which is other than themselves, for they neither arise ultimately from a cause which is other than themselves and which is unchanging, nor do they arise ultimately from a cause which is other from themselves and which is changing.

They do not arise ultimately from both the above, because they do not arise ultimately from either one of them individually.

They do not arise without a cause, because that would be utterly absurd.



The implication in the original statement is true, for if something were to arise ultimately, it would have to arise ultimately through one of the four possibilities mentioned.

> 31 Denying That Things Arise

Here is the reasoning called "The Denial that Things which Exist or Do Not Exist could Arise," which we use for denying that things can come from results:

Consider results.

They do not arise ultimately,

For results which exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that both exist and do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that neither exist nor do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately.

The implication is proven in the same way as above.

32 Denying the Four Possibilities

સું વ્રદ્યમાં ગાંધું ગાંધમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું વર્ષો ગાંધા ગાંધા ગાંધા સું ગાયમાં સ સું ગાયમાં સ સું ગાયમાં ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સ સું ગાયમાં ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં સું ગાયમાં ગાયમાં ગાયમાં ગાયમાં ગાયમા સ સું ગાયમાં ગાયમાં ગાયમા સું ગાયમા સું ગાયમાં ગાયમાં ગાયમા

Here is the reasoning known as "The Denial that Things could Arise through Any of the Four Possibilities," which we use for denying that things can come from both causes and results:

Consider the functional things of causes and results.

They do not arise ultimately,

For multiple results of multiple causes do not arise ultimately, and single results of multiple causes do not arise ultimately, and multiple results of single causes do not arise ultimately, and single results of single causes do not arise ultimately.

33 The King of Proofs for Emptiness

[From the *Overview*:] Here we will explain the fifth type of reasoning, the one based on interdependence, and known as the "King of Reasons." First we will present the reasoning, and then secondly prove the validity of its elements.

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They are not real,

For they are interdependent.

The reasoning can also be stated as:

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They do not arise really,

For they arise in dependence on other things which act as their causes and conditions.

Either way you state the reasoning, the following part should be added at the end:

They are, for example, like the reflection of a figure in a mirror.

34 Who is Maitreya

દે ભૂમ ર્સેન સ્વયોભાયા વને સા સર્કેન મદેન મરાને સાથી નવી સાય ભારત સે સાથ સુમ માસે મેથા સાને વ્રાહ્ય સાય ભારત મેં સાથે માણે સું સેન માણે સું સેન માણે સું સેન માણે સું સે માણે સું સે માણે સું વદ્યા માલે રહેન મેં સુરાય સુરાય છે સું માણે સું સું સેન માણે સું સે માણે સું સે માણે સું સે માણે સું સે માણે સું

Here is how these others make their argument. They say that "It is incorrect to relate the opening lines [of the *Jewel of Realizations*], the ones that are an offering of praise, to any need of the author himself. This is because Maitreya possesses no state of mind where he is aspiring to fulfill his own needs, and

because the lines appear here only as a means to induce persons other than the author to follow the work. . ."

Here secondly is our own position. It is incorrect to make the argument that appeared earlier, for such an argument only reveals that the person making it has failed to undertake exhaustive study and contemplation of the major scriptures of the greater way. How can we say this? Let us first ask the following: do you make this argument assuming that the Holy One [Maitreya] is a Buddha, or do you make it assuming that he is a bodhisattva?

Suppose you say that you are making the former assumption. Doing so represents a failure to distinguish between speaking in the context of the way which is shared, the way of the perfections, and speaking in the context of the way which is not shared; that is, the way of the secret word.

The teaching of the secret way says that the holy Maitreya is a Buddha. This is true because—according to the secret way—Manjushri is a Buddha, and the reasons for His being so apply equally to Maitreya in every respect.

35 Why Tantra Exists

It is correct for us to say that the way of the perfections is the way which is "shared," and that the way of the secret word is the way which is "not shared." This is because such a description is found in a great number of authoritative works. The *Steps of the Path to Buddhahood*, for example, speaks about "how to train oneself in the way which is shared—the way of the perfections, and how to train oneself in the way which is not shared—the way of the secret word." *The Concise Steps* as well includes the lines:

Thus is the path which is shared, The one which is required At both the stage of the cause As well as the stage of result In the higher way, The path which is supreme.

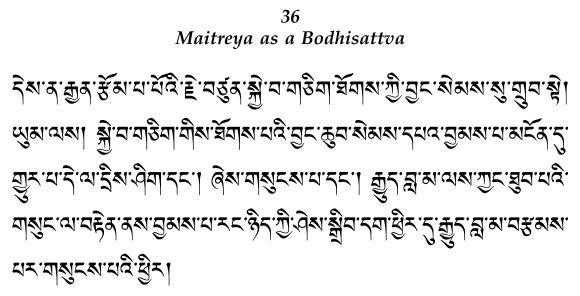
There is another description that mentions the "way for common disciples" and the "way for unique disciples." It is apparent that these expressions, [which use the same Tibetan term,] have the same connotation as "shared" and "not shared" above.

Someone might assert that "In the context of the way of the perfections, the way of the secret word is not accepted." This though is incorrect, for the *Brief Commentary* includes a section where it states that presenting the bodies of a Buddha as being exactly four is moreover not inconsistent with the way of the secret word. This section reads: "Nor moreover is this inconsistent with the other division of the teachings."

There are other reasons too which prove that there is a way of the secret word. It is stated with authority that the ability to fly in the sky, and other such miraculous abilities described in the *Tantra of the Garuda*, occur through the power of the being who has *spoken* the tantra. This is true because the *Commentary on Valid Perception* states:

There do exist the ones who know The tantra and can in cases Use the secret word with success; These are the proof. It's mainly the power Of the one who taught it, And following his precepts.

Beyond this type of reasoning, I personally am unable to accept all the other things that people say on this point.



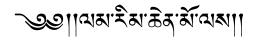
The above arguments demonstrate then that the Maitreya who authored the *Ornament* is a bodhisattva who has one life to go. This is true since the *Mother* includes a line which says, "Go and ask Maitreya there; he is a bodhisattva who has one life to go." Moreover, the *Higher Line* states that Maitreya authored it in order to utilize the word of the Able One to purify himself of the obstacles to omniscience.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

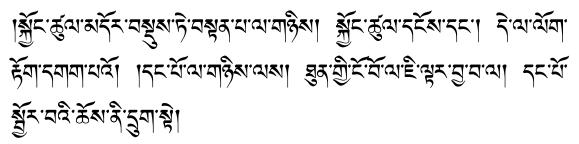
Reading Five: Applied Meditation, Part One

The following selections are taken from the Great Book on the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim chen-mo) written by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). This part of his work is a commentary on a well-known prayer called the King of All Prayers, the Prayer of the Realized One, Deeds of All Goodness. Also included is a special prayer to Je Tsongkapa entitled A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss.

1 The Six Preliminaries to Meditation



From the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path* by Je Tsongkapa:



Here we begin a brief presentation of how to practice the steps of the path to Buddhahood. First we will make the actual presentation, and after that refute certain mistaken ideas about the steps. The presentation itself comes in two sections; the first is how to proceed during meditation periods. This starts with Six Preliminaries to meditation.

2 Making a Sacred Space

[1] Here we are following the descriptions of how Serlingpa practiced during his life. The first preliminary to meditation is to make the room tidy and clean; then set up a beautiful altar, with representations of the Buddha's body, speech, and mind.

> 3 Setting Forth Offerings

[2] The second preliminary is to go and find offerings that you obtain without using any dishonest means. Put them forth in an attractive arrangement.

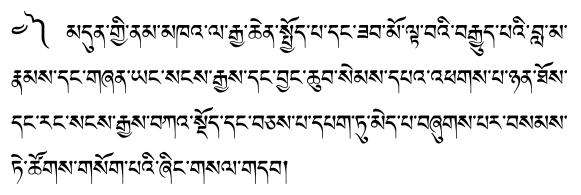
4 Sitting

นสาส์สาวสภารภัพาณาราณพายุคสายถ้าฉรัรายาณาวรุสายาณาพัยพายถิ่า ลู้กานสุมพาณพาพิมพาผู้การถึงชีวสิจพาสิจูาณาพังฤพานถึงผู้การภูมิณาพั ૡૹૻૹૢૢૢઌૹૻૹૢૻૡૡ૽ૼઌૼૻઽઽૻૻૹ૾ૺૹૹૻઌૹૢ૽ૢૺૼઽૻૻૻ૱ૢૢૼઽૻઽઽૻૡઽૺૹૻઽ૾ૹૻૻૡૻૡ૽૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻ

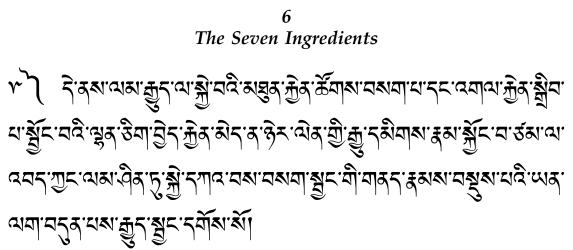
[3] Now the *Levels of Listeners* [by Master Asanga] says that, when you are practicing to purify the mind of the obstacles of sleepiness and fogginess, you should "press them upon each other." It also states that, when you are

practicing to purify the mind of other kinds of obstacles, such as attraction to the objects of the senses, you should seat yourself upon a platform or smaller seat and assume the full lotus position. Therefore the third preliminary is to seat yourself on a comfortable cushion, sit up straight, and assume a full lotus position with your legs (a half lotus is also acceptable). In this pose then sink your mind deep into the thoughts of taking refuge, and the wish for enlightenment.

5 Visualizing the Garden



[4] The fourth preliminary is to visualize the garden for gathering the power of good. In the space before you, imagine the Lamas of both the far-reaching lineage, and the lineage of the profound view. Together with them are an inconceivable mass of Buddhas, and bodhisattvas, listeners, self-made Buddhas, and protectors of the Dharma.



[5] It is extremely difficult to bring the path to grow within the stream of your mind if all you practice is the various principal causes. You also need the supporting causes for the path to grow; you need to gather together the

different factors that are conducive to the path, and you need to clean yourself of the factors that are obstacles, the ones that oppose the path. Therefore you must train your mind in the Seven Ingredients, which include in them all the critical points for gathering good and cleaning away obstacles.

7

[a] The first ingredient is prostration. There is one kind of prostration that combines all three doors of expression. It is found in the verse [from the *King of All Prayers, the Prayer of the Realized One, Deeds of All Goodness*] that includes the words "Whosoever they are, as many as there may be." [The full verse reads:

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Five

I bow down, and purely, In body and speech and mind, To all those Lions of living kind, Whosoever they are, As many as there may be, To those Who are Gone; Gone in the past, In the present or the future, On any of the planets In the ten directions of space.]

Here we are not talking of a Buddha on a certain planet in a certain direction of space, nor are we talking of a Buddha of a particular time; our prostrations rather are directed at each and every Victorious Buddha, those who live in every one of the ten directions of space itself—those who have already come before, those who are going to come in the future, and those who now are here. Don't do your prostrations just to go along with the crowd; do them rather out of deep respect, from the depths of your heart.

On this the master Yeshe De, in his commentary, notes that "The good deed you do by prostrating to a single Buddha is beyond any means of measuring. So there's no need to mention what a goodness it is to picture this many Buddhas, and then prostrate yourself to them."

8 Offering

[b] This brings us to the second ingredient: offering. The offering which does have something higher is found in the two verses that contain the words "holy flowers". [The full verses read:

I make offerings To all of these Victorious Ones; Holy Flowers, holy garlands, Cymbals and ointments, The highest parasol, The highest lamp, And holy incenses.

I make offerings To all of these Victorious Ones; Holy silken clothing, The highest scent, And a mountain of incense powder High as Meru— All set forth In a way more lovely Than any other thing there is.] The words "holy flower" refer to the most wondrous blooms of all in the lands of both pleasure beings and humans; here they are single flowers. "Garlands" are assortments of flowers pressed together on a string. Either way, the flowers can be real ones, or made of other things.

The word "cymbals" refers to all types of music, whether it's on a stringed instrument, a wind instrument, or percussion like drums or cymbals. "Ointments" are thick potions with a delicious smell of incense. The "highest parasol" is the finest of all umbrella-like coverings. The "highest lamp" is one that burns from a fragrant mixture like incense and butter; it shines bright, and gives forth a light as lovely as the flask of a precious gem. The incense mentioned can be either the kind that is a concoction of various sweet-smelling substances, or just one of these substances by itself.

"Holy silken clothing" refers to the finest of all the clothing there is. "Highest scent" means perfumed liquid presented in the form of a water offering; it is made of water, or something similar, imbues with a delicious scent so powerful that it can spread throughout the entire system of a thousand thousand planets. "Incense powder" refers to incense in the form of powder, which you either spread itself or sprinkle atop a fire to make a fragrant smoke. It is in packets, or else laid out in lines like the colored sand used to draw a mandala, in a huge mass as high and wide as Meru, the great mountain in the center of the world.

The phrase "set forth" applies to each of the substances that are being offered; the original Sanskrit word here can mean "majority," or "put forth," or "various."

The other kind of offering is the one which does not have anything higher. This one is found in the single verse which includes the words "Any and every offering." [The full verse reads:

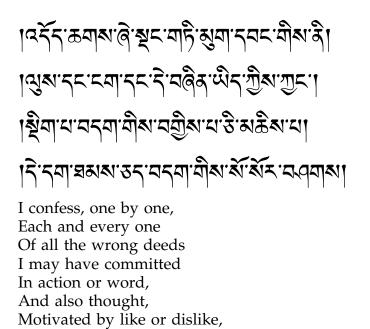
<u></u> |મર્ઢેઽ'ઽ'ગઽ'ૠૠૻ૱ૠૻ૱૱ าริราสา สูญารายมีมางราณาพรามัม สูญาราพสายสารสุขาวส์การสังรายราย

I see as well Any and every offering Unsurpassed, reaching far and wide, Handed up to every Victor; By all the power of my faith In the Deeds of Goodness may I truly Bow down and make offerings Onto all the Victors.]

Offerings which we say "have something higher" are those of worldly beings. Therefore the offerings made in this verse consist of all the many wondrous things that very powerful beings, such as bodhisattvas, are capable of emanating with their mind.

The words of the second half of this verse should be applied anywhere in the verses before where the intent is not stated directly. Their function is to express both the motivation with which the prostration and offering are made, as well as the object towards which they are directed.

[c] The third ingredient is confession, and is found in the single verse with the words "like and dislike". [The full verse reads:



Or by dark ignorance.]

This refers to what was done with one of the three mental poisons as its cause; and with my body or of the rest as the vehicle; and with a nature of having been committed, either directly by myself, or by someone else at my bidding, or by someone else with my gladness that it was done. The words "all the wrong deeds I may have committed" are meant to include all these elements.

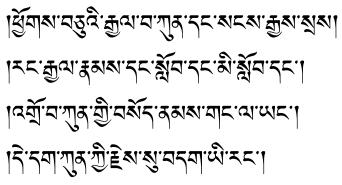
Try to bring to mind all the problems that these deeds will bring you, and so feel regret for whatever you have done in the past, and a sense to restrain yourself in the future. Then make your confession. Doing this prevents any future wrong from starting at all.

10

Rejoicing

 $\sim \int |\mathbf{E} \mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{N$

[d] The fourth ingredient is rejoicing, and is found in the one verse with the words "Victors in any of the ten directions." [The full verse reads:



I rejoice

Over every single one

Of the good deeds ever done

By beings in any of the ten directions:

By all of the Victors,

By all of their Sons and Daughters,

By those Self-Made,

By those on the paths of learning,

By those on the paths done learning,

By anyone at all.]

Try to think about the great goodness that comes from the virtuous deeds of these five different kinds of holy beings, and dwell in a sense of gladness, like a beggar who has stumbled across a mine of gold.

11 Asking for Teaching

२२ । केंश्वाय्वर्म् मर्झ्ने म्वर्म् म्झुयायये प्यमायो वाम् स्याश्व स्थित्र म्युव्य म्युद्धे लेश्वायये केंवाश्वाय राष्ट्र वार्ष्ठ वाङ्ये। द्वेंवाश्वाय रुद्धे लेम् नुम्ह स्वाय म्याय कुश्व में का कवाश्व पीम हेंवाश्वाय से सेन्य प्य स्वाद्वि माय हे श्वाय म्याय स्वाय कुश्व में का कवाश्व पीम हेंवाश्व माये प्य का केंश्व हेंव माय हे श्वाय म्याय माय स्वाया युद्ध ग्रीम ने हेंद्र नुम्ह या क्या केंश्व हें का माय माये माय माये माय में स्वाय ये स्वाय माय स्वाय का केंश्व हें का माये स्वाय माये माय माये माय स्वाय ये स्वाय माय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय का केंश्व हें का माये स्वाय माये स्वाय माय स्वाय स्वाय माय स्वाय स्वय स्वाय स्वय स्वय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वय स्वय स्वय स्वाय स्वय स्

[e] The fifth ingredient is urging holy ones to turn the Wheel of the Dharma. This is found in the one verse with the words "Who in all the ten directions." [The full verse reads:

Lamps who light Each of the worlds In all the ten directions Of space; Those who have taken Each of the steps To Buddhahood, And so reached The state beyond desire, The Buddha's enlightenment; Saviors I urge You all, Turn the Wheel of the Dharma, Nothing is higher.]

This verse is addressed to those who in paradises in all the ten directions of space have but only recently found Buddhahood in the Buddha's perfect enlightenment—who have reached the state beyond desire, a knowledge which

goes anywhere it wants, unstoppable. We are urging them to send forth an equal number of bodies, to come and teach the Dharma.

The commentary by Yeshe De gives the root text here as "found Buddhahood in the Buddha's perfect enlightenment" [rather than "taken each of the steps to Buddhahood," and I have followed him.]

12 Asking to Stay

[f] The sixth ingredient is supplication, and is found in the one verse which contains the words "pretend to pass into nirvana." [The full verse reads:

I press my palms at my breast, And make this supplication To all of those who may intend To pretend to pass into nirvana: Stay, I pray to help all beings And bring them to happiness; Stay for eons equal in number To the atoms of every world.] Here we are making supplication to all those in worlds of the ten directions of space who might pretend to pass into nirvana. We are requesting them to stay, ultimately to bring all beings help, and in the interim to give them happiness. We ask them to stay, and not to pass on, for eons equal in their number to all the atoms that make up the various worlds of the universe. We make our supplication, praying that they will remain, in bodies beyond all counting.

13 Dedicating

ะ) เวริ์ วิจิ เพล เจา ลา ยู่มาจะ สาวารราดิจานจะ สาจาง เรา ที่รา ๚๊า๛ลา๛๚าฐ๚๚๊าร๚๊ารฆามชั้งางมาร๚๊าซามมางรามิมมางสายมมางรา ઽઽઃૹૢ૱એૼઽૻઽૢૻ૾૾૽ૢૢૼ૱ઌૢ૽ૼ૾ૺૡ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૹ૾ૻ૱ૡ૽ૼ૱ૻૡ૽૾૱ઌ૽૿ૺ૱ૢૻૣઽ૽ૡઽૣ૱ૡઽ૱ૡ૽ૼ૱ૡૡૼ anwernerer and Isign and Tranger and the second states and the second states and the second states and the second se नमगफुः सेनयावहेंब के 1ने स्रय सुमानन सकेनयानन मुलायान नया सेवा รุสาดาสารส์สาราสิ ระกิรุสาราสิงาสราพะเลยูราร์ไ বিষ্ঠু বিশ্বাই વશ્વવાશાયાન્દાસુદશાયાન્દાસુભાવવે નવો નાસ્ત્રશા છુદાદ્વદા દેશા અદાવદાસુભા ઞ ૧૮૮ ગામ આ સુવય સુવર્ચ સુ સુ ૨ સે ૩૮ ગામ વર્શુ ૨ ૧ સમય ગામ સમય પાર સે <u>૱ૼૡૻૻ૱ૡૢ૾ૺૼૼૼૼૻૡૡૢૻૺ૱ૡૣૻૡ૱ૹૹૼૡૻૡ૱ૡૢૻ</u>૱ૡૡ૱ૡૢૻૡ૱ૡૢ૾ૺૼ૱ૡ শাধ্যুম'ন্'বের্ন্রি

[g] The seventh ingredient is dedication, which is found in the verse with the words "prostrations and..." [The full verse reads:

ายู่ๆาจส์ฉาราราสส์ราชิรารอุญพานารา JE ચ સુ ખે ર ર ર સ્ બ લે ર ગાંચે બ ર ખો ารทิ น.ชี้ น. มี. น. เสมพางราวรุฑาสางารูราสูงารูราวจันว์

I dedicate To my future enlightenment All my merit, Whatever little goodness I may have gathered here By bowing myself and offering, By confessing and rejoicing, By urging and supplication.]

Here we are taking all the virtuous seeds within us, represented by the goodness we have accomplished in practicing the six ingredients that have already come, and dedicating them as a cause for the full enlightenment of ourselves and every living being, together. Make this dedication with tremendous will, and the power of your good will flow forever, and never finish.

Read this prayer as I have taught you to here; understand what each verse means, and say it out slowly, without letting your mind wander to something else. If you can do this, then you will gain a great mountain of good deeds, beyond any kind of measuring.

Five of the ingredients we have listed here—prostrating, offering, urging, supplicating, and rejoicing—help you to gather together the different factors that are conducive to the path. One of them, confessing, helps you clean yourself of the factors that are obstacles, ones that oppose the path. One part of rejoicing—dwelling in a sense of gladness over the good you have done yourself—also functions to multiply your virtue.

Dedication works to multiply, fantastically, even the minor good deeds you have done in the acts of gathering, and cleaning, and multiplying. It also takes good deeds that are short-term, those that are going to give a good result and then disappear, and changes them so that they will never be exhausted. In brief, it functions in all three ways: to gather, to clean, and to multiply such that goodness never ends.

14 Asking for a Final Blessing

२२ । निः समान् स्रोयामा स्यायामा स्वयायन् या सुम्राय सुम्राया सुम्राया स्वयाय सुम्राया स्वयाय सुम्राया स्वयाया स्वयाया स्वयाया स्वयाया सुम्राया सुम्राय सुम्राया सुम् सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राय सुम्राय सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्राया सुम्रा सुम्राय

For the sixth and final preliminary, refresh your visualization, and make an offering of a mandala. Them make a request that the Lamas bless the stream of your mind. Ask Them to help you stop, quickly, everything from disrespecting your Spiritual Guide on up to grasping to some ingrained selfnature, in either of its two forms. Ask Them to help you develop, smoothly, every single kind of thought which is perfect and unmistaken; everything from respect for your Spiritual Guide, on up to the realization of suchness, the fact that nothing has any nature of its own. And ask them finally to help you put a final end to all the things, within you or outside of you, that might obstruct your spiritual progress.

Make this supplication over and over, many times, with fierce hopes for its success.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Five

15 An Actual Practice of the Preliminaries and Ingredients

A Thousand Angels Of the Heaven of Bliss, A Prayer of Lama Devotion

અછા સિ.બહુ. મેળા હતું મ.ટે હોય હતું છે. તે છે. ગ

lamay nelnjor ganden hlagyama

ganden hla-gyay gungyi tukka ne,

ٳ؉ؚڝڗ؆ٳ؉ۥۿؚٚڗٵؚ؆؉ۥڲٳڂ؆؞ؗڡڲۄؖ؞ڡڐۄۥڲ؆

rabkar shosar pungdray chunzin tser,

ોર્કે&ાગ્રૈ)ં સુભ[ે]યાં ગ્યું ન અદ્યિત્ર સેં વ∃રાગ્યાં થા

chu-kyi gyalpo kun-kyen losang drak,

าสสาวการสายเกาสสาวการการการสายสาย

sedang chepa nendir sheksu sol.

Please come to me, Lobsang Drakpa, King of the Dharma, who knows all things, Come with your Sons, riding upon The tops of clouds Like mountains of pure white snow; Come, Come from the heart Of the Lord of a Thousand Angels Living in the Heaven of Bliss.

ามกุสามิเสมามศารามิราสิวยา สุวาริกา

dun-gyi namkar sertri penday teng,

JE નર્દ્ય સુંસ'ન્ ગુસ્ય પ્રવે વર્દ્ય ન ગામ રહ્યા

jetsun lama gyepay dzumkar chen,

ารุสาส์ รร์ น่ริ จจัร สุมุณ ดิร มธิ์สารู

daklo depay sunam shingchok tu,

ઌૹૣૣૣૣૢૡૢૻૡૻ૱ૡૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢઌૻઌૹૢૢ૱ૡૡૢૣઌૡૻૹૢૡૡ૾ૺૡ

tenpa gyechir kalgyar shuksu sol.

Sit in the air In front of me, On a throne with cushions Of the moon, and the lotus; Set on the backs of lions.

My holy Lama, With pure white smile, Happy with me, I ask you to stay For a million years To spread the teaching; Stay, for there is no one Higher than you With whom I may make merit By goodness of my faith.

ૡૺ૱૱ૢ૾૾ૡ૽ૢૼ૱ૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૡ૱ૡૡ૱ૡ૽ૼૡૼ૱ૡ

shejay kyunkun jelway lodru tuk,

।भ्रात्यान्वन्दः सः नविः सुनः युन् ग्येगाश्चन्यासुन् ।

kelsang naway gyengyur lekshe sung,

าฐสุมามานิ วุ่มนาฏิมาลูมามารามิยังเนลาลูๆ

drakpay pelgyi hlammer dzepay ku, स्टिन्ट्रेस् द्वर्यस्य द्वर्या द्वर्या दक्या

tongtu drenpe dunden la chaktsel.

Your Mind Is knowledge That wraps around The entire mass Of knowable things.

Your Words Are jewels Of good explanation That we the fortunate Wear on our ears.

Your Body Shines forth Shines with brightness Shines with a glory The world will see.

I bow to You; Just to see You Just to hear You Just to think of You Brings great things.

ૡ૾૾ઽ૾ૡૼઽૻ૱ૹ૽ૼૼઽૻઌ૾ૻૼૼૼ૱ૹૣૻ૾૾ૹ૾૽ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૡ૽ૻ૱ૻઌૼ૱ૻ

yi-ong chuyun natsok metok dang, าริ เดิม นารุ ๆ เ ซิ้ม ซู รา ๆ มณ ริ เธ รา มัก ม

drishim dukpu nangsel drichab sok,

ngusham yitrul chutrin gyatso di,

ารจัร สุมม ติร มธิ์ ทายิร ณ มธิ์ร นร เวลู ญ

sunam shingchok kyela chupar bul.

I make in my mind And place here as well An ocean of gifts That could cover the sky;

Presents to please All of Your senses, Every different color of flower, Sweetest fragrant incense, Lamps of light, perfumes Upon your body, And other gifts as well, Do I offer You, There is no higher With whom I may make merit.

าการเดิญรัฐมามีรารูญเสพายพยุญเราะพิ

gangshik tokme dune sakpa yi,

าญลารทาพราทพูมามารทางิาอุทิพารรา

lu-ngak yisum mige chigyi dang,

ู่ เลวานา ซิ้มนามพูมาฏิมิมซุส ซิ้มพ

kyepar dompa sumgyi mitun chok,

nyingne gyupa drakpu sosor shak.

From deep within my heart, I am sorry, deeply, And openly confess One by one The harm that I have done In my acts or words or thoughts; Any and every wrong Kept with me from time With no beginning; Especially what I may have done Against any one Of the three different kinds Of vows.

าสิจาลามลิ.วูลาลริรามราร์ลาสูาาณาร์สา

nyikmay dundir mangtu drupla tsun,

chugye pangpe delnjor dunyu je,

เลส์สานีาฏีราฏิเลลาสาธิสาสย์รานาญ

gunpo kyukyi labchen dzepa la,

dakchak sampa takpe yirang ngo.

Here in the age Of degeneration You made every effort To gain great learning;

You threw away The eight worldly thoughts And so made use Of Your leisure and fortune.

Savior, we rejoice We are glad, happy deep inside, For what you have done, So good and powerful.

<u>|</u>દે'નર્ડુંત'સુ'અ'ન્સ'મ'મિન-સુઅશ'ગીશ|

jetsun lama dampa kyenam kyi,

। প্রদায় মের্ম প্রেম দের জারা দের জার জার দের দির দির দের দির

chukuy kala kyentsey chunzin trik,

ุ โย๊าผู่x้านส์ม[ั]่งเหนื้ายุ เกมากูลายุโล้านโล้ามามา

jitar tsampay duljay dzinma la,

sabgye chukyi charpa aptu sol.

Holy lamas high, Wrap the sky Of your dharma bodies In massive clouds Of knowledge and love And let them pour Upon the earth Of your disciples, As we are ready, A shower of rain, The Teachings Deep and wide.

dakki ji-nye sakpay gewa di,

ารสุสารราวญ์ รางบุสาณายุรายสารรา

tendang drowa kunla gangpen dang,

<u>ૡૢઽ</u>ૢૡઽૡૼ૱ૡૢૼ૱૱

kyepar jetsun losang drakpa yi,

ารสุข.พ.ช. มีะ.ศ. 2. เป็นเป็น เป็นเป็น เป็นเป็น

tenpay nyingpo ringdu selje shok.

May any goodness I have done With this my prayer Be a help to the teachings And to every living being.

I make a special prayer too That for many years to come I may carry forth The Light, The Essence of the Word, The Teachings of Je Tsongkapa.

ารุรณาษุสาสารณิ สามาริสาร์าลิไ

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

าวกาทิ สู้วัร นา สูจิ สิราวดุกุลเงา

dakki chiwor penday tengshuk la,

าวๆจะริส.ธสาร์จิรัฐ์สุฆายิฆาวสูราษิไ

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

kusung tukkyi ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit My root Lama Shining and precious Upon the lotus Atop my head; Take me after You In great kindness, Grant that I attain Your body, speech and mind.



ngudrup kuynjung tubwang dorje chang,

I pray to the One who Holds the Diamond The source from where Every goal is found;

ารมิทุพามิราวชิวาวิราทิกราธิสาฐสารพาทุลิทุพา

mikme tseway terchen chenre sik,

ไว้ พิวาพผิสานลิ วุจรามี จะพาวนณา รูรงไ

drime kyenpay wangpo jampel yang,

านวี่ 2.242.พ.เพิ่มเชยุพพ.พยุ2.พพะ.พชุ.ม.ป

dupung malu jomdze sangway dak,

। বাদরা তর আদরা এই নার্ত্ত বার্ত্ত বার্ত্ত বার্দ্র বার্ত্ত বি না

gangchen kepay tsuk-gyen tsongkapa,

losang drakpay shabla solwa deb.

I pray to Loving Eyes Treasure of love With no one it loves;

I pray to Soft Glorious Voice Lord of knowledge That has no stain;

I pray to the Keeper of the Secret Who smashes all The army of demons;

I pray to Tsongkapa Crowning jewel Of masters of the Land of Snow;

I pray to One, I pray at the feet, I pray to Lobsang Drakpa.

न्ययाख्रास्ट परि हामारे के रेकी

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche, निर्याया श्रुरायर त्यर खुरायर त्य

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

नियोजरुष्ट्रेय.कुर्युतुः झुर्यु श्रम्ब का हिश्राय वुदः झुर्

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

) શુ: નાસુ - : સુન એ : ગુ: ને દે એ : નુ ના રે બ : નુ ના રે બ !

kusung tukkyi ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit My root Lama Shining and precious Upon the lotus In my heart; Take me after You In great kindness, Grant that I attain Your body, speech and mind.

न्ययाख्रास्ट परि हामारे के रेकी

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

नियोजरीय कुरेतु हु, येतु हु, येतु हु, येतु हु, हु,

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

chokdang tunmong ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit My root Lama Shining and precious Upon the lotus In my heart; Take me after You In great kindness, Grant that I attain Both common and highest goals.

न्ययाख्रास्ट परि हामारे के रेकी

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

निर्याया श्रुरायर त्यर खुरायर त्य

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

नियोजरुष्ट्रेय.कुर्युतुः झुर्यु श्रम्ब का हिश्राय वुदः झुर्

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

เฏะ·สูจ·สู้ะ·นั่จิ·จะ·รุ·จรส·จะวะจุจาง

jangchub nyinpoy bardu tenpar shuk.

Come I pray and sit My root Lama Shining and precious Upon the lotus In my heart; Take me after You In great kindness, Stay here never moving Until the Buddha's essence.

।র্র. ২ বর্ষা শুর দৃ ক্রুঝ ব র্র হা দি ধর্মা

tserab kuntu gyalwa tsongkape,

tekchok she-nyen ngusu dzepay tu,

gyalwe ngakpay lamsang de-nyi le,

าสาร์ชิญร์สาพรายสู้ญราชิญ

kechik tsamyang dokpar magyur chik.

Through all the string of my future lives May Tsongkapa the Victor come to me And serve himself as my spiritual guide In the teachings of the Greater Way.

<u>ৠ</u>৾৾য়৾৾য়ৢ৾৾ঀৼ৾ঢ়ৣ৾৾৻৸ৼ৾৾৾ৼয়৾৾য়৾৾ৼৼ৾৾ঀ

kyewa kuntu yangdak lama dang,

าวสุณามิราชัญ ๆ รุสณาณาณ์รุญ รู้ราชิรา

drelme chu-kyi pella longchu ching,

เพรรรานพาฏิเพิ่สารสารสารัสเพาสุญ

sadang lamgyi yunten rabdzok ne,

र्हि दि प्रकट में में प्रकट हु र र्षेत के

dorje chang-gi gopang nyurtop shok.

In all my lives May I never live Apart from my perfect lamas, May I bask In the glory Of the Dharma.

May I fulfil Perfectly Every good quality Of every level And path, And reach then quickly The place where I Become myself The One who Holds the Diamond.

16 The Conditions for Developing Quietude

๛ๅ เฉพาริพาธิสาส์าณพๅ

From the Great Book on the Steps of the Path:

The explanation of how to train yourself in each of the two [quietude and special sight] has three parts: how to train yourself in quietude, how to train yourself in special sight, and how the two are joined in union. The first of these parts itself has three sections: how to gather together the conditions for quietude, how to meditate on quietude after you have gathered together these conditions, and how to know when your meditation has actually brought you to quietude. The first is described in the words, "Holy practitioners should first gather together the conditions for quietude uickly and easily." Here there are six different conditions.

17 A Conducive Place

∃⊻l. मेंशियार्श्वेयाश्वायार्क्वेयाश्वास्त्रेन्यार हेन्यायार् होन्यायान्त्या याख्यायात्र्या याख्यायाः นถิ ฏิ วั มี วสุสาน รุรารุญาณ พัญญานามิ พลุม นพาสุม นอรา รุรา

[1] The first condition is to do your meditation staying in a place which is conducive for it. The place should have five different qualities:

a) It should be a place with things that are "easy to find," in the sense that you can find food, clothing, and other necessities without any trouble.

b) It should be a "good place," in the sense that there are no fearful creatures like wild animals or the like, nor any persons like enemies who would try to harm you.

c) It should have a "good environment," in the sense that the environment doesn't cause any kinds of sickness to develop in you.

d) There should be "good friends" there, in the sense that your companions in the place share your sense of morality, and your world view.

e) The place should "have goodness," in the sense that, during the day, there should not be many people around and, during the night, there should not be many sounds.

As the Jewel of the Sutras says,

The place where intelligent people practice Should have things that are good to find, It should be a good place, with a good environment, A place where good friends stay, With all the practitioner needs, with ease.

18 Live Simply

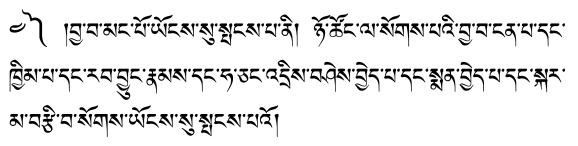
[2] The second condition is that you keep your wants few; you have no great attachment to things like fine robes, or a lot of things, or the like.

19 Be Easily Satisfied



[3] The third condition is that you are easily satisfied; you always feel like you have enough, even if all you can find is robes or the like that are the worst.

20 Don't Get Busy



[4] The fourth condition is that you give up trying to do too many things. You give up undesirable actions like business; you avoid being too familiar with laymen or monks; you stop practicing the minor arts of medicine, astrology, or the like.

21 Be Pure

٣氟 ٳۿؚؚؚۣٝڛٳڲۿۿ؆ۼۿ؆ڂڂ؆ڂڟٳڂٵٛٳۿٚؾۼڂڂڂؾڂ؉ۿۿۿ؆ڽؖڰۣڲؚٚۿ؆ڟڰۿ؆ ڛٳڛڹڂڂٮڟۿؚڟڂڂٮڡۿۿ؆ڂڿٳڟڟۺڲۊ۬ٮڟڿٮڟڲڟؾڟؖۿ؆ؿڰڲۿؚۿ؆ڝڂڂڂڟڟ ۿڂ؞ڟۿڹڂڞڟڂڂ؞ڲۿۣڟڹڂڂ؞ڡؽۣٞڂ؞ڟۿ؆ڟۿڟڂڴۣڹڲڂ؞ڞۿؚۿڹڟڂ؞ؾؖٛٳڂ؞ڟۄٚٳ

[5] The fifth condition is that your morality is perfectly pure. With regard to your vows of individual freedom, and your bodhisattva vows, you never break down the foundation of your training, the things you have been taught that are naturally wrong to do, and those that the Buddha has prohibited. If out of a lack of attention you do commit such deeds, your are quick to regret them, and you try to make up in the proper way.

22Get Rid of Stupid Thoughts $\sqrt{125}$ $\sqrt{1$

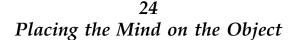
[6] The sixth condition is that you totally rid yourself of the stupid thoughts of desire and the rest. You meditate on the problems of desire in this life—how it can bring you to death, and to bondage; and you meditate on the problems it brings you in the life after—a birth in the realms of misery, or the like. Or else you can meditate on how each and every one of these pretty things in the suffering cycle of life is going to end; how quickly it disappears;

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Five

how surely it will be torn from me before very long. Try then to get accustomed to thoughts like this: So why do I find myself caring at all about these things? What use are they for me? Use these to rid yourself of every stupid thought of desire.

23 The Nine States of Meditation

Here is the third division, which is a description of how one achieves the nine states of meditation using the steps explained above. Anyone who hopes to practice meditation must become proficient in these nine states; and to become proficient in them, one must know what they are. So here is an explanation of the nine states, which are called (1) placing the mind on the object; (2) placing the mind on the object with some continuity; (3) placing the mind on the object closely; (5) controlling the mind; (6) pacifying the mind; (7) pacifying the mind totally; (8) making the mind single-pointed; and (9) achieving equilibrium.



Here is the first state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object." You achieve this state by means of receiving instructions from your lama about the object you should use for your meditation. The mind at this point stays on the object only from time to time, and for the most part is not fixed on the object at all: you are unable to keep your mind on the object for any continuous length of time. The two mental functions of noting and examining are present, and due to this you often lose yourself to scattering and agitation. You become aware of this condition and so you get the impression that you have even a greater problem of too many thoughts coming up to your mind than you ever had before. What's really happening though is not that you have more of these thoughts than before; it's just that you have now become aware of the problem.

25 Gaining Continuity

Here is the second state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object with some continuity." This state is reached when you practice placing the mind on the object enough that you can now keep your mind on it for some continuous, although brief, period of time. You could say it would be like being able to keep your mind from wandering for as long as it would take to do one round of the *mani* mantra on your rosary. At this point your problem of having too many thoughts goes away for a while, and then comes back for a while, so the impression you have is that these thoughts are making a periodic resurgence. This particular state of meditation is achieved through contemplating.

During these first two states of meditation, you have an abundance of dullness and agitation, and only occasionally fix your mind on the object. Therefore at this point we say that your mind is in the first of the four mental modes, the one described as having to "concentrate to focus." During these stages, said our Lama, the periods of distraction last longer than the periods in which the mind is fixed on the object.

26 Patching the Gaps

Here is the third state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object and patching the gaps." The place where you put a normal patch is a piece of cloth; here the place you put the patch is the continuation of your focus. What this means is that you catch your mind quickly after it wanders away from the object, and so "patch" the hole in the continuation. The difference between this state of meditation and the two that come before it is in the length of time you are distracted. Our Lama also noted that this is the time when you are able to develop your recollection to a high degree.

27

Here is the fourth state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object closely." Since by now your recollection is highly developed, you are able to place your mind on the object of meditation in such a way that it is no longer possible to lose it completely; this then is what differentiates this state from the three before it. Even though you are succeeding in keeping the object from being lost, nonetheless dullness and agitation are present in your mind, and they are very strong. Therefore you must at this point apply the correction for dullness and agitation. These two levels, the third and fourth, are achieved by means of recollection. Our Lama noted that from this point on the power of our meditation was complete, or full-grown, like a person who has reached maturity.

28 Controlling the Mind

Here is the fifth state of meditation, called "controlling the mind." There is a tendency during the fourth state to draw your mind too far inside, and there is a great danger that this can lead to subtle dullness. Therefore we must now

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Five

develop our watchfulness to a high degree. It goes and spies on the mind, and finds something wrong; in response then we must uplift the mind by thinking over the many benefits that single-mindedness can bring to us. The difference between this state and those before it is whether or not obvious dullness can occur.

29 Pacifying the Mind

Here is the sixth state of meditation, called "pacifying the mind." The great danger at this point is that subtle agitation occurs, as a result of uplifting the mind too far while in the fifth state. Whenever this subtle agitation comes, you must raise up a powerful kind of watchfulness to detect it; realize that even very subtle agitation is a serious fault in your meditation, and stop it. What distinguishes this stage from the one before it is whether or not there is a great danger of having subtle dullness. These last two states, the fifth and the sixth, are achieved by means of watchfulness. From this point on, said our Lama, the power of our watchfulness is complete.

30 Pacifying the Mind Totally

By the time you reach the seventh state of meditation, which we call "pacifying the mind totally," your recollection and watchfulness are total, and so it is unlikely that dullness and agitation are going to occur. At this point you must bring your effort up to a powerful level; see how destructive even subtle forms of dullness and agitation are, and do whatever you can to eliminate them altogether. The difference between this state and the ones before it is whether or not you should worry much about slipping into subtle dullness or agitation. Although there is no great danger at this point that subtle dullness and agitation will occur, you must still make great effort to implement the various methods for eliminating them. While you are in the fifth and sixth states of meditation, you still have to be concerned whether or not dullness and agitation are going to attack you. Here in the seventh state though you have the ability to initiate the effort necessary to block them; and so, said our Lama, dullness and agitation are unable to attack and create an obstacle. During these last five states of meditation-that is, from the third through to the seventh—the mind is for the most part in single-pointed meditation. Nonetheless, conditions such as dullness and agitation are interrupting ones concentration, and so we describe the mental mode during these periods as "engaging but interrupted."

Here is what happens when you reach the eighth state of meditation, called "making the mind single-pointed." When you begin a meditation session, you must still make a slight effort to bring up the various corrections. After that though you are able to go for an entire session without even the subtle forms of dullness and agitation coming up in the mind. These last few stages are like having an enemy who is at full strength, one who has lost part of his strength, and one whose strength is completely lost. Since these examples describe how dullness and agitation gradually lose their power, we can say that from the eight state of meditation you no longer need to make any conscious effort to apply watchfulness. Because in this eighth state you can make a little effort at the opening of a meditation session and then pass the entire period without being interrupted by problems such as dullness and agitation, the mental mode at this point is described as "engaging without interruption." The seventh and eighth states of meditation are achieved through applying effort.

32 Equilibrium

Here is the ninth state of meditation, called "achieving equilibrium." Here your mind is engaging in the object without any conscious effort at all. This state comes about as a result of having repeated the eighth state over and over until you are completely accustomed to it, and then you can go into meditation spontaneously, effortlessly. This is similar to the point you reach in your recitations when you can read out a text from memory without any effort, since you have practiced reciting it repeatedly. You go into single-minded meditation in a single swoop. This state of mind is for all intents and purposes a desire-realm form of single-pointed quietude. The ninth state is achieved through being totally accustomed.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Six: Applied Meditation, Part Two

1 The Motivation for Meditation

The following selections are taken from Preparing for Tantra: The Mountain of Blessings. *The root text of this book was written by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa* (1357-1419), and the commentary by Pabonka Rinpoche (1878-1941). *The book was translated by Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (1921-) and Geshe Michael Roach (1952-). Khen Rinpoche also wrote the following introductory sections.*

Before you start this little book, decide on your motivation for reading it. Think to yourself,

I want to reach enlightenment as soon as possible. I want to reach it in this very life. And when I do, I will free every living being from every pain of the suffering existence we all live now. Then I will take all these beings up to the level of a Buddha, which is the ultimate state of happiness. This is why I am going to read this book, which shows all the steps to enlightenment.

Take a moment now before you go on. Make sure you have this motivation.

This little book covers absolutely everything that the Buddha ever taught. In Tibet we have a hundred great volumes of the Buddhas' own teachings, translated into Tibetan from Sanskrit, the language of ancient India. And this small book covers all of them.

All the old, great books of Buddhism have but one main goal, and that is to show how any one of us can reach the state of perfect enlightenment. They tell us everything we have to do: how to reach the goal, how to practice, and how to learn. They show us how to begin, they show us how to finish. Everything we need is in those books. Five hundred years ago in Tibet there came a master monk and teacher, whose name was Tsongkapa the Great. He took these ancient volumes and arranged them into a kind of book known as the *Lam Rim*, which means "Steps of the Path to Enlightenment." Here he laid out all the steps that any of us can go through, one by one in the proper order, if we truly wish to reach enlightenment. He took care to present the steps clearly and simply, yet covering everything that must be done, as we start on the path, and travel along it, and finally reach its end.

The small book here is called the *Source of All My Good*. It is the absolute essence of all the *Lam Rims*, of all the books on the Steps to enlightenment. The text was written by Tsongkapa himself, and it is named from the opening lines, which read: "The source of all my good is my kind Lama, my Lord."

In the teachings on the Steps this work is also known by another name, something of a secret name, which is *Begging for a Mountain of Blessings*. The word "blessing" here refers to the blessings of all the Buddhas of the universe. "Mountain" comes from a Tibetan word which means a huge pile, a great mass of things all heaped together in one place. The word "begging" is meant to show how much we need and want these blessings.

When we recite this work out loud, then, it's as though we are begging the Buddhas to grant us their blessings, to help us achieve everything from the beginning up to final enlightenment. We are asking them to help us reach all the various paths, all the different levels of knowledge; we are asking for the power of their blessings, we are begging them for help.

Just whom are we asking for help? Normally when we perform the secret Ceremony of the Tenth, we begin with the Practice of Six, followed by the Thousand Angels. Just after that we start this *Source of All My Good*. Therefore we still have in front of us the same holy beings who were there during the Thousand Angels.

Sitting in the center, in mid-air before us, is Tsongkapa. Inside his heart is Gentle Voice, or Manjushri, who is the image of all the Buddhas' wisdom. In the heart of Gentle Voice is another holy being, Vajradhara—this is the Keeper of the Diamond, or the Buddha of the secret teachings. His body is blue, and within his own heart is the Sanskrit letter *huung*. This letter is marked with another letter, *mam*.

On Tsongkapa's own right is his disciple Gyaltsab Je, whose full name is Gyaltsab Darma Rinchen. Within this disciple's heart is Loving Eyes, whose Sanskrit name is Avalokiteshvara, and who is the embodiment of all the Buddhas' love. Inside the heart of Loving Eyes is again the Keeper of the Diamond, and in his heart the letter *huung*, marked with a *mam*.

On the other side, to Tsongkapa's left, is his disciple Kedrup Je, whose full name is Kedrup Je Gelek Pelsang. Inside of his heart is the Holder of the Diamond, or Vajrapani, and in the Holder's heart is the Keeper of the Diamond. Within the Keeper's heart is a letter *huung*, marked with a *mam*.

All of these beings are seated in the air in front of you, and they are the ones whom you are asking for their blessing. They are the ones that you are requesting to help you, to grant you every kind of knowledge, from the beginning of the path on up to final enlightenment.

Now I want you to think about something. What is the difference between a Buddha and us? What is it that makes all the Buddhas different from us? And what about you, yourself? You are trying to reach Buddhahood; but what is the difference between all these Buddhas, and you? This is a question you must examine, and then the answer will come to you.

What are the Buddhas? First of all the places where they live are paradise. Pure paradise. The paradises where the Buddhas live are completely pure, they are pure by their very nature, and there is not a single thing about them which is not pure.

Inside themselves too the Buddhas are pure. They have no inner obstacles at all, no bad deeds stored up in them, no problems of any kind. They have none of the problems that are caused by any of the four elements of the physical world, either around them or within them. They have no sickness, no getting old, no death. They do not even have a word for these things where they live. This is why their paradises have names like the "Heaven of Bliss," for they live in the highest happiness that there is.

When we think about our own lives then we can see the big difference between Buddhas and us. In one sense we are very fortunate; we have all had the very great fortune to be born as a human being, and we can enjoy that small amount of happiness which human beings sometimes experience. And so sometimes we think we are happy.

But still we have problems, a lot of problems. We have problems all around us, and we have problems inside of us. We have problems that come with the very nature of the kind of life we live. The Buddhas have none of these problems.

Try to think about this difference between the Buddhas and you. Why did you get this book, why are you going to read this book? The main purpose is to reach enlightenment, to gain the highest state of happiness that exists. And to get there you must escape all the sufferings that come with our present kind of life.

To do all this you are going to have to follow some kind of practice. You are going to have to move up through certain levels, certain paths, one by one through a great many different Steps. You will have to go in order, gradually, through each of these Steps. Each higher Step you will have to reach by practicing, and to practice you must learn what to practice. If you never learn what to do, you will never be able to do it.

In this little book you are going to learn what to do. But this is only a preparation for something else.

Generally speaking, this book is all you need. If this is all you ever learn, and if you practice what you learn here, then you will reach enlightenment. But it will take a long time to do so if you restrict yourself to this way, to the way of the open teachings of the Buddha. It will take a very, very long time.

But you want enlightenment, you need it, and you need it now. Why? Because the reason you are reading this book, the whole point of studying these things and reaching these goals, is to help each and every living being. All of them have been your own mother, and the purpose of everything is to help them.

Right now they are suffering, by the very nature of the life we live. Most of them are living in the three lower kinds of birth. Even those who live in one of the higher kinds of birth are suffering too; by the very nature of things, they are in some kind of pain, all the time. Your goal is to save them from this pain, your goal is to help them reach enlightenment, which is absolute happiness. This is why you are studying, this is why you are practicing.

If you only use the way of the open teachings, it will take a long time to reach the goal. But you want the goal now, you want to reach it quickly, because all these living beings around you, all who have been your mother during some lifetime in the past, are suffering in this kind of existence. You cannot stand to have their pain continue, you cannot let them go on suffering so long.

And so you will free them, and you will free them quickly, now. But is there any way to do it so fast? The answer is yes, there is a way, a path that works faster than any other, a path which is very deep and powerful and holy. This is the Tantric path, the secret path of the Diamond Queen: Vajra Yogini.

To practice this path you must receive an initiation to enter it, and then you must receive her teachings. But before you can do this you must first be granted another initiation, one which will qualify you to study and follow her path. There are four great groups of secret teachings, and to qualify to practice the path of this Angel you must be granted an initiation that belongs to the group which is called the "unsurpassed." Therefore the most important thing for you to do first is to seek an initiation of the "unsurpassed" group.

According to the tradition of the Diamond Queen, the best initiation to prepare yourself for her own initiation and path is the one we call the "Union of the Spheres." There are though other initiations of the unsurpassed group which you can seek if you cannot get this one; for example, there is the initiation of the being known as Frightener, which is much shorter and easier than the one for the Union of the Spheres, and still qualifies you to take her initiation later.

There is another step you should take too before seeking her initiation. When you go to a college to get an advanced degree, or any degree at all, you must first enter the college. Then you go to classes, do your study, and finally after a number of years you complete all the requirements, and reach your goal. To reach the goal then it is very important that you study and learn, on a constant basis. But to study, and learn, you first have to gain entrance into the college.

It's all the same here. The first thing you have to do is to gain entrance into the unsurpassed group of the secret teachings of the Buddha. To enter these teachings you have to go through the gate, and this is the initiation. The initiation is the door.

When you take the initiation, you commit yourself to a number of vows. Keeping these vows is like doing your study on a daily basis once you've been allowed to enter the college. In a school you have to learn what to study, and then you have to maintain a regular schedule of study. Here in the secret teachings, the vows that you took when you received your initiation are what you have to study: these are what you have to maintain on a regular, daily basis.

To keep the vows, you have to learn all about them. This is why it's essential that after your first initiation you study, in detail, the secret vows, along with the regular vows of morality, and the bodhisattva vows. The very function of these vows, the result of these vows, is very simple. *If you keep them, they produce enlightenment in you*.

Aside from this main function, keeping the vows has another effect as well. In the short run—that is, while you are still on the path, from the very beginning on up to the day you reach the ultimate goal—they help you, they keep you, they preserve you. They make you sweeter and sweeter, more and more pure, every single day you keep them. Everything about you gets better and better: the way you act, the way you think, higher and higher, day by day, month by month.

The vows then are your dear companion, the vows are your devoted helpmate. Vows are not some kind of punishment; the Lama doesn't come to the sacred place of initiation, and say to you, "Well now that you've got the initiation, here are some vows to keep, as a punishment." You must understand all the great good which the vows do for you, and you must learn what they are. Once you have learned the vows, you must keep them as your daily practice. You should reach a point where, as you look back after some time has passed, you can see progress, you can say to yourself, "A number of years ago, I used to act like that; I had a certain kind of attitude, certain ways of behaving, the limitations of my knowledge were such, and my ability too was only so. Now they have all changed, for the better. Even in the last two years I have changed; no, even in the last year I have changed." You should be able to see for yourself, you should be able to judge, by yourself, whether you are keeping the vows, and how it changes everything about you.

So we are working mainly towards the day when we can receive initiation into the practice of the Diamond Queen. This will allow us to receive her teachings, and then to carry them out. To do this, we will first have to seek any one of the preliminary initiations into the secret teachings of the unsurpassed group, the highest group of secret teachings.

A person who seeks to be granted an initiation into this highest group should himself be highest, in the sense that he is highly qualified to receive the initiation. Becoming highly qualified is something that you must do in the proper stages, in certain steps, one by one.

Above I asked you to think about what it was that made Buddhas different from us. In the beginning though all the beings who are Buddhas now were just the same as we are at present. They lived the same kind of suffering life that we pass our days in now, and they did so over millions and millions of years, over very many lifetimes.

At some point though these beings were able to achieve an excellent life as a human; the same kind that you have now. Within that human life they were able to meet with an excellent spiritual teacher as well. He or she gave them the proper training, and the necessary initiations, and as a result these beings began to get better and better. Finally they achieved enlightenment: they were able to stop all the problems within them and outside of them, everything. If they have been able to practice and achieve this goal, then why can't you? Why not?

And so it is possible for you to become someone who is highly qualified, who is qualified to an unsurpassed degree to take one of the initiations of the unsurpassed group of the secret teachings. To be qualified to take this initiation, to be a highly qualified practitioner in this sense, means that you must be a practitioner of what we call the *Mahayana*: the Greater Way. This is because all the secret teachings also belong to the greater way; they are in fact the highest teachings and practices of the greater way. You too then will have to be an unsurpassed practitioner, of the greater way. But how do you reach this point?

You must first prepare yourself, with what we call the "shared" practice. The word "shared" means that this preliminary practice is shared by the way of the open teachings, and the greater way, and the way of the secret teachings—all three. It is a practice which all three ways share in common.

Suppose you are planning to construct a very high building, a building with many stories. The most important thing to do first is to build a good foundation, a very strong foundation. If the foundation is strong, then you can build as many stories as you like on top of it.

The little book you have here—*Begging for a Mountain of Blessings,* complete with the commentary of the great Pabongka Rinpoche—presents this foundation. It shows you the practice which is shared by all three ways, and which will prepare you for initiation into the secret teachings. This is the strong foundation upon which you will build your great, high house.

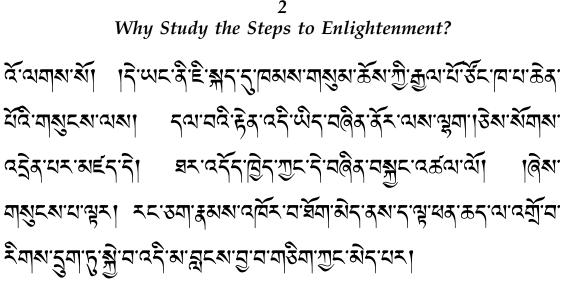
Think about it, and be happy. Take some joy now in what you are about to do. You must realize what a precious opportunity you have in your hands at this very moment, this one good time. Read, and learn, and try not to forget. Try to remember what you learn in this little book, and then try to put it into practice, in your daily life, in a regular way.

By the time you finish this book you should be a different person. The person who picks this book up to read, and the person who sets it down after finishing the last page, should be totally different people. On the inside. You must change: you must change in the way you think, you must change in what you know, in the way you behave all day, in everything about you. Try to change yourself. If you do, then you will win the result of reading this book, of picking it up, and of entering into what it stands for.

Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin

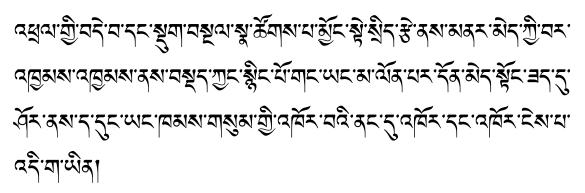
Abbot Emeritus, Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery Abbot, Rashi Gempil Ling Kalmuk Buddhist Temple Freewood Acres Howell, New Jersey, USA

Je Tsongkapa's Day December 27, 1994



"And so we begin," said the Lama.

Let me remind you, he said, of those lines by the King of the Dharma of all three realms—Tsongkapa the Great; the ones that mention "This life of spiritual leisure, more precious than a jewel that can give you whatever you wish for." The refrain throughout these verses reads: "Those of you who wish for freedom should seek to master this, as I have done." You and I have lived in this circle of suffering life forever; and there is not a single form of life, in any of the six realms of pain, that we have not already lived.



In these lives we have suffered, and enjoyed the occasional short-lived pleasure, wandering aimlessly from that high level known as the "Peak of Existence," then down to the lowest hell, "Torment with No Respite," then back, and back again. We have lived this way for time with no beginning, and yet we have never gotten any meaning out of it; the time has slipped away from us useless, senseless, empty. And so still we are here, circling up and down in the three realms of the wheel of life, and certain we are to continue the round.

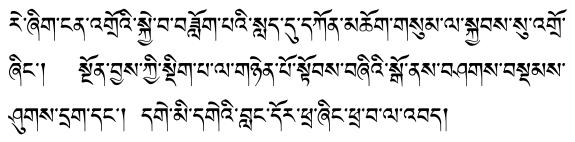
At some point in days gone by, you and I through sheer good luck were taken for some brief moments under the care of a Lama, or the Three Jewels, and so were able to gather together some bit of pure and powerful karma. The force of this karma, I will admit, has allowed us to gain, just this once, the present life we enjoy—full of the various leisures and fortunes, free of the problems that come when we lack the conditions that allow a proper spiritual practice.

I will admit as well that everything we need has come together for us this time: we have a Lama, we have some Dharma to practice, we have every favorable condition that we need. And so the capability to follow the spiritual path is something we now hold in our own two hands. Yet suppose we fail; suppose that we find ourselves unable to achieve the ultimate goal of the infinite lives we have led.

Beyond a doubt then we will fall back again to the births where we have no chance for Dharma. And when we fall it matters not where we fall; wherever we fall in a birth without the Dharma, our life can never be anything but pain.

The way to avoid ever taking another birth where we have no chance for Dharma is to practice the Dharma purely now; there is no better way at all. And our practice must start this minute; you will die, you must die, it is certain you will die. But you've no idea when. And what will happen after that?

Whatever we do now decides where we go then: if we do good, it will throw us forth into one of the better births; if we do wrong, it will throw us to a birth of misery. So suppose we fail to practice; suppose we die in the middle of our present evil way of life. It is only fitting then that we should go right where we belong: to these very births of misery.



We must then for the short term go for shelter to the Three Jewels, to keep ourselves from a birth in the lower realms. We must as well open up and admit the things we have done wrong before, and restrain ourselves in the future. To do so we must make strong and heartfelt use of the four forces that counteract the power of the wrong. We must too put all our effort into taking up even the smallest virtue, and giving up even the slightest harms we commit against others.

$$\int \hat{a} \cdot \hat{a} \cdot \hat{z} \cdot \hat{z} \cdot \hat{a} \cdot \hat{a} \cdot \hat{z} \cdot \hat{z}$$

If in addition to all this we are able to follow perfectly the path of the three extraordinary trainings, then we ourselves will come to be free of each and every fear of the circle of suffering life. But it's not enough if it is only you who escapes the circle, for we must recall the words of the Master Chandragomi:

Even a cow knows how To take care of himself, To eat a few clumps of grass He easily comes across;

Even the beast can merrily drink From a pool of water he finds As bitter thirst Torments him.

But think now what it is To put your whole heart Into taking care of others;

This is glory, This is a park of pleasure, This is the ultimate.

ા છે ચ રૂગ્ય તેવ સંસ્ લેવ સુ ગ સૂર શેર ગાર ખેવ રા !

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Six

17.7ग.वहमासेत.यत.77.गरे.मये.र्र.ज.गरेग.ह.महिंला

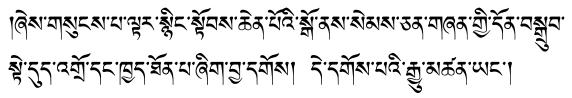
The Sun Climbs aboard his fantastic chariot, Flies across the sky, Lights up all the world.

The Earth Raises up his mighty arms, Bears the load, Holds up all mankind.

And so is the way Of those great beings Who wish nothing For themselves,

Their lives devoted To a single song: The well-being and the happiness Of every living thing.

> *3 Repaying the Kindness of our Mothers*



We must do as the verses say: we must distinguish ourselves from common animals, we must find that great courage of heart to accomplish the goals of all other sentient kind. And there is a good reason why we should.

Every single creature in the universe has been our father, and been our mother, not once, but more times than numbers can count. And there is not a one who when they served as our parent did not shower us with every deep kindness, over and over again.

Think: everything we have now, from this precious human body on up, has come to us through the kindness of other living beings. And so it is now that we must repay them. The repayment must begin here, in these circumstances, while I am able, while I possess this perfect form for the practice of the Dharma.

If now I cannot accomplish this great goal, if all I have gained is wasted, then there is little point in claiming to work for every living being: it is little likely that I myself will be able even to reach the higher realms of suffering life again.

What is the way then to pay this kindness back? No way would be higher than to see to it that every living creature has every happiness there is, and that every living creature is free of every pain which exists. And I will do it! Raise these thoughts of love and compassion up in your heart—bring them on fiercely.

And then you must resolve to take the load upon yourself: "I will rely on no one else in this work; it should be I, and I alone who brings every happiness to every being, and frees each one from every pain."

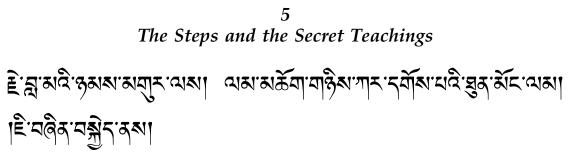
And yet the ability to perform this noble task is had only by a single being: only by a Buddha, there's no one else at all who can do it. If for the sole purpose of all other living creatures I can reach the state of a Buddha, then I can fulfill completely both of the ultimate goals, and so by the way achieve everything I ever needed as well.

4 The Steps of the Path



This is a work of the kind we call the "Steps to Buddhahood"; books like this contain within themselves each and every crucial point in all the open and secret teachings of Buddhism. They present these points without the slightest error, from the very beginning to the very end: from finding and serving a spiritual guide on up to the perfect secret Union, where there is nothing more to learn.

These teachings on the Steps are the pure essence of everything that all the victorious Buddhas have ever spoken, the sum rolled into one. They are the one and only form of the Teaching that embodies all of the greater way; they are the point of the tip of the highest, matchless peak.



Our Lord Lama, in his work entitled Songs of My Spiritual Life, says,

When within yourself you've developed The path that is shared, The one that's needed For both the highest paths...

What he means is that, speaking in a general way, this instruction on the Steps to Buddhahood is one that you could never do without, whether you are practicing the open or the secret teachings of Buddhism. To put it more specifically, the Great Fifth of the Dalai Lamas has said,

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Six

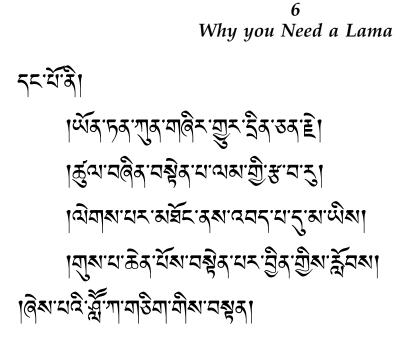
Įૠઽૣૼૡૻૹૣૣૻઽૻૡ૽ૼૼૡૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૢૻ૱ૻ૱ઽૻૹ૾૾ૺઽૻૡૢઽૻૻ<u></u>

Everybody talks of it, The Secret Word, The Most Profound, Essential thread In the River of Dharma For those of the great capacity;

But try it before Your mind is trained In the path that both them share, Climb atop a mighty elephant Still wild, and not yet tamed; You will only lose Yourself.

It is absolutely vital then, for anyone with hopes of entering the door that leads to the way of the Secret Word, that you train your mind first in this path shared by both the open and secret teachings.

ર્ઢશ્વ ગુમ્દ રહુવ અસ શે મે સાય વર્ષ અસ્ય ગ્ર જેમ સું છે. મારી ગલવ પ્રયાગ થે છે. ગુમ્દ ગુમ્દ રહે ગુમ્દ સ્વાય સાથે અર્થ સાથ પ્ર છે. સું છે. મારી ગહેવ સ્વાય છે. ગુમ્દ રહે ગુમ્દ સ્વાય સાથે સાથ સાથ સું છે. સું સું ર છે. સું સું ર છે. સું ર Could any system be more profound or far-reaching than this Dharma, the Steps of the Path? Certainly not those teachings that others claim are oh-so-deep, or oh-so-high and inscrutable. People chatter about attaining some realization, some supposed zenith of some very secret way: they talk of termination; they talk about the levels of creation and completion; about the channels and winds and drops; the great seal, or the great completion, whatever. But if one never makes use of these very Steps, he can never even plant the seeds, much less bring the path in full to grow within his mind.



The first of these [general sections of the steps of the path] is presented in a single verse, the first one of the work:

The source of all my good Is my kind Lama, my Lord; Bless me first to see That taking myself to him In the proper way Is the very root Of the path, and grant me then To serve and follow him With all my strength and reverence.

This Step of taking a Lama is itself divided into two sections: developing clear faith in him, which is the very root of the Path; and then building up reverence for him, by considering the great kindness he has paid us. The instruction in developing faith comes in two stages: how to follow a Lama in one's thoughts, and then how to follow him in one's actions.

Now the Secret Teaching of Sambhuta says,

You will never be able to take a boat To the other side of the river Unless you take the oars up in your hands.

You will never reach the end of suffering life Without a Lama, Even if you perfect yourself In every other respect.

IQT ૡ૾ૢૺ૱૱ૢૼૼૹૣઽૻૻઌૡૹૺ૾ૡઽૹૻૡ૾ૢૹૻ૾ૹ૾ૼૹૻૡ૱ૹૹૻઽૼૼૼૼૼ૱ઌૡૺૹૻૻૡૻૡ૽૾ૡ૾૾ૡ૽ૼ

The Shorter Sutra on the Perfection of Wisdom concurs:

The Victorious Buddhas, Who possess the highest Of all good qualities, Speak as one when They say: "Every single part of the Buddhist way Depends on a Spiritual Guide."

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Six

ୖଵୄ୕ଷୖ୲ୟାସମ୍ବା ସିଂଫ୍ଲାସଷାର୍ସ୍କ୍ରମ୍ବରୁସାସ୍କାସାହରିର୍ଦ୍ଦିୟାସାଭି। ।ସକ୍ଷୟାସାସୁସାହୁର୍ นาหา เกมนิณาสามิรานการที่เสล้าสุดิมาทุธิมาสุมิมานการแ

It says as well:

And so the wise Who seek the high state of enlightenment With a fierce wish deep inside Should smash all pride within them,

And like a mass of sick men Who flock to medicine for a cure, Take themselves to a spiritual guide And serve him single-mindedly.

न्वितर् । यिग्रास्य प्र प्रयोगस्य परे हेत प्रदेश स्य ने । गासुर र न गात प्र य स्य สูงมาสมุรมนมสุ เมืองเปล่งมาร์รับาลสัมมาลาสมัดเวร์

Our Gentle Savior, Tsongkapa the Great, has too spoken these words:

There is a single key For finding a perfect start to reach Your every wish, both happiness In the short run and ultimately;

And the highest words ever spoken Speak it always the same: It is your Lama.

And so you must devote yourself To meditation upon him, Upon the essence of all The three different kinds of refuge; Ask him, for all your goals.

All these lines are saying the same thing: if you have any hope of reaching up to the high spiritual qualities of the various levels and paths, then from the outset you must absolutely find and follow a Lama who can show you how to do so.

And the Lama that we are describing here is not just any one you might happen to come across; it's not just anyone they call a "Lama." Rather, he must have in him the ten high qualities described in the *Jewel of the Sutras*. He must first of all be subdued, at peace, and at high peace; that is to say, he must possess all three of the trainings. He must display fine spiritual qualities that exceed those of his student, and exhibit exceptional effort. He should have a total mastery of the Dharma in the form of scripture, and should have realized suchness. He should be highly skilled in teaching the Dharma, he must have a great love for his disciples, and he must never become tired or discouraged in his teaching, no matter how much or how often he is called upon to do so.

ସ୍ତିମ । ସଞ୍ଚି୶ଅଂଶ୍ରେକ୍ସ୍ରିଷଂକ୍ସ୍ପିଂବେଶ୍ୱିରଂବସ୍ଥିବଂସସ୍ଥିବଂସହି । ସେମ୍ବିଷଂସ୍ପରିଶ୍ୱ କ୍ୟୁଞ୍ଚିଶ୍ କୁକ୍ କୁର୍ଭା ସେଷ୍ଟା ସେ

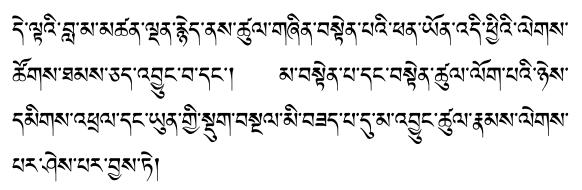
We are though now in the days of degeneration, and so perhaps it is difficult to find someone who possesses each and every one of these qualifications. In such a case, we must follow the advice of the Lord of Lamas:

If you take my advice, Man of the land of Gyalkam, Take yourself to the ultimate Spiritual guide: To one who grasps Reality, To one who has controlled his senses, Who takes your heart away As soon as you lay your eyes on him; To the one that, When you follow what he teaches, The good in you begins to flower, And the bad begins to fade.

These and other such lines are telling us that the Lama we seek must at least possess a complete set of five different qualities: He must have brought his mind under control, by following the three trainings; he must have realized thusness; and He must have love.

དམའ་མགའ་དམའ་མགའ་མགའ་མོས་དང་འིག་རྒིན་གསྱིས་ལས་ཆོས་གསོ་བོར་བྱིད་པ། ཆོ་འདི་དང་ཕྱི་མ་གསྱིས་ལས་ཕྱི་མ་གསོ་བོར་བྱིད་པ། རང་དང་གགན་གསྱིས་ལས་ གགན་གསོ་བོར་བྱིད་པ། སྐོ་གསུམ་བག་མིད་དུ་མི་གདོང་པ། སྐོབ་མ་ལམ་ལོག་ ལམ་གོལ་ལྱ་སྒྱོད་ཕྱིན་ཕི་ལོག་དུ་མི་འགྲིད་པ་སྒྱི་ལོན་དན་དི་དག་དང་ལྱན་པ་ཞིག་ འམ་གོཔ་ལྱ་སྒྱོད་ཕྱིན་ཕི་ལོག་དུ་མི་འགྲིད་པ་སྒྱི་ལོན་དན་དི་དག་དང་ལྱན་པ་ཞིག་ འམ་གོར་དགོས། As a bare minimum, the Lama must surely fit the following description. He must occupy himself more with the Dharma than with the things of the world. He must as well occupy himself more with the concerns of the future life, than with those of the present one. He must occupy himself more with helping others, than with helping himself. He is never careless in what he does, or says, or thinks. And, finally, he never leads his disciples along a path which is mistaken.

8 The Benefits and the Dangers

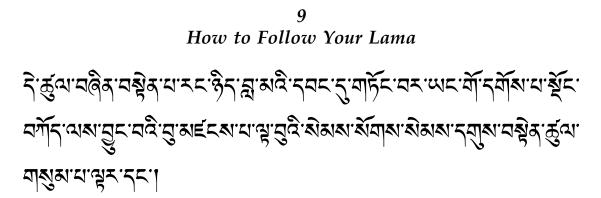


Suppose you are able to find a Lama like the one we have described above. What are the benefits you can expect from following him properly? Simply put, you will win each and every good thing in this and all your future lives. What are the dangers of refusing to follow him, or of following him less than properly? You will undergo a great mass of unendurable pain, in both the short term and the long. You must seek to grasp these facts fully.

Your Lama is like the source, he is like the very root, from which every single good quality of all the different levels and paths of both the open and secret teachings spring. If you ever succeed in stopping a single personal fault, it will be because of him. If you ever manage to cultivate a single spiritual quality, any good at all, that too will come from him. The whole range of virtues, from the final attainment of secret Union on down to having a single wholesome thought, all flow from him.

Your Lama is also the one and only "source" in the sense of being the embodiment or actuality of all the mighty deeds, all the great good, that all the victorious Buddhas perform in their holy actions, words, and thoughts. Try now to develop this root of the path—clear faith in him or her.

If with eyes made clear by this faith you begin to see your Lama as a real Buddha, then the blessing of a real Buddha will follow in your mind-stream. It's essential therefore that you train your mind in the relevant parts described in the texts on the Steps: the reasons why you should see that your Lama is a Buddha; the reasons why you can see that your Lama is a Buddha; how to see him, and so on.



What does it mean to "follow your Lama properly?" You must understand that it means to surrender yourself completely to him or her. Here you should take yourself to him in the way of an obedient child, and with the rest of the nine attitudes described in the *Arrangement of Trunks*.

To put it briefly, you must absolutely conduct yourself correctly in this regard; you must follow precisely every one of the classical descriptions of how to find and follow a Lama. If the cornerstone of a house—the walls of its foundation—are solid, then the house itself is solid. If the roots of a tree are planted firmly in the soil, then the branches and fruit and all the rest grow strong.

What we hope to grow is the path, in its entirety: all the Steps from recognizing the importance of the spiritual leisure and fortune of our present circumstances, on up to the attainment of secret Union itself. We must find sure and solid knowledge, we must see, that taking ourselves to our Lama properly will bring all of this about, without any difficulty at all.

The entire subject of how to follow your Lama in your thoughts is revealed in the words "first to see." Thus you must come to see your spiritual Friend as a real Buddha; and this brings us to how you should follow him in your actions.



How can we please our Lama? Relative to the path which is shared, you should use the instructions found in the discussions on how to find and follow a Lama in general. Relative to the way of the secret Word, use the instructions in the *Fifty Verses on Lamas*. Both of these describe how you should, to the very best of your ability, "with all your strength," gladly take up any difficult task in any of the three doors of expression—of body, speech, or mind—in order to please him or her.

There are different levels of how we pay homage to our Lama: to offer him or her gifts, material things; to give ourselves up to his service, his honor; and to take what he has taught us and put it into actual practice, accomplishing our spiritual goals. Each of these is higher than the one before it, and the last one is supreme.

The root text here then is saying that we must take ourselves to our Lama in a whole different number of ways, in keeping with our personal mental capacity.

And as you serve your Lama, remember. When a farmer goes to plant his seeds, whatever work he does in the field, he does for his own sake. It's not as if he is doing the field a favor. Here I am the same. It's me who hopes to

reach freedom from pain, and the state of knowing all things. To do so, I must take up certain things and give up others; but I am like a man who is blind—I am totally ignorant of which of these things are which.

My spiritual Friend is here to lead the blind; and in my service of him or her I am obliged to do anything required of me, no matter how exhausting, no matter how distasteful—so long as nothing morally wrong is involved.

And I am not to view this service as if I were laboring for someone else; on the contrary, I should not even see it as a burden, but rather as a reward: it is my great good fortune to have the opportunity. And so I must succeed in serving him or her in both my thoughts and actions, with the deepest feelings of reverence.

If our service of our Lama is good, then in all our future lives we will find ourselves taken under the care of Lamas. Then too we can count the life we have found now as the first in a long and unbroken series of lives in which we enjoy each of the eight spiritual leisures, and the ten fortunes. And there will never again be any mistake in this particular arithmetic: we will always enjoy the exact number of circumstances needed to follow our practice of the Dharma, and so finally reach the state of perfect enlightenment.

10 The Precious Life We Have

เมิงชิรารุรูญญิญารุระนับส์รา เญญามุสุญาญสุญาญรุรุเ

We do have all five of the spiritual fortunes that relate to one's self, as described in the following verse:

Born as a human, In a central land, And having one's faculties All complete; Not lost to the last of karma, And feeling faith for the place.

ਸ਼ૺઙ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૻૼઽૼਸ਼૽ૺૺ૾ૣૣ૽ૼઽૻૡૻઌ૽ૼઽૼૡૡ૾ૺૼ૾૾ૼૼૼૹૻ૾૾૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૻ૾ૹ૿૾ઌ૾૿ૡૻૻ૾૾ૻ૽૾ઌૢ૿ૡૻૻ૾૾ૼ૱ૡૢૻૹ૽૾ૢ૾ૼ૱ૡ૾ૺઽૻ

Here "born in a central land" refers to a land where there exists the "core of the Dharma," meaning that there are people in the country who keep the vows of the "four attendants to the Buddha." This refers to the full ordinations for a man and a woman, along with the novice ordinations for the same. The main component of the core is the fully ordained monk.

ณลามสวามาณ์ที่านาฐิริษัววริหามธ์มลามิราฏิเณลาสมทุลาณามาฐรลานา มิสานารุรา

"Not lost to the last of karma" means not having collected, and then failed to clear from oneself, the karma that comes from committing one of the "immediate," heinous bad deeds.

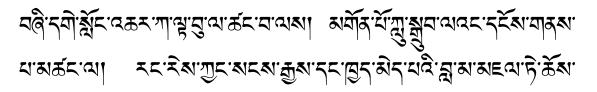
The *place* from where each and every white and good thing grows is the teaching on discipline; here the word "discipline" can by extension be applied to the entire contents of the canon—the three collections of scripture—since they all function to discipline one's mind. We do then possess the fortune of having faith in the holy books.

Let us examine though whether we have the five fortunes that relate to what is outside ourselves. The classic reference here is:

The Buddha is come, And taught the holy Dharma. The teaching remains, As do the ones who follow. There is compassion For the sake of others.

^ૹઽૹૻઃ૱ૢૢૹૻ૽૽ૣૼ૱ૢ૽ૺૻઌૡૢઌૻૻૹૻૻઌૡૢ૽ૺ૱ૻૻૻઽઽ૽ૻ૾૾ૻૹઽૹૻૻ૱ૹ૾ૻ૱૾ૻ૽૾ૹ૱ૹ૽ૼૹૻૻૹ૽૿ૹૻ สัสเฑลูรสเนา สรสเสูสเญรราณสเสเฉรสเนรเฉฎสเรูลิเภลูสเน สลุพานา ธิสาวพูลานาริพาวุฐพาวูาลุตาร์รัพาพูร์สวานราพฮ์ราสุพาสุรุณาฏา য়ঀঀয়য়য়ৼৼ৾ঀ৾য়ৼ৾য়ৼয়ৢ৽ঀয়য়ঀয়৽৽

Here the Buddha must have come and still be present in the world. He or his direct disciples must be teaching the Dharma. The resulting teachings must also remain, and this during the period before his final passing beyond all sorrow. Certain of his disciples must observe other disciples actually achieve the four results, after he has taught them; and these disciples must undertake to follow the same practices too.



$$angle variation and the second se$$

All four of the fortunes just explained have been possessed even by the likes of the monk Udayi, whereas the same cannot be said even for the Savior Nagarjuna, who lacked them in their literal form. We too have met our Lamas, who are no different from a Buddha, and they have spoken the Dharma and so on; these are a full substitute yes, but we cannot say that we have all those fortunes in their literal form. We do however enjoy all eight of the spiritual leisures; these then are our primary advantage, and it's with this fact in mind that the verse reads "life of leisure."

What does it mean when the reference says, "There is compassion for the sake of others?" The "others" here refers to ourselves; our sponsors and Lamas and other such persons act for our sake, motivated by compassion, to see that we are provided with all the conditions that will facilitate our practice of the Dharma: they give us food, or clothes, and other necessities; They teach us the Dharma; and so on. Therefore this phrase should be understood as describing the good fortune to have around us those who give us the things we need to practice.

 $\sum \sum \frac{1}{2} \sum$

People like you and I are forever committing non-virtuous deeds, and this is the single greatest obstacle to our reaching the state of spiritual leisure and fortune ever again. Beyond this are statements from the *Foundation Word on Vowed Morality*, and other texts, which describe how those born as animals are fewer than those born in one of the other births of misery; those born as humans are fewer than the animals; and even among humans those born in a country where the Buddha's teachings have spread are fewer still.

To be born in such a land, and then go on to actually encounter the Dharma with a mind and body so very special as the one which we now possess, is an occurrence which borders on the impossible. This shows how a life like ours is difficult to find by its very nature as well.

My body and the life in it Are fleeting as the bubbles In the sea froth of a wave. Bless me first thus to recall The death that will destroy me soon; And help me find sure knowledge That after I have died The things I've done, the white or black, And what these deeds will bring to me, Follow always close behind, As certain as my shadow.

Grant me then Ever to be careful, To stop the slightest Wrongs of many wrongs we do, And try to carry out instead Each and every good Of the many that we may.

And so we have attained this very special kind of life, with its spiritual leisure and fortune. But *my body and the life in it are fleeting*, forever changing, and every passing moment they move inexorably closer to my death.

But that's not all—there are conditions all around me that can strike and kill me in an instant: things like illness and harmful spirits, sudden disasters, attacks upon me by the very four elements that make up my own body. They stand around me ready to snatch away my life, like a pack of dogs circling around a piece of fresh meat, lusting after it.

ઽઽૻૡ૽૿ૡૢૹૡઽ૾ૺૡૢૡ૽ૡૢ૱ૡૡૡ૱ૢૻૢઌ૽ૢૢ૽ૼૡૹૻૹ૽ૼૹૼૹૡઽૹ૾ૹ૽૽ૡઽ૾ૹ૾ૹૡ૱૱૱ ૹૼૹૹ૽ૢ૿ૹઌૢૻઽૡૹ૾૾ૡૡ૾૾ઌૢ૽ૺૡ૱ૢૢૢ૽ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢ૱ૢૡૢૹૡૹૹ૽ૼૼઽૹૼૹૹૢૡ૽ૼઽૡૹ૾ૼૡૢૹૡૢઽ૾૾ૻ

Still more, my body is like a *bubble in the sea froth of a wave;* it has no power to resist even some very minor harm: we can see with our own two eyes that even the prick of a thorn can lead to a person's death.

In sum, my body and life are fragile; so *death will destroy me soon*.

12 Dragged to the Slaughterhouse

You are not long in this life Death comes quick; You step ever nearer to it With every moment that passes, Moving on like an animal Dragged to the slaughterhouse.

Your plans for today Your plans for tomorrow Will never all be filled; Let go all your thousand plans, Devote yourself to one.

You will be summoned into The awesome presence of Lord Death; The end is lying on your bed, The breathing stops, the life is gone.

And on this day, My Rinchen Drup, Nothing but the Dharma Is any help to you. 13 There is a Future Life

પત્ર·તૈયાશાયશા ગુદ્દ વેશાને શ્રાપુશા સું શેન્ પશા પોંદ ન વેશાનુ ક્રાયશા અને શે ญลาฏิลาสุราสลาธิ์ราพิสุ มาญลาลิมลาฐาลาฐิ์สาราลาลิ์สุเมาสราสิมาร์า ઇંચા વા વેંદા રા ચાર્ દેંદે ભુદા પ્રચાય અને અને ભુશા મુખ્ય

The master teacher of Bodong, whose name was Jikdrel Chokle Namgyal, has also said:

The existence of past and future lives can be understood as well through logical reasoning. If the human body could occur without any proper cause, then every existing object might just as well be stuffed full of human bodies. If the human body could occur without any involvement of previous consciousness, if it could come from physical matter alone, then every bit of dirt, every rock, every mountain and stream might just as well be stuffed full of human bodies. For those who deny that life goes on, hearing these lines is like being struck by a bolt of lightning.

14 Nothing Else Can Help Us Then

Since nothing else can help then, it is essential that we give up on life and be sure to devote ourselves to death, by practicing some pure form of the Dharma, as a way to assist our future self. It's not as if, *after* you and *I have died*, the stream of our mind just stops and we turn into nothing. Rather we have no choice but to take another birth. And there are no more than two places where we can take that birth: in the higher realms of happiness, or the lower realms of misery.

We have absolutely no control over which of the two places we go; we must follow where we are sent by the separate causes for each place, and these causes are *the things we've done, the white and black*, respectively.

Our mental streams contain very, very few of the causes that will take us to a higher birth; but we have a vast multitude of the causes that will lead us to one of the births of misery. Right now we are doing both white deeds, and black deeds: the good and the bad. At the moment of death, the power of one or the other will be activated, and force us over to our next birth. The seeds of the deeds which are more plentiful are the kind that are likely to be activated.

And after we cross over to our new birth, the fair or foul consequences of our virtue or our evil will *follow close behind*. These consequences can never go wrong; good must come from the good, and bad from the bad. They will attach themselves to my consciousness and pass on to wherever it goes, *as certain as my shadow*.

15 Have No Fear of Want

The most important thing is for us to follow the words of that King of the Dharma, Dromton Je:

We have little time to live, It's sure we'll not long be here. Let the world pass the time Working to feed themselves; Even the poorest know how.

Those who follow the rules of Dharma Need not worry, The knife of hunger Can never touch and kill them.

Leave this life behind; You can't work for the future life And for this one as well. The next is the more important one; Make effort in the Dharma.

He says as well,

Whether you fill your belly In this life well or not, Still you will live on.

What's difficult is To meet the Dharma In your future life;

For this life then Put all your efforts Only in the Dharma.

If now you cannot do your best To do what's virtuous, Be sure that in the life beyond You will feel only pain.

16 Learning to Want Freedom

าสาวานสามารัมสาสุขานสุขาวการ์เกา ાચેન્ગ્નિફ્ર સે રુ ન્યુ ને સેન્ય સે เชิง รมิญมาร์ ญลุม ยา เนลิ เาริ เาง เดิงเนลิ ผู้เขาสงิญาสงุรงเ

Bless me to perceive All that's wrong With the seemingly good things Of this life. I can never get enough of them. They cannot be trusted. They are the door To every pain I have. Grant me then To strive instead For the happiness of freedom.

17 Who Our Real Enemy Is

$$\begin{split} \hat{f}^{(W_{n})} & \tilde{g}^{(W_{n})} \tilde{g}^{(W_{n})}$$

That highest of Victors, the Great Fifth of the Dalai Lamas, has said as well,

What happened before?

Someone has been in my mind for time with no beginning.

When was that?

There's never been a moment when they were gone.

Who are they?

I live, and live again, the mental afflictions.

And in the end?

They will leave me to rot in the ocean of suffering life, without an end in sight.

And the karma?

It comes like the wind, with all the things I never wanted.

How far?

It whips around me everywhere, and stirs great waves, the three forms of suffering.

How long?

I could wander around this sea forever; the torch would spin, and the circle of light would blaze.

What should I see?

Think on this, and see that the afflictions of the mind are the one true enemy.

What must be done?

The enemy of living for this life must die.

Who shall do it?

You will have to pretend that you are warrior enough to be the one.

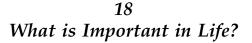
When will it come?

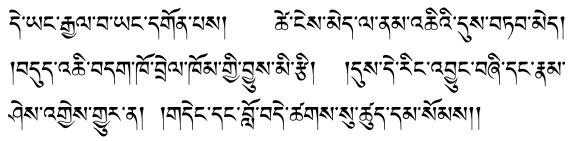
Your foes, the afflictions in your mind, have always been there waiting, ready for the battle.

Now then?

The time has surely come: go forth now and defeat them.

As the lines point out, there is one thing which acts as the very root of all our sufferings here in the circle of life. This is none other than the enemy of the mental afflictions, so dearly cherished by us, so close to our hearts.





Listen to these descriptions of suffering life, first from the lips of the Victor, Yang Gonpa:

You can't be sure you will live, Nor fix the time you die;

This monster, the Lord of Death, Has no interest To come at your convenience.

The four elements of your physical body And your mind Could go today their separate ways;

Think about it: Can you ever feel secure, Can you ever feel at peace?

He adds other lines including:

This devil, greed, Collected money

Ignoring all comfort And hardship to do so;

But we have no power To carry even A bit with us that day.

What's the use of money, That's never there When you need it?

Our friends and family Stayed with us Through thick and thin;

We won and kept them By fitting in, And maintaining our reputation.

But there's not one Who can take one step Along with us that day.

What's the use of family, friends, Who are never there When you need them?

With toil and sweat We built a great And wonderful house for ourselves;

To do it we obliterated Every rule Of what to do, or say, or think.

But what happens when Lord Death decides He'll not sleep in one morning?

What's the use of a house That's never there When you need it?

1757 ଶ୍ରିବ ଅଧିସାନ୍ଧ ଅଭିତ ବ୍ୟୁସାର ଅଭିତ କ୍ୟୁସାର ଅଭିତ ବ୍ୟୁସାର ଅଭିତ କ୍ୟ ଅକୃମ୍ବା

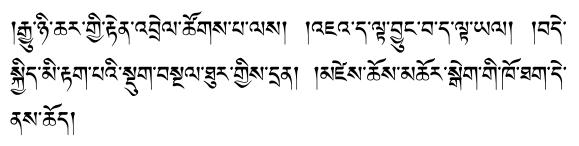
And then he says,

In the summer Great clouds crowd the sky,

And lightning comes, And lightning goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our life Downhill;

Dispense with the sense Of permanence, Of feeling prepared.



The rain brings it on, The fortuitous moment, When everything is just right,

And a rainbow comes, And a rainbow goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our happiness Downhill;

Dispense with Looking your best, And strutting around.

ા સું સુદર્ભ શે આપે છે. ત્રાપ્ત ના ગામ છે. તે છે. તે પ્રાપ્ત કે સુધાન છે. તે છે. તે પ્રાપ્ત છે

A sudden sound Brings it on,

And an echo comes, And an echo goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our fame Downhill; Dispense with The hope for greatness, The hope for a name.

They travel to the big city To sell their wares, And stop in some hotel,

The guest comes in the morning, The guest leaves in the eve

The suffering called impermanence Drags our friends Downhill;

Dispense with hoping To fit in with your friends And family.

१८नुरुः रुषः श्चरः અश्वाय्यः य्यय्यय्य्याश्वयः योग्धे । श्चरः कॅरः श्चें स्तुरुः लेयाय्य अर्थेदः र्ख त्रा । ३श्वः र्वे रः श्वेः हयाय्यदेः श्चुयाय्य्य्य्याश्चरः ग्चीश्वः द्वत्रा । ३श्वः र्वे रः योर्थयाय्दे यायीः विं ध्वयादे त्वश्वः र्वे द्या । उश्वः दृष्टा

In the summertime the bees Labor and build up Their hives,

But anyone can see How they are wiped out In an instant

The suffering called impermanence Drags our food and money Down the hill. Dispense with trying To gather together All this money and food.

19 Finding the Path to Freedom

শাদরুমা আবার্মা

Nowhere does it say Anything else but this: If you hope to develop

Insight, the training Of wisdom well, You must find quietude, That of concentration.

It says as well That if you wish to develop Pure single-pointed mind,

You must have the training Of morality; And this is fine advice.

าสมาณิสารมาณาสสารารนลาสาพิมา ารมาสองกลารการรัสาสานณาสลิง หณา เกาะที่พาชิงชีพาศพาณิสาฏพานาพิโ เส็ณาสิมพาศฐกาณาสรัฐสาน

าสารณิส์เญ

Some brave souls Claim they'll keep A lot of different vows,

But it's oh so common To see them smash Whatever pledges they've made.

The way of the holy Is to strive To maintain their morality pure,

Exactly as They have agreed To do so.

୲ୖ୵ୄଌଽ୶ୖ୬ଽ୕ଽ୶୶ୖୠ୶୲୳ୖୖଝୖୢଽ୕ଽ୲ୠୄ୕ଈ୲୴ୢୄୄ୲୴ଽୄଽଽୖୢଽଽ୕୶୲୳ଌୖୖୖୖୖୠ୲୲୳ଌୖ୶ୠ୶୲୳ୖୖଢ଼୶ ଽଽୄ୲ୢ୲ଽ୶ଽଽଽ୷୶୲ୖୖଢ଼ଽୖଽ୕୲ଈ୕୲ୖୖୢଈୣୣ୵ୖୄୢୗଢ଼୲ୢ୲ଊ୕୶୲୳ୡୖ୲୶୷ୢଽୄୄୠ୶୲୶୲୳ୡୖ ଽ୴ୖ୳ଽୖଌୖ୲ଽ୲୲୲ୡ୴ଽ୳ୡୢ୴ୡୢଽ୲୴ଽୢୖୠ୵୴ୖଽୖୖୖୖୖ୴୴ୖ୳ୡୖ୳ୠ୶୴ଢ଼ୖ୶ ୠଽ୲ୡୖଽୠୄୠୢୠୢଽ୴ୢୄଢ଼୶୲ୡ୲୲

Once you see The truth in this, Then use your watchfulness,

Constantly check Your thoughts, words and deeds To stop any wrong to come.

Recollect yourself, Take the greatest care, Have a sense of shame, And consideration;

Use them on The horse of the senses When he mistakes the way. Use your strength To rein him in, For this is the state of mind

That you can bring To focus and stay On any virtuous object

Solidly, Whatever you want, However you wish it to be;

And this is why They sing the praises Of morality as the way

To reach one-pointedness of mind.

20 Start with an Ethical Way of Life

મુભા મલે મશ્વ મલે માવન ભુદ શે જે ન માસુ આયો માં દેવ દેવ તે તે મુરુ આ સંસ્થા સુધાય છે. તે મુશ્વ મારે મુશ્વ મારે મુશ્વ મારે સુધાય છે. તે મુશ્વ મારે મુશ્વ મુ સા મુશ્વ મ સા મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુ સા મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મ સા મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુ સા મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્વ મુશ્ય મુશ્વ મુશ્ય

The essential points of the entire *teaching of the* victorious *Buddha*, the meaning of the contents of the three collections of the Word, all this is included within three precious, extraordinary forms of training: the trainings of morality, of meditative concentration, and wisdom. The crux on which the latter two trainings turn, their basis, *their root* and the ground they stand upon, is in the main a single item: morality, in the form of the various vows of freedom. As the great Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen has said,

It all begins When you think to yourself "It won't hurt much

If I break a few Of these minor vows In a minor way";

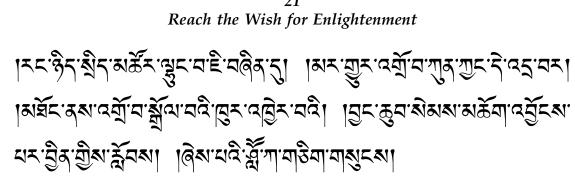
Before too long You have gone against A great many of your vows.

If you really think about it, This kind of attitude Is like a butcher

Who comes to Rip out the life Of your future higher birth.

ઙેશ ગાસુદશ મા છે મા છે. આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ આ છે. नदे के भारा नम्म मारा के सुना नस्र भारते न सुना मारा के न भारते न के कि के मारा के न भारते के मारा के के मारा क નર્સુન ને ત્વે ન ત્વે ન ત્વર્યો ત્વ ત્વર્યો ત્વરાયો ત્વર્યો ત્વર ત્વર્યો ત્વરાયો ત્વરા

The point here is that, if something so small as breaking a single minor vow can escalate so far, then needless to say when we amass a collection of even greater transgressions it's only proper that it would eventually lead us precisely to one of the three lower realms—to a kind of pain which is totally beyond our ability to withstand it.



21

I have slipped and fallen Into the sea Of this suffering life; Bless me to see That every living being, Every one my own mother, Has fallen in too. Grant me then To practice this highest Wish for enlightenment, To take on myself The task of freeing them all.

ริเพรารนจาฏิสาฏิพาดูพานจาพริเพพา ธูราสูสาพิพพาฏิเสพัราสมพาสรา เราณาสาณาริเสาสูสาพาพสิพาสา เสมาพศาจิาศมพาสิเสาสาราริรา เราสิเรา

नद्राःस्त्रैयाःसरः दर्यीर । ।

Now the Sutra that Viradatta Requested says,

Were the merit of the Wish for enlightenment To take on some kind of physical form It would fill the reaches of space itself And then spill over farther still.

The book called *The Bodhisattva's Life* too has lines like the following:

All the other Kinds of virtue Are like a bamboo tree;

They give their fruits And then they always Die and go away.

But the Wish For Buddhahood Is an evergreen that always

Gives forth its fruits, And instead of fading Flourishes even more.

> 22 Take and Keep the Bodhisattva Vows

โฟ้ฟฟาซ์ฟาวริฏิราฏราส์ญาโล้ฟฟาส์ฟาวฟุฟฟาฟไ ไม้ฟฟฟาวฟิราสาธรรสามา วรามากรา ไปมาฟาราพธ์ราสฟาส์ญาราฟารัพาราญ ไวร์สานาราวบัง สู้มากราวิสามิฟาร์ราฟ ได้ฟานวริส์เขาเปลิปาริไ

Bless me to see clearly That the Wish itself Is not enough, For if I'm not well trained In the three moralities, I cannot become a Buddha. Grant me then A fierce resolve To master the vows For children of the Victors.

Suppose you are able, as described above, to reach *the Wish* for enlightenment, where you truly hope to achieve the state of a Buddha in order to help every living being. This *itself is not enough*. Once you do reach the Wish, you must still take on the vows of these bodhisattva princes and princesses, these sons

and daughters of the victorious Buddhas. And then you must train yourself in giving and the other five perfections. Otherwise there is no way you could ever come to enlightenment.

> 23 Reach Perfect Meditation, on Emptiness

Grant that I may quickly gain The path where quietude And insight join together; One which quiets My mind from being Distracted to wrong objects, The other which analyzes The perfect meaning In the correct way.

દે આ પ્રાયત્ર આ આ પ્રાયત્ર આ પ્રાયત્ય આ

The verse here speaks of objects which are "wrong"; this should be understood as referring to objects which are mistaken, in a particular sense. One example would be trying to develop meditative concentration by fixing the mind on a short stick of wood, as some non-Buddhists advocate. We must seek to "quiet" the mind—that is, stop the mind—from being distracted to these types of wrong, external objects.

There are Tibetan schools of the past too which have taught that meditative quietude consisted of not thinking about anything at all, just keeping the mind in some dark state of dullness. The high state of perfect insight then they explain as moving in this stupor to a realization of the pure and simple emptiness of the deceptive nature of the mind—except they describe this emptiness as what you come to when you analyze whether or not what we call the "mind" consists of any shape or color, and then fail to find that it's any such thing.

But none of these ideas is correct; rather, we must follow texts such as the briefer and more expanded explanations of the Steps to the path composed by the Lord himself, where he presents the instructions given by the Great Regent, Loving One, in his own work entitled *Separating the Middle and the Extremes*.

These treatises describe how one progresses in steps by eliminating the five problems to meditation, taking the eight corrective actions, and achieving the nine mental states, complete with their four different modes.

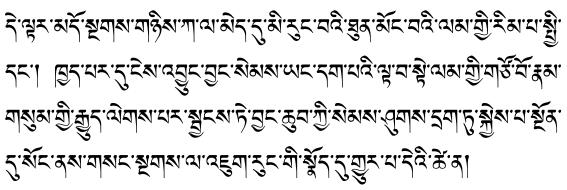
One thus attains a kind of bliss, a total pliancy of body and mind, which comes from staying in one-pointed meditation on any virtuous object one chooses. This then leads to what we call meditative *quietude*.

The phrase "*perfect meaning*" here in the verse refers to a particular object: the fact that nothing has any nature of its own. A kind of wisdom used for examining the nature of something *analyzes* this object *in* a certain *correct way*, and by the end of its analysis comes to a definite conclusion. The mind stays in meditation upon this truth, such that the analysis and a fixation on this object *join* and work *together*. This brings on a feeling of bliss that fills the mind completely—and one has thus achieved what we call "perfect *insight*."

We seek to practice this process, where quietude and insight are no longer separated one from the other. When we recite the verse we are asking our Lama to *grant that*, as a result, *we may quickly gain* within our minds that exceptional form of realization where meditative quietude and perfect insight join together.

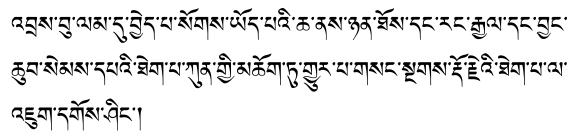
> 24 Enter the Secret Way

Grant that once I've practiced well The paths shared and become A vessel that is worthy, I enter with perfect ease The Way of the Diamond, Highest of all ways, Holiest door to come inside For the fortunate and the good.



You must first have *practiced well* the general Steps of *the path* which are *"shared"* by both the open and the secret teachings; that is, which are so important for both that you could never succeed without them. More specifically, you must have trained your mind well in the three principal paths: renunciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and the correct view of reality. On top of this you must have as your motivation a very fierce desire to reach enlightenment for the sake of every living being. These then make you a *vessel that is worthy to enter* the Way of the Secret Word.

25 The Way of the Diamond



When this time has come you must surely enter the "Way of the Diamond"; which is to say, this Way of the Secret Word. It is the *highest of all* the "different *ways*"—the ways of the listeners, the self-made Buddhas, and the bodhisattvas. What makes the Diamond Way higher is that is has certain unique features, such as using the goal of practice as a path to the goal.

The Tibetan word for "diamond" here is *dorje*. This is a translation of the Sanskrit word *vajra*—a term that has the basic meaning of "inseparable." The "diamond" here is the actual diamond of the holy mind of the Buddha; that deep state of meditation which can only be compared to a diamond. You can also say it refers to that one type of wisdom which is the inseparable combination of what we call "method" (great bliss) and "wisdom" (emptiness).

ष्ठेयायलेकायपर्वत्ययेक्षेत्रभ्ये हेन्द्रे हे दे हे स्वायत्व कायवत्तरे हे हि प्रवित्य के प्रायत्य के प्रायक्य के प्रायत्य के प्रायत् प्रायत्य याय के प्रायत्य के प

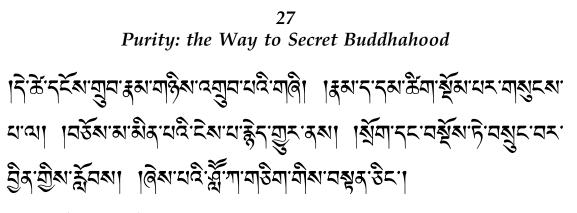
The word for "way" here has a meaning of "conveyance"—something you get on and ride to reach a destination. The "diamond way" mentioned here is thus a kind of "diamond conveyance" as well. In the way of the perfections, one must carry on his practice for three "countless" eons in order to reach Buddhahood. This takes so long that it's almost as if you were walking on foot, rather than travelling on any sort of conveyance.

If though you use the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word, no such length of time is needed: you can attain the state of secret Buddhahood, Union, in the length of but one lifetime—even in one of the very short kinds of life that we have here now, in the age of degeneration. In fact it's possible to reach Buddhahood in no more than three years and three months. This way then is a method which is incredibly deep and quick; more like riding a fine racehorse.

26 The Holiest Door

What is the *"holiest"* (meaning highest) *door*, or gateway, for bodhisattvas for these people who are so *fortunate and good—to come inside* this path? It is receiving the four empowerments of the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word, and receiving them perfectly, so that they are sure to plant the seeds for the four bodies of a Buddha.

What we are requesting in this verse then, said our Lama, is that our Lama grant us the ability to enter, *with perfect ease*, the profound path just described: the Way of the Diamond, the unsurpassed form of the Secret Word.



Bless me to know With genuine certainty That when I've entered thus, The cause that gives me Both the attainments Is keeping my pledges And vows most pure. Grant me then To always keep them Even if it costs my life.

Now suppose *you have entered thus*—you have made yourself a vessel which is worthy of the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word; and you have received, in the proper manner, the four different empowerments. If you then follow the correct method you can gain *both the attainments*: the one we call the "ultimate," and the one we describe as "shared."

The ultimate attainment is reaching secret Union, where there is nothing more to be learned. This is the state of the Victorious One, the Keeper of the Diamond.

The shared attainments are those such as the "eight great attainments." These include the special powers known as the sword, the eye ointment, swift feet, the pill, passing underground, disappearing, taking essence, and sky walking.

"ร์รัญญี่นรุญนาสุขามายอิญายารณญาลี่นายรูปมายรูปมายรูปมายรูปมายรูปมาย รูญญายารณาสรรณายร์เมายารากกลายมายระบายระบาย สุขายรารณายรายที่รายของกลาย

What then is it that can *give* you these attainments? Their *cause* or foundation, the very support that holds them all up, is one thing, and only one: to *keep most pure* every one of the root and secondary *pledges and vows* which you took upon yourself when you were granted the empowerments.

The immense power of the purity of your pledges and vows will lead you over the string of your future lives to attain a very special kind of life, where you can practice the secret teachings. You will always meet an authentic Diamond Master—one who teaches you the secret way. And you will always find yourself able to put the secret paths into actual practice.



As such you will, without a doubt, be able to reach total enlightenment within seven lifetimes, or in sixteen at the very most. On this our Teacher, the Keeper of the Diamond, has spoken the following in the *Tantra of the Treasure of Secrets*:

୲ઽ૱ઽૻઌૹ૾ૢૣૣૣૣૻૣૣૻૢૻૢૻઌૻૡૻઽૻઽૼૹૻૻૢ૾ૢ૾ૢૢૺૹૻૻઌૻઌૻૻ૱ૻૻ૱ૻૻૡૼ૱ૻૣૻ૱ૻૡૼ૱ૻૣૻ૱ૻૻૡૼ૱ૻૣૻ૱ૻ 15 พิฆาฐิาวาวกุญาณาสิบ เมาวรัฐมฆานราพการกัญญารัฐบ

If the person is granted A pure empowerment,

Then life after life Will the power be given.

Within seven lives The goal is reached,

Even if the person Does not meditate. ୲ୖ୵୲୶ଈୄୢୄୢୄୄୠୄ୵ୢୖୄଌୖୖୖ୵ୄୄୖୄୡଽୖ୳ୖଽୖଽ୶୲୩ୄୖୠଈୄୖୄୗ୲୲୲୩୶୵ୄଽ୶୶ଈୖୖୄୖଽ୲୳ଵୖ୶ୖୄୢୖୄ୕ଽ୕୩ଈ୲୶ଈ୲୳ୢୖୄୖୢଽ୶ ୳ୖ୴ଈୄ୲୲ଞୢ୶୲୳ଵୖୄୖ୕ୖ୶ୢଽ୶୲୶ୢୖୠଽ୕୵୴ଌୖ୕୕୕୕୕୩୲୕ୖୖ୴୶ୖ୴ୖୖ୶ୖ୴୴ୡୢଽୖ ୳ଵୖ୶ୄୢଈୣୣୣୣୄୣୣୣୣୣୄୠୄ୷ୄୢୖୠୄୄୢୖୠୄୠୄଈୄୖୢଽ୷୶୲୲୲ଵୖୄଈ୲୳୳ୖୡୄୢୖୖୡ୕୕ୄ୕୩୲୩୲ୠୖୠ୲ୢୖଌ୲

Bless me next To realize precisely The crucial points Of both the stages, The essence of The secret ways. Grant me then To practice as The Holy One has spoken, Putting all my effort in And never leaving off The Practice of the Four Times, Highest that there is.

$$\begin{split} \widehat{f}^{*}_{*} \widehat{f}^{*}_{*}$$

One may wonder, "Suppose I am able to maintain my vows and pledges; what must I do after that?" The highest of Victors, Kelsang Gyatso, has spoken the following:

The point May be birth or death or the state between them.

The time Most important for planting their seeds is now.

²⁸ The Essence of Secret Practice

The way

To transform them is the practice of creation and completion.

The refuge

You must learn is the three final bodies themselves.

What's being said here is that, first of all, you must continue to keep each and every one of the secret vows and pledges, as explained above. Then you must practice the very *essence* of the great sea *of the secret ways*. Here first is the stage of creation, which is exemplified by a number of methods.

We tend to see things in an ordinary way, we take them to be no more than what they seem to us; we tend to grasp this way to the place where we live, to our own body, to the things we own and use, and to things like the parts that make up us, and the world: what we call the "heaps," the "categories," and the "doors of sense." We have also always had to undergo an ordinary birth, ordinary death, and ordinary passage between death and birth.

In the stage of creation we transform all these seemingly ordinary things and events; we turn them into the three bodies of a victorious Buddha. We take whatever presents itself to us: all that appears to our eyes, all that reaches our ears, and all that comes in our thoughts, and we make it show itself as total and absolute purity, as a galaxy of perfection, as great celestial mansions, as holy angels, as a magical dance put on by our Lamas.

As for the stage of completion, some mistakenly equate it with concentrating solely on a meditation that involves the various channels and winds, and which results in achieving a rather ordinary kind of inner heat. Others make the error of thinking it is some high spiritual path when you succeed in nothing more than perceiving how the essence of the mind is that it is aware and knowing.

The real stage of completion though is not like this; rather, you take the various winds which course through the body because of one's ordinary conceptual thinking, and redirect them all into the central channel—in a three-fold process of entrance, residence, and absorption. As a result a primal state of mind arises, the clear light, the wisdom which is simultaneous. And the power of this wisdom makes all of existence appear as the play of bliss and emptiness.

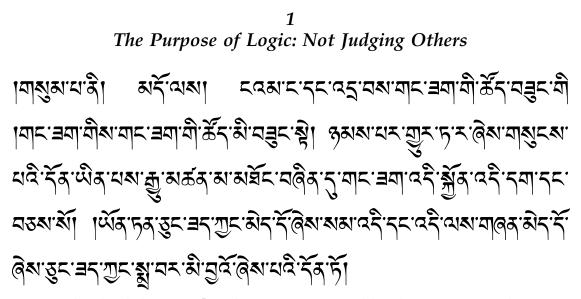
$$\cdots \widetilde{\mathcal{M}}_{\mathcal{A}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}}_{\mathcal{A}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}}_{\mathcal{A}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}} \widetilde{\mathcal{M}}$$

In the path of the stage of completion then we meditate over and over on this and related practices, until finally we are able to bring about the Union of the holy body and holy mind: we reach the state of the Lord of the Secret World, the Keeper of the Diamond.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Seven: The Proof of Future Lives, Part One

The following selection on the proof of future lives is excerpted from Light for the Path to Freedom (Thar-lam gsal-byed, ACIP electronic text S5450), written by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432), an eminent disciple of the great Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The text is an explanation of the Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika, ACIP text T4210), composed by Master Dharmakirti in about 650 AD.



Here is the third division, [on the purpose served by the reasoning where one proves the non-existence of something which does not appear]. A sutra states the following:

I or someone like myself can judge a person, but no normal person should judge another, for he will fall.

This statement itself expresses the purpose of the reasoning. What the Buddha is saying here is that:

Without being able to see the real condition, you should never say anything even close to "This person has such and such faults. This person hasn't the least good quality"—or "He or she has some good qualities, but nothing more than that."

We never know who might be a holy being, and every open and secret scripture there is says that the very finest way to end up in an unbearable birth within the realms of misery is to speak badly about a holy being. Every person who has any intelligence should therefore act with extreme caution in this regard; treat such matters as though you were walking on the edge of a great pit of glowing embers, innocently covered with powder of ash.

The implication suggested by the sutra above, and by the great treatises which comment upon it, is that we must try to keep an attitude of wanting to help all living creatures, of wanting to assure their happiness. So try to remain in that pure vision where you see only pure good in other people. If you are not capable of this, then at least it would be nice if you could try to speak badly of others a little less than you do now.

2 A Bit on the History of Buddhist Logic

The next selection is from the English introduction to the Jewel of the True Thought (*Tsad-ma dgongs-rgyan*, ACIP text S0023), a modern commentary on valid perception by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk, an eminent scholar from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

Subject of the Work

The study of valid perception is of vital importance in Buddhist philosophy, for it is this perception which allows us to determine the real nature of the world around us and thereby escape pain, whether it be in the form of a mild headache, or anxiety, or any undesirable object at all, on up to death itself.

This real nature of the world must be perceived not only with our direct physical and mental senses, but by indirect methods such as reasoning, which allows our minds to see important concepts such as the benefit of being moral. Therefore the study of perception is tied to the study of reasoning, or logic—and these form the core of the subject matter of the *Commentary on Valid Perception*, the classical text which this book explains.

The Commentarial Tradition

The *Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramāņavārttika,* or *Tsad-ma rnam-'grel)* is a work in four chapters by the Indian Buddhist master, Dharmakīrti. As with many early Buddhist sages, we know little of his life or even the dates that he lived; Western scholars place him at around 630 AD, although even this is uncertain. The "valid perception" in the title of his masterwork refers to another treatise, the *Compendium on Valid Perception (Pramāņasamuccaya,* or *Tsadma kun-btus)*, and Master Dharmakīrti's text is actually a defense of this piece.

The *Compendium* was itself composed by Master Dignāga, who is considered the father of the Buddhist logic traditions and is dated by Western scholars at around 440 AD, although again there is considerable uncertainty, and according to tradition he was a direct teacher of Master Īśvarasena, who is said to have been the direct teacher of Master Dharmakīrti.

The philosopher Dignāga was for his part commenting upon the concepts of perception and logic presented in the teachings of Śākyamuni Buddha, who lived 500 BC. And so the lineage goes from the Buddha, to Master Dignāga, to Master Dharmakīrti, and then on to the early Indian explanations of Master Dharmakīrti, including his own autocommentary.

Looking backwards from our present time, it is typical for a modern Tibetan commentator of the Gelukpa tradition to base his work on one of the monastic textbooks, typically written in the 17th or 18th century for the curriculum of a specific monastic college. These textbooks are themselves based on a preceding generation of commentaries composed in the 15th century by Tsongkapa the Great (1357-1419) or by one of the scholars of his immediate school.

Here two important works are the *Jewel of Reasoning (Tsad-ma rigs-rgyan)* of the First Dalai Lama, Gyalwa Gendun Drup (1391-1474), and *Light on the Path to Freedom (Thar-lam gsal-byed)* by Gyaltsab Je (1362-1432), who was the great first regent of Je Tsongkapa's school. These texts are based on the Indian commentaries to Master Dharmakīrti's work, and thus the entire commentarial tradition stretches through 25 centuries, from Śākyamuni Buddha up to the great Tibetan philosophical masters of our own time.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

3 A Chart on the Levels of Reality

The following chart was compiled from various Tibetan sources by Geshe Michael Roach.

Deductive valid perception		Those deeply hidden object	
based on belief		which can be established	
		only by authorative	
	good reason based on belief.	scripture.	morality leads to
			happiness." They are
			unerring about what they
			teach, because they are
			scripture which has been
			confirmed with the three different tests.
			different tests.
Deductive valid perception	That unerring, fresh	Those objects which are	Consider the "portrait of the
based on convention		decided on nothing more	
	a hidden object by using a	than whether we choose	moon, because it's
	good reason based on		something you can think
	convention,		up.

A Chart on the Levels of Reality (English version)

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

ঊিন-ক্রিম-ইঝ-ন্মন্ম	พิราธิสามฉิรุญาณาาริสาสสา	૾૾ૡ૾૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૢૻૡૢૻૡૻૻૡૢૻૢૢૢૢૢૢૻૢૢૢૢૻૡૻૡૢૡૻૡૢૡૻૡ૽	ૹ૾ૢૢ૾ૣૣૢૣૣૣૣૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ
	ઽઽઃઽ૾૾ૻ૾ૻૡૡૡૻૻ૽૱ૻૢૺૡૻૼૡૻૻ૱ૻૣૻૡૻ	ম্রীশ্বন্থা	ગ્રીચ'વરી લેચ'ર્ચેવચગ્રી'ભુદ'
	মাম্ম-স্-মি-সন্ধ্র্যু-সর্ব-বিম-মা		ર્કેશ હતા મન વી સ્ટેસ છે.
			ર્નેન વાસે સુવાયે તેનું ના
			ય'ગસુસ'શીસ'નગ'યવે'ભુદ'
			ધ્યેત્ર પવે સુૈમ
ন্যনাঝান্দরে:ইঝান্দনা	ন্যনাঝান্দরি:দ্রনাঝান্দেন্দেনান্মা	৫র্নি-মে:র্কর্ম:শ্রীর্ম:নন্ত্রনা-মা	રે ર્વેદ અને કેશ અને કરાવા ગ્ન
	नहेव वर्ष रूट मी मलय मु सेंग		<u>ૣ</u> ઞ:લેશ્વ:સુશ્વ:વર્દેન્:સુદ:વ:પોક્:
	त्युरायायाबर,री.पर्झी.यपु.		<u>કે</u> કેંગ સુવાય તે ખેત મહેરા
	AN-21		

A Chart on the Levels of Reality (Tibetan version)

4 Master Dignaga's Opening Statement

For the next selection we return to Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk's Jewel of the True Thought.

This chapter begins from the second major point of the outline to the entire work; this is the explanation of what it is we seek to perceive: freedom and the state of all-knowing, and the path that will take us there. Here there are two divisions—the main subject, and certain secondary subjects.

$$| \sum \hat{X} = \hat{$$

There are three parts to the main subject; these are showing what it was that Master Dignaga stated, describing how the author of the *Commentary* explained what he stated, and demonstrating the true intent of each.

Here is the first. The following is the classical statement by Master Dignaga:

I bow down to the One who turned correct, Who helps all beings, the Teacher, The one who went to bliss, And our Protector. And now out of love For those mistaken in their logic I shall explain the right way To establish correct perception.

শঙ্গপ্র.শ.

As elucidated in the *Light on the Path to Freedom*, these lines present the offering of praise and the pledge to compose the work. . .

5 Proving that the Buddhas are Totally Correct

We read again from the Jewel of the True Thought:

Proving that the Able One is totally correct has two parts. The first is to show what path it was that He came by; this involves the forward order. The second is to show the evidence to establish that he did come this way; this involves the reverse order.

$$| \nabla \nabla \hat{\mathcal{A}}_{i} \otimes \mathcal{A}_{i} \otimes$$

The first of these has three parts of its own. The first is identifying a typical example of a person who is totally correct, by explaining the meaning of the words "Who turned correct." The second is to identify the definition of a person who is totally correct, which is done by explaining the remaining four elements of the statement. And the third is to identify the path by which one travels to this state.

The first of these has as well two sections. The first is the definition of correct perception in general. The second is a demonstration that this definition does moreover apply to the Able One. Our discussion of the definition itself will proceed in two steps: the essence of the definition, and a detail of the definition.

The essence of the definition is itself divided into the definition, a typical example, and establishing that the definition applies to this example. For the definition we will first have to identify what it means to be "unerring," then refute that it might not be comprehensive, and finally refute that it could be too comprehensive.

The identification of what it means to be "unerring" is found in two and a half lines of the root text:

Correct perception is a state of mind unerring; To be in a condition able to perform a function Is what "unerring" means.

The thing that correct perception undertakes to perceive is the existence of and the means for a person to attain a birth in the higher realms, as well as definite good. The Able One is the one being who is unerring with regard to all of these things; and so, if you should wonder how correct perception is defined, we can state that "a fresh **state of mind which is unerring**" is the definition of correct perception.

And what is the meaning of "unerring"? Suppose you perceive something as being **able to perform the function** of cooking or burning something else. Your perception is "unerring" when this thing does actually exist in the **condition** you have perceived it to be.

6 Details of Correct or Valid Perception

The next selection again comes from Jewel of the True Thought:

. . .Here secondly is a detail of the definition, which is indicated in six lines from the root text:

It must also illuminate something not perceived. Subsequent to perceiving the thing in its very essence, You have a more general type of experience. It's because the intent when they mention a perception Is one that has not perceived a definitive object. Because it discerns its own definitive object.

ૡૺૹૻૹૻ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૻૻૢઙૣ૾ૢૣૣૹૻૻૹ૽ૼૼૼઽૼૢૻ૱ૡઽૻૻૡ૾ૺૻૹ૾ૺૹૣૻૢ૱ૻૹૼૹૻૹ૽૾ૢ૾ૹૻ૾ૹૼૼૻૻૹૡ૾૾ૼૹૻ૾ૹ૾૾ૼ૱ૡ૾૽ૺઽૻૻૼૼૡૼ૱ૻૹૻ ૹ૽ૺૡ૾ૺૼૹૻૹ૽૾ઌૢ૾ૺૺૺ૾ૺૺૺ૾ૣૻૹૻ૾ૺૡૺૹૻૻૻૡ૽ૡૺૼૺ૽ૼૡ૾ૺૼ૱ૹ૽૿ૢૺૺૼૹૻઌૺૡ૽ૻૡૺૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૡૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૡ ઌૢૻઽૻ૱ૹૼ૱ૡ૾ૢૺઽઌ૽૿ૢૺ૱ઽૢૼૹૣ૽ૢૺૼૹઽઌ૽ૼૼૹૻૡૡ૽૿ૡ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢ૾ૺઽૢૻ૾ૺૼ૾ૡ૽ૺૡ૽ૡ૽ ૡ૱ઌૡ૾ૺૻૹૡૼ૱ૡ૾ૢ૾ઽઌ૾ૻ૱ૡૼ

What this is saying is that the requirement described above, that a perception be "unerring," is not by itself enough to complete the entire definition of correct perception. This is because the perception **must** be one which **illuminates something** that was **not perceived** previously; and so we must **also** mention at some point in the definition that the object is known "for the first time," or "freshly." As such, the standard definition for correct perception is "a fresh and unerring perception."

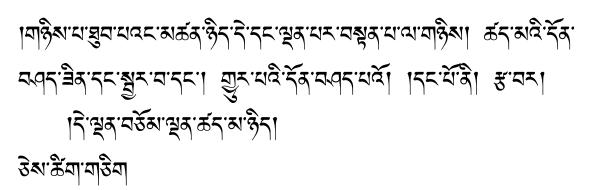
 $|\hat{f}_{q}, \eta \otimes n, \hat{f}_{q}, \eta \otimes n, \hat{f}_{q}, \hat{f}_{q}$

Someone might make the following objection. "Suppose we allow you to define correct perception as a fresh illumination of an object. Consider then a recollection in which you perceive the color blue. According to you, wouldn't this have to be a correct perception? Because isn't it a state of mind which realizes its object and is fresh? And it is just that, for it is a state of mind which is a fresh perception of the mental image of the color blue."

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

Yet there is no such problem. What happens is that the state of mind which grasps the color blue directly **perceives** that **very essence** of blueness which is unique to it. **Subsequent to** this perception **you have a more general experience**, where your mind grasps to a mental image of the color blue. This latter state of mind though does not have the ability to discern the object on its own power alone. If something is correct perception, it must be a fresh perception of a **definitive object** that it **has not perceived** before, or else must be directly dependent upon such a perception. Incidentally, you should understand the phrase "definitive object" here as referring to an object as it exists in its own essence.

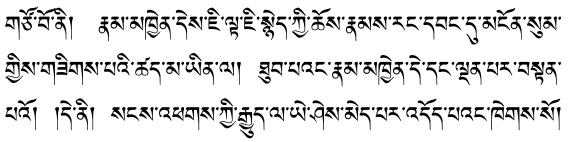
7 Showing that the Buddha Has the Qualities of Correct Perception



Here secondly we show that the qualities of correct perception are as well possessed by the victorious Buddha. We proceed in two steps: bridging this explanation to the meaning of correct perception already presented, and explaining the meaning of the words "who turned." The first of the two is conveyed in the root text with the line,

The one who has it is the Victorious One; Perfectly correct itself.

Consider the **Victorious One**, the able Buddha. He is **perfectly correct** towards each and every existing object, for He is **the one who has "it":** that is, who has a fresh and unerring perception of all these objects, and who is that **itself**.



The main point here is to show that omniscience is a correct perception which sees directly, and on its own power, each and every existing object: the nature of all things, and the totality of all things. And the Buddha is as well a being who possesses this omniscience. Incidentally, this fact also disproves the belief that realized persons who are Buddhas do not possess the mental function of wisdom.

At this juncture, *Light on the Path to Freedom* and a number of monastic textbooks present the following argument. The wording of the root text implies that there exists some object which is not seen by the first moment of omniscience, but which is seen fresh by the second moment of omniscience. Suppose that one therefore accepts such an object. Consider this object. Isn't

it true that it *must be* seen by the first moment of omniscience? Because isn't it something that is? And isn't this necessarily so, since the first moment of omniscience is a kind of wisdom which perceives, directly, each and every existing object? And isn't this so, since it is omniscience? And suppose you say that just because something is omniscience doesn't mean it perceives directly each and every object. What then about the quotation [from the *Jewel of Realizations* by Master Asanga] which states, "It is the path which is the one knowledge of each and every kind of object"?

Suppose now you disagree to our original statement, [where we said that the object is something which is.] Consider again this object [which is supposedly not seen by the first moment of omniscience but is seen by the second moment]. It *is* true that it is, for it is an object which is perceived fresh by omniscience of the second moment. If you say it is not, then you contradict your own position.

 اភភភភិជ៌ឃើញ សេរ៍ឆ្នាំ ភិញាលសា្រ អ្វីញសារ និត្ត អ្វីញសាយជាភិភិញាយា្រ ភេទភ្លៀសារប្រាំ

 សង្កតា ទីភ្លុំ ភិញាយា្រ ហើញ សារាឲ្យ អ្នីសាសា អ្វីញសារនិត្ត អ្វីញសាយជាភិភេត អាតាម្លារប្រាំ

 សង្កតា ទីភ្លុំ ភិញាយា្រ ហើញ សារាឲ្យ អ្នីសាសារ អ្វីញសារនិត្ត អ្វីញសាយជាភិភេត អាតាម្លាប់

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ ភិញាសារតាមសារ អ្វីញាសារនិត្ត អ្វីញាសាយារដ្ឋ ភ្លេសារប្រាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ ភិញាសារ អាតាមសារ អ្វីញាសារតាមសារ អ្វីញាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ ភិញាសារបាទតេ ភិញាសារ អាតាមសារ អ្វីញាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ ភិញាសារបាទតេ ភិញាសារបាទតេ អាតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភិញាសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភេទសារៀសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាយា្រ ភិញាសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញាសារតាម្លាំ

 ភិញា ភាព្រំសារកាម្លាំ

 ភិញា ភាព្រំសារបាទេ

 ភិញា ភាព្រំសារបាទេ

 ភិញា ភាព្រំសារបាទេ

 ភិញា ភាព្រំសារបាទេ

 ភិញា ភាពស្រាំ

 ភិញា ភាពស្រាភាព ភ្លោក ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាព ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសារបាទេ

 ភាពសា

Our own textbooks, in the section on the study of the mind, define recollection as "A state of mind where you perceive what you have already perceived before." The textbooks of certain other monasteries say that the definition of recollection is "A state of mind which is not correct perception, and where you perceive what you have already perceived before." *Light on the Path to Freedom* says,

No matter how much we look within ourselves and think it over, we cannot detect any case where omniscience could be anything other than correct perception, or where there could be any case of correct perception that were not a fresh perception. If you consider this quotation carefully, you can see that it is stating that the second and following moments of omniscience are fresh perceptions towards their objects.

If the first moment of omniscience does not see the past, present, and future all at once, then there could be no wisdom which sees all these three times at once. If it does see these three, then it would have to see all objects which are going to occur in the future. As such there could be no object which the second and following moments perceived which had not already been perceived before, or which the first moment had not perceived. Therefore our own position is that the group of things which are discerned by the first moment of omniscience and the group of things which are discerned by the second moment of omniscience are completely identical.

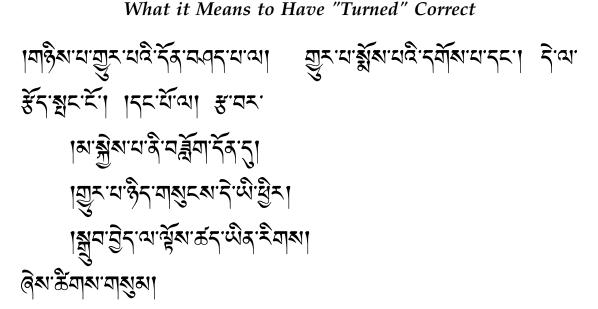
One may then make the following objection:

If that's the case, then let's consider the second moment of omniscience. Isn't it then a state of mind which perceives something which it has already perceived before? Because isn't the only thing it perceives then exactly the same thing which has already been perceived by the first moment of omniscience?

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

Our answer is that it doesn't necessarily follow. Although it is true that the second moment of omniscience does perceive what it does in the way described, it does not engage in its object by force of the first moment of omniscience, but rather perceives its object on its own power.

8

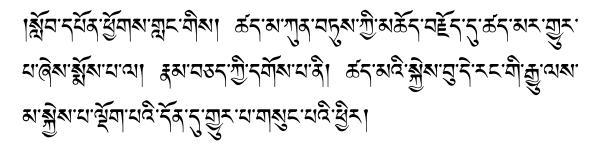


Here secondly is our explanation of the meaning of the words "who turned." First we will describe the necessity for mentioning "who turned," and then after that discuss some objections to this description. The first point here is covered in the following three lines of the root text:

The phrase that goes "who turned" Is spoken in the sense

Of the opposite of something Which wasn't ever developed.

This as well is why it's right That correctness depends on achieving.



There are two reason why Master Dignaga, in the verse of the offering of praise at the beginning of his work, the *Compendium on Correct Perception*, mentions the phrase **"who turned."** The first purpose for these words is the kind that is meant to exclude something. Here they **are spoken in the sense of the opposite:** they are meant to indicate that a person who is totally correct could never be something that **didn't ever develop** from its proper cause.

The second purpose for these words is the kind that is meant to imply something. Here the point we are supposed to grasp is that one develops into a person of total **correctness** only by **depending** on reaching the final perfection of a gradual practice of all the various methods used for **achieving** this state.

9 Disproving Wrong Ideas on the Nature of Omniscience

Here secondly is our refutation of arguments against our position. We will proceed in two steps: disproving the idea that someone who created every knowable thing could be an omniscient being, and proving that someone who could perceive directly the actual way in which each and every knowable thing exists is an omniscient being.

The first of these two has two steps itself: disproving the very nature of some Lord of Power who created every knowable thing, and disproving the attempted proofs for his existence.

10 Disproving the Idea of a Creator

The first of these has two parts: disproving a Lord of Power who is unchanging, and disproving one who is changing.

Disproving a Lord of Power who is unchanging is presented in the following seven lines of the root text by Master Dharmakirti:

A correct perception which exists as unchanging could never be;

This is because it's a correct perception towards something that's a working thing.

And since the thing it knows is something which is changing, Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

It too can only be something which has no stability.

It's true as well since things that arise in stages gradually

Could never be something that arises from a thing that is unchanging,

And neither could they properly be things which must depend.

Some other groups say that there is a being who created every existing thing: the Lord of Power, who is unchanging. He, they say, is a being who is totally correct, and who just came that way from the beginning. Now since these groups assert that this powerful deity is a being with correct perception towards every existing thing, they must agree that he has **correct perception towards** objects of his mind **which are working things**.

Suppose he did have such a perception. This **correct perception—which exists as** something **unchanging—could never be**, because it perceives an object of the mind which is changing. This is always the case, for if **the thing it knows**—the object of the mind—**is something which is changing**, then **it too** (the correct perception which engages in this object) **can only be something which has no stability**.

Now suppose you say that this Lord of Power is himself unchanging. Since you agree that the mind of this Lord is changing, you must agree that his mind arises. And yet this mind **could never arise from** a Lord of Power who was **unchanging**, because it **arises in stages**, **gradually**. **Neither could** the mind arise through dependence on certain conditions, for nothing which is unchanging can **properly be a thing which must depend** on something else.

The Great Commentary, *Ocean of Reasoning*, presents some additional points here. It is a contradiction for the subject mind to be unchanging if the object it perceives is changing; but on the other hand it is not necessarily the case that, just because the object the mind perceives is unchanging, the subject mind itself must be unchanging.

This is because of the following. When the subject mind perceives its object, does it engage in the object all the time, or does it engage in the object intermittently? If it engages all the time, then the object would have to be there all the time, which is a contradiction, since the object is changing.

If you answer that the subject engages the object intermittently, then the perception of the object must depend on certain factors, and so it would have to be changing.

It is true that, even it the object is unchanging, the subject mind that perceives it need not be unchanging. This is because the perception of the object by the subject depends on certain causes and conditions.

Some people claim that what's being disproved at this point is a conventional correct perception that was unchanging. Consider then ultimate perception. According to you then there cannot be any changing thing which acts as its object. Those schools here in the Land of Snow which assert that omniscience is unchanging have come to a point of direct contradiction against the great work of this Lord of Reasoning.

Here secondly is how we deny a Lord of Power who is something that changes. The root text presents the point in two lines:

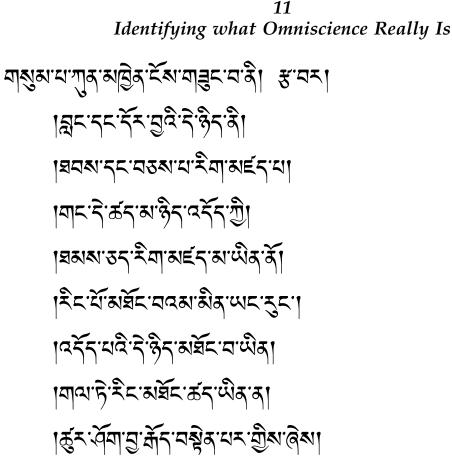
Because there are not things at all which help him any way,

There is no correct perception at all even if he were changing.

Suppose **even** that someone were unable to bear the above reasoning, and claimed instead that the Lord of Power **were changing**. They would say that he was from the very beginning a person free of all desire, and omniscient, without having to go through the process of experiencing desire and all the rest during his time in the circle of rebirth, and then depending on practices wherein he meditated on the antidotes.

But isn't it true that **there is no correct perception at all** that can establish the existence of a state of omniscience which has arisen from a Lord of Power of the past who is of the same type? Because isn't it true that this Lord of Power is someone who has never been harmed by the afflicted side of existence during a period when he was living in the circle of rebirth; and someone who has never been **helped** by the pure side of existence? Isn't it true that there are **no things at all** that have affected him in **any** such **way**?

On these two lines, the Great Commentary starts from the reason that it is incorrect to say that an unchanging thing could arise from certain conditions, and proceeds to saying that, as far as the denial of being changing, the Lord of Power is admittedly changing; but that it is incorrect to assert that he is omniscient. Based on this presentation it seems a little delicate to call this section the "denial of something that changes."



Here thirdly is the section on identifying what it is to be omniscient. The root text of Master Chandrakirti says:

The thing that we agree to be totally correct
Is the one who has knowledge of the fact of what it is
That we should take up and give up, and the method too;
It's not though one who knows everything there is.
Whether or not He can see to some so very great distance,

He is a person who has seen the one goal that we wish.

If what it takes to qualify is how far he can see,

Come then over here and take the vulture as your Teacher.

Consider now the Able One, the Victorious Buddha, the One Gone Beyond. It is right that all those who aspire for liberation should **agree** that He is **totally correct**. This is because He has reached the ultimate point of knowledge where He sees directly the causes for our getting trapped and for escaping: He sees everything that **we should take up** (the end of suffering, and the path to it) **and** everything we should **give up** (suffering and its source); and He sees **the method** to follow here **too**.

It's not though that **knowing every** kind of **thing there is**, all the rocks and tiny creatures at the bottom of the ocean, is all it takes to fulfill the wishes of those who seek liberation.

It doesn't matter whether or not He can see to some so very great distance; either way, the Teacher, the Transcendent Buddha, is the right one to take as a teacher, for He is a person who has seen that one goal that those who seek for freedom wish.

สการีราวังพัฐราวาชสาฏิสาสราสเวิริสารรีกาสาลๆ ภูาส์ราพิสาฏราสกา २८ र्थे अर्बेट नगा येंग्रा नर्दे नगहेर यों गाट व्या या दूर र्वेग 15 र्येट र्थेगाय โอ้ราปิ ซิ้สานา กลิสานา ยิงเวลา อิลเลารณลา โลลเนา เวยูา โ

If what it takes to qualify as a person who is totally correct is nothing more than how far one can see, then it would be proper to give the following advice to people who are wishing to reach liberation:

Come then over here. It's true that a vulture is nothing but a bird, but he does see to a very great distance; and so you should **take vultures** or other such beings **as your Teacher**.

নর্বা

In everyday life, people talk about how it is some being that was able to make the world who is the omniscient one. This verse though serves to identify the real nature of an omniscient being, which is one who understands in totality all the details of what one should take up, and what you should give up.

<u>র্</u>ট'ব্দীন'ঝ'কবাশ্ব'ম'শ্বি'ঝ'শ্বর'কদ'র্দ্বি'দ্ব'বান্টিন'ন'র্লিমা'ম্টের'র'

Here is some advice for those of you who have no attachment to this present life, and who aspire to goals of the next life, and beyond.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

The one thing which is important, beyond all else, is to follow properly, in your mind and in your deeds, a spiritual Guide who possesses the necessary qualifications. And the way to find the Guide is to look for one who can teach you, in exactly the right way, how to reach the goal that you desire. This key—that is, what you really need to look for—is described with absolute perfection by the Lord of Reasoning in the verse above.

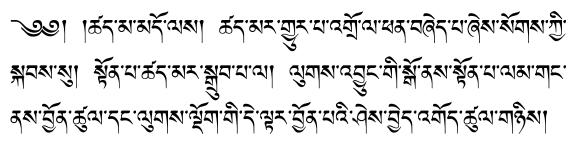
The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Eight: The Proof of Future Lives, Part Two

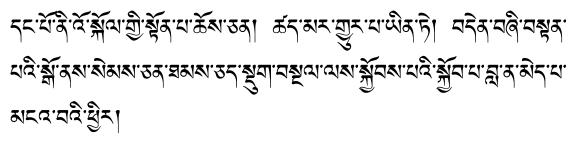
12

The Four Reasonings of the Forward Order

The following "Four Reasonings of the Forward Order" have been written out for this class presentation by Sermey Khen Rinpoche, Geshe Lobsang Tharchin. They are found in ACIP electronic text S0073.



We turn now to the point in the text which treats the lines from the "Sutra" on *Correct Perception* which include "The One who turned correct, who helps all beings." Here two steps are presented towards proving that the Teacher is a person who is totally correct: using the forward order to show what path the Teacher came from; and using the reverse order, putting forth evidence that He could have come this way.



Here is the first.

[First: the "Reasoning of the Protector," which proves turning totally correct:]

Consider our Teacher.

He is someone who turned correct,

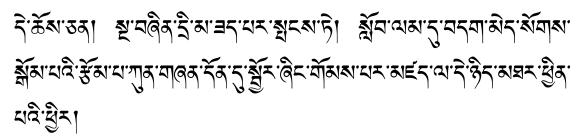
Because He possesses the quality of being an unsurpassed Protector, who by teaching the four noble truths protects each and every living being from suffering.

[Second: the "Reasoning of Eliminating Undesirable Qualities—the One who Went to Bliss," which proves being the Protector:]

Consider the same One.

It is true that He possesses the quality of being an unsurpassed Protector;

Because he has eliminated undesirable qualities, totally.



[Third: the "Reasoning of the Teacher," which proves having gone to bliss:]

Consider the same One.

It is true that He has previously eliminated all undesirable qualities;

Because during His time on the paths of learning He has for the sake of others acted in every way to practice continually on the subjects of selflessness and so on, and because He has reached the final perfection of this same practice.

[Fourth: the "Reasoning of Great Compassion," which proves being the Teacher:]

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Eight

Consider the same One.

There is a reason why He has practiced this way for the sake of others;

Because He has reached the final perfection of compassion.

[In summary,]

Consider this same One.

He is not a person who is totally correct and who is also unchanging, who just came that way from the beginning;

Because He has turned this way by practicing, for a long period of time, a great many methods that were both a part of the cycle of life and also beyond it; and He did so over the course of many different kinds of lives He has taken—driven all the while by His compassion.

13 An Explanation of the Perfected Thought

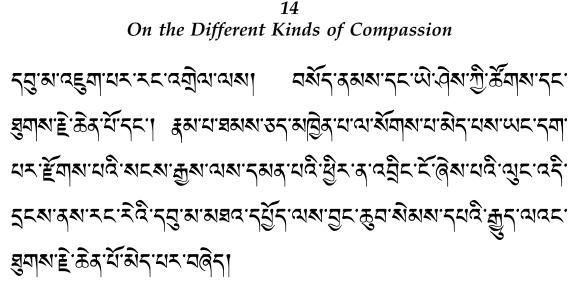
We return next to the Jewel of the True Thought, by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk:

 \mathfrak{F}^{T} มนิ ลูกา ผู้รา ผู้รา ผู้รา ผู้รา ผู้การ ผู้มางา ผู้มา ผู้รา ผู้รา

It comes from practicing perfectly what helps bring Him about: holy compassion.

As for the things that **help bring about** a person who is totally correct, holy great compassion comes first: that is, before. This is because you must become the Teacher first by giving birth within yourself to the **compassion** which wants to liberate every living being from suffering, and then by **practicing perfectly** the method for liberating them from suffering.

This kind of holy great compassion, moreover, comes about through constant practice of earlier and similar forms. The two phrases terms "holy great compassion" and "great compassion" are explained as being the same in this particular instance.



The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* says:

They do not possess the great masses of merit and of wisdom, nor holy great compassion, nor omniscience or the like. Therefore they are less than totally enlightened Buddhas, and so are said to be "medium."

The *Analysis of the Middle Way* from our monastery quotes this passage and says that therefore not even bodhisattvas have holy great compassion in their mind streams.

In the seventh chapter of the *Treasure House of Knowledge (the Abhidharmakosha),* eight distinctions between great compassion and holy great compassion are set forth. This text states that holy great compassion is found only in the mental stream of a realized being who is a Buddha. As the root text of the *Treasure* says,

The Buddha's great compassion, deceptive mind. Because of collection, aspect, activity object, Evenness, for greatness in the extreme. Distinctions between them of eight different types.

According to all this then, the difference between holy great compassion and great compassion is vast, and holy great compassion is no path which is practiced at the outset of the path of the greater way.

In this same vein, the majority of the textbooks of the great monasteries state that there is no great compassion in the mind stream of a practitioner of the lesser way. Our own textbooks though establish that enemy destroyers of the Listener type do possess great compassion in their mind-streams; they do so by using a quotation from the *Dar* commentary to the *Higher Line*.

They state moreover that, although these enemy destroyers lack the kind of compassion where they wish to protect living beings from suffering, they do have the kind where they wish to see them free of suffering.

สุมานตรีรีสามนิขัญญายิราณญา ริรายิรธิสารัรริรริสารรธิสารัติเพณ สุมานตรีรัสามนิขัญญายิราณญา ริรายิสารรา

The text called *The Explication which is a Light on the Path to Freedom* says that "This great compassion is the one thing that allows one to reach the start of the practice of the path of the greater way."

The Great Commentary, the Ocean of Reasoning, also says:

Any person who is able to develop in the stream of his mind this one thing, the great compassion that wishes to free each and every living creature from suffering, has thereby become someone whom we can speak of with the name "bodhisattva."

It states as well that:

This one thing, great compassion, is explained in the section on the forward order as being the beginning of the path for the unique path of the greater way.

In addition, this same work states:

A certain attitude grows up in the bottom of one's heart; a totally genuine state of mind where you wish to free every living being from suffering. This very state of mind is what we call "holy great compassion," or "great compassion."

As soon as this one thing has grown in your heart, then we speak of you with the words "greater way." This state of mind is moreover the starting point of the unique path, and a special cause for achieving omniscience.

Great compassion therefore is explained as being the starting point for the path of the greater way; and holy great compassion and great compassion are said to be two different words for the same thing.

In the *Greater Steps of the Path,* the *Sutra Requested by Ocean of Understanding* is first quoted. Then Lord Tsongkapa goes on to describe the example of a family person with an especially beloved son who suddenly falls into a great pit of filth. Even practitioners of the Listener and Self-Made Buddha types possess a kind of compassion which is similar to the one that the boy's mother and different relations feel, where they wish to pull him out of the pit. Only a bodhisattva though, he says, possesses the kind of compassion which is like the concern felt by the boy's father.

$$\begin{split} \hat{\mathsf{f}}^{*}(\mathbf{u}; \mathbf{\mathfrak{R}}^{*}) & = \mathsf{f}^{*} \cdot \hat{\mathsf{R}}^{*} \cdot \hat{\mathsf{R}}$$

Judging from this description, our own monastery's textbooks appear to be correct on this point. This is because compassion which is like the mother's love for his son is had by Listeners and Self-Made Buddhas as well, and that in itself satisfies entirely the definition of great compassion.

\tilde{A}_{A} \tilde{U}_{A} \tilde{R}_{A} \tilde{R}_{A}

We should note though that prior to developing compassion one must go through the steps of "beautiful" love, which cherishes and values its object; as well as wanting to repay kindness, recalling kindness, realizing that they have been your mother, and so on.

अन्नर्त्तः ने नियाः क्रेंस्रायः स्पेनः स्वेनः नद्यनः नर्वोस्रा

Whether or not Listeners and Self-Made Buddhas meditate on these various steps is something we would have to investigate.

15 Disproving Arguments that Personal Perfection is Impossible



Here secondly is the part where we disprove arguments that the perfected thought even exists. First we will present the arguments themselves, and then show how we disprove them.

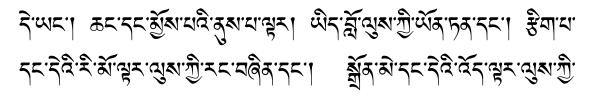
The first of these two is indicated in two lines of the root text:

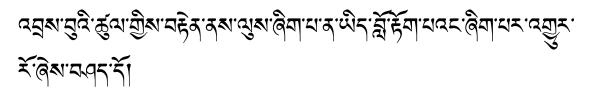
Suppose you say that, because of the fact that the mind

Is something that relies on the body, there is no achieving by practice.

Those of the Charvaka School say:

Your statement that a person practices compassion over the length of many lifetimes, and then turns into a person who is totally correct, is wrong. This is because there are no past or future lives, and awareness in the mind is something that relies on the body.





They say that there are three ways in which the mind relies on the body. First of all they say the mind is a quality of the body, similar to alcohol and the ability to make someone drunk. Secondly mind is part of the nature of the body, as with a wall and a design on the wall. Lastly the mind is a result of the body, in the way of a lamp and its light.

And they say that, because the mind relies on the body, the awareness in the mind dies when the body dies.

16 Proving Other Lifetimes through the Elimination of Other Possibilities

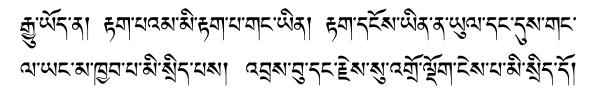


The following selection is taken from A Number of Necessities, which Those Who Seek for Freedom should Cherish like the Heart in their Breast (Thar-'dod rnams la snying ltar gces-pa'i nyer-mkho 'ga'-zhig).

આવર્ષા શુવ ગોુ ર્ઠન સાર્ક્ષ વનુ રાખેન ગોુ સુર સેવા વશા

We begin with an excerpt taken from *Clearing Away Darkness of the Mind about the Seven Books of Valid Perception,* a text composed by Kedrup Je.

Suppose you say that the mind of a person who was just born has no cause. You are disproven by the fact that this mind is variable.



Suppose thus that this mind does have a cause. Is this cause unchanging or changing? If it were an unchanging thing that could perform some function, then there would be no possibility that it did not apply in every place and at every time; and so there would be no possibility of its having a fixed relationship where it came and went according to its result.

Suppose then that the latter were true, [and that the cause of this mind were changing.] It would be incorrect to say that this mind could arise from any working thing other than matter or mind, and so it must come from one or the other of these two.

ลิมานี้พาชิราณิสาฏิราสุ รุกรานี้รุราสองงานคม ผู้รัณาฏิรามานี้พาพิสา

Suppose you say that matter provides the material cause for this mind. Is it the kind of matter which involves the powers of sense, or is it matter outside of them?

Suppose you say it's the first of the two. Is this cause one where all the various sense powers must come together, or is any one or combination of them enough? If the first is the case, then mental consciousness would fail to arise if the sense power of the eye were absent. If the latter is the case, then one's thoughts would have to be able to capture visible objects with the same kind of clarity that the consciousness of the eye does.

Suppose you say that it's outer matter which provides the material cause. Is it matter in the sense of some substance which is a whole, or is it atoms? Suppose you say it's the first. The substance which is a whole can only be something with parts or something without parts.

Suppose you say it's a whole with parts that provides the material cause. We deny you then with the same reasoning we used before: Is this cause one where all the various parts must come together, or is any one or combination enough?

Suppose you say that it's a substance which is a whole, and which has no parts, and which exists distinct from its details, which provides the material cause for the mind. Then when you covered your face with a piece of cloth all the other details of your body would have to be covered as well. If the other details didn't get covered then there would come to be two parts: one that was covered and one that wasn't. These two parts, the covered one and the uncovered one, would be something that applied to the details but not to the whole that had the details. This being the case, you would have to be able to see clearly the face of the whole even when the face as a detail was covered with the cloth.

This position is equally disproven by reasoning that treats other distinctions, such as moving one of your limbs or not, and turning to one side or not.

Suppose you say that atoms provide the material cause for the mind. If it's that the mind arises through each of the atoms, acting independently of each other, then many different mental consciousnesses would have to arise at the same time. If it's that the atoms must act all together in a group, then the mind could never arise if even a single atom were absent.

अवतःमलिवः तमेनिायतेः रेमारायादे दमायाया महेवावरायेकाया होरायेवा होटायरः

মুন'ম

This reasoning, where we use the process of eliminating all other possibilities, brings us to the conclusion that the material cause for mind is mind itself.

The mind that acts as the cause must moreover either be one which is part of yourself or one which is part of someone else. Suppose you say that a mind which is part of someone else, of someone like your father or mother, acts as the direct material cause for this mind. The problem then arises that—where the father is a skilled artisan, or say foolish, or whatever—the son must always be this way as well.

This leads us to conclude that it can only be a former mind which is part of our own stream of consciousness that provides the material cause [for our mind as it exists just after we are born.]

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Eight

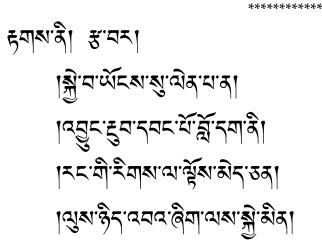
This means that the past history and future continuation of our minds are simply infinite; and that the existence of past and future lives can be clearly and correctly proven.

17 Master Dharmakirti's Proofs for the Existence of Other Lives

The following selection again is drawn from the Jewel of the True Thought.



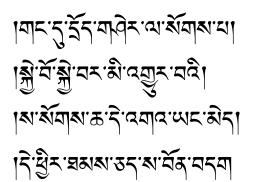
...Here secondly is the detailed refutation [of the Charvaka system]. We begin by presenting proofs for the existence of past and future lives, and then refute attempted proofs that these lives do not exist.



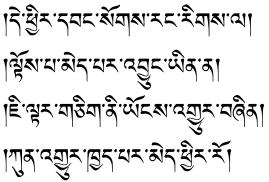
Here then are the proofs. The root text states,

When a person goes to take his birth, The in-out breath, the powers, and the mind Are nothing not dependent on their type, Nor only something born from body alone;

It would be absurd. The thing that you can see Has the ability to cross the line Without another thing that need be there Then isn't such that later doesn't cross.



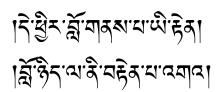
There then would never be any part of earth And such where there could never grow those beings Who come from heat and moisture and the rest, And so it all would be by nature seeds.



So if the powers and such could ever occur Without depending each upon their type, Then all of them should change the same as one, For there exists no difference between them.



If you hurt each one of all the powers, It isn't that the mind is also hurt. The fact that they too change whenever it Changes, this is something we can see.



Thus the basis for the mind to stay Is mind itself, a number which it depends.



Since they are the cause for all the various powers, These powers are something then that comes from mind.

And if the same projecting ones are there, Later too it will become the same.

Given this text, consider now an infant who has just taken birth: consider his *breathing in and out*, the clarity of his *powers*, the feeling of anxiety in his *mind*,

and so forth. *When a person goes to take his birth,* these *are nothing* such that they are *not dependent on* something of *their* own *type* which has come before, because the infant is now possessed of this in-out breath, and the clarity of his powers, anxiety in his mind, and so on.

Nor are these things *only something born from* the *body*, with its elements, *alone;* for they have come from something of their own type that came before them.

If this were not the case *it would be absurd*. Every one of the elements then would have to be a living being, for the mind is something that comes only from the elements.

There is a *thing that you can see has the ability to cross the line* into a new life *without another* single *thing*, without any extra cause, *that need be there*. This thing *then isn't such that later* it *doesn't cross* into another life.

য়ঢ়৽ঢ়ৢ৾ৼ৾ঢ়৽য়ঀ৾৾য়৽য়৽য়৽ৠৢ৾য়৽য়৽য়৽য়৾য়ঀয়৽য়৽ৠৢ৾৽য়৾ঀৠৢঢ়য়ৼ৾য়৾৽য়য়ৣয়৽য়৾য়ঀয়৽ ৽য়ৢৢঢ়৽য়৾৾ঽ৽য়ঀ৾ঀয়৽য়ড়ঢ়৽য়৾ঢ়৽য়৾ঀ৾য়৾ঀয়৽য়ৠৢ৾৽য়৾ঀৠৢয়য়৽য়৾৽য়য়ৣয়৽য়৾য় য়৽য়৾ঀয়ৣ৾৽য়ঢ়য়ঀ৾ড়ঢ়৽ড়ঀঢ়ৢ৽ঽয়ৣয়৽য়৾ঀ৾৾৾ঀ৾ঀয়য়য়ড়ড়ড়য়৾য়য়য়য়য়৾য়

Then too there would never be any part of earth and "such" (meaning any one of the other elements) where there could never grow those beings who come from heat and moisture and the rest, and so "it all" (that is, every case of the elements) would be by nature seeds. And that would be absurd.

So if the powers and the mind and such could ever occur just from the elements, without depending each upon something of their own type which came before them, then all of them (the elements) should change into a living being, in the same way as one of them had changed into a living being—[for there exists no difference between them.]

Even *if you hurt each one of all the powers, it isn't* always the case *that the mind is also hurt.* But suppose *it,* the mind, *changes* because it is hurt by feelings of grief or the like. *It is something we can see* then that *they*—the powers—*change too.* Therefore the mind is a very special basis for these powers; and it is something which *depends* on the *mind itself,* meaning former instances of its same type. Moreover, *a number* of cases of mental action, or karma, from one's past life are now *the basis for the mind to stay.* For these reasons then the mind is not something which has no basis of its own.

 $\hat{W}_{7}^{2} \hat{A}^{T} \hat{W}_{7}^{T} \hat{A}^{T} \hat{W}_{7}^{T} \hat{A}^{T} \hat{$

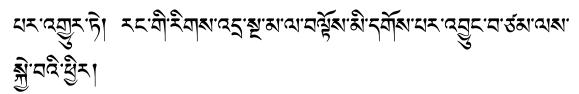
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Eight

These powers are something then that comes from mind, since they—a number of previous instances of mind—are the cause that projects the future occurrence of all the various powers. And later on, things like the mind at the moment of death too will become the same as these previous cases, crossing the line into later states of a similar type. This is because the same (meaning the same type of) projecting ones (that is, causes) are there.

The root text and its commentary just given present different reasonings to prove the existence of past and future lives. This is because when you prove that the passing in and out of breath with an infant who has just been born (or any of the other examples) comes from something of the same type which occurred previously, one can understand that the "same type" refers to the inhaling and exhaling of the past life, and so on.

Suppose you say that the powers and so forth of someone who has just now taken birth could occur only from the various elements. We can see that in one glass of water there grows one bug with a red head and a yellow body, and then another with a yellow head and a red body. Some creatures come out smaller, and others come out larger.

 $\hat{\mathbf{x}}^{(n)}$ ્ર $\hat{\mathbf{x}}^{(n)}$ $\hat{\mathbf{x}}^{(n)}$ \hat



Among humans as well some come with larger bodies, and then some with smaller ones. Certain people come with a very sharp intellect, and others with one which is dull. Some children display a great amount of understanding and love and the like, while others show a tendency towards attachment and other bad thoughts. According to you, these and similar cases should be impossible, because beings take birth only through the elements, without having to depend on any earlier instance of a similar type.

Suppose again that creatures were born only from the elements. Then when any one element turned into a creature, all the elements would have to turn into creatures. This is because there would be no cause or condition that would make one of the two occur, and the other not occur.

Our own position is that a number of instances of mind in the past act as projecting causes, and from them occur our present powers and so on, which are such that they result from karma, through a time-lag. And since a number of instances of mind in the form of the mind at the moment of death will also provide a cause, for the powers and so forth that come later, we are able to establish that future lives exist.

ซิกา รณราสา พราณ จะสมพาฐาญญาพรามานดิรามาส ซิรากรามิพาร์ สิมาน์ พิษัรามาลสิมาล์

For this reason, it is not always the case that the mind is affected when you hurt any one of the five sense powers. On the other hand, it is invariably the case that when the mind is affected by strong emotions of grief, or by various harmful influences, then it does hurt the physical powers. When for example the mind is affected by powerful feelings of fear, the sense power of the tongue can no longer taste something as delicious.

One may present the following argument:

What about a case where the power of the eye is damaged, and because of this the consciousness of the eye loses its ability to see its object? Isn't it common knowledge that you then undergo some feelings of distress, and that these affect the mind?

This though is no problem. It is true that such cases are possible, but it is not that mind is affected by the damage to the sense power. Rather, the damage to the eye power provides a general condition for a separate occurrence, the distress. The distress itself increases to a point to where the mind as well is affected.

It is not though the case that the mind is affected solely by the damage to the sense power of the eye. This is because there are instances where certain great beings have given away their very eyes, and yet still felt emotions of great happiness within their minds.

As such, the mind provides a very unique cause, a *sine qua non*, for a corresponding result: the sense powers and so on. The powers and the rest though do not provide this same kind of cause for any state of mind resulting from them.

To summarize, let us consider the mind of someone who has just taken birth. A previous state of mind has come before it, because it (the one at birth) is a state of mind. It is, for example, like one's current state of mind. This is the reasoning for proving the existence of former lives.

Consider further the mind at the moment of death, for an ordinary person. It will cross the line into a later state of mind, because it is a state of mind where attachment is present. It is, for example, like one's state of mind from the day before. This is the reasoning for proving existence of future lives.

If one gets caught up in the wording, it might seem that we are asking you to consider a former state of mind, and arguing that a former state of mind has preceded it, since it is a state of mind. Or else it sounds like we are saying one should consider a later state of mind, and arguing that it will cross the line into a later state of mind, because it is state of mind where attachment is present. It would seem that we had accepted that all these reasons were true, and that all the necessities held. And it would seem as though one could never accept these arguments, for in each case elements were the same.

These proofs are similar to where Master Kamalashila proves past and future lives in his *Concise Commentary on Suchness,* for there he states:

A state of mind such that desire is present in it does have the ability to give birth to yet another state of mind, the one that we take on at birth. This is because the state of mind at death for an ordinary person is similar to states of mind on previous occasions where desire was present: it too has desire.

The text goes on to state that these are types of reasoning where the quality asserted and the quality accepted share a nature.

ลู้าาายามาราย ยามาติาารายางยุรารที่ม

With both the reasonings presented above, you would have to perceive past and future lives if you perceived what the reasonings are trying to prove. Therefore it will be necessary for us to examine what object we can utilize as a starting point for perceiving past and future lives.

18 The Idea of a Material Cause: The Linchpin for Proving Future Lives

The following selection as well is drawn from Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk's Jewel of the True Thought.

Here is the third section, where we explain the definition of a material cause. We proceed in two steps, covering the definition of a material cause, and then demonstrating that there is no such cause between body and mind.

The first of these two is presented by the root text in the lines from "A material cause could never cause..." up to "...without a change in the clay."

The second is presented in the lines from "Anything that could bring about..." to "...Exactly like fire and melted copper."

Here then is the first:

A material cause could never cause What had it to come about Unless it were to change itself. Examples would be a pitcher or such Without a change in the clay.

What we call a "material" cause is such that it could never cause "what had it" (meaning its result) to come about unless the very essence of this material cause were to undergo a change itself. So what we need for a material cause is something which, by its very nature, imparts—in a very immediate way—its own unique affect. Examples would be a ceramic pitcher or such, which could never occur without a change in the clay.

Here secondly is the demonstration that there is no such cause between body and mind. The root text at this point says:

Any thing that could bring about Any other thing without a change Could never be its material cause; It'd be like a buffalo and cow or such, And the mind and the body Are just the same. Here the cause is one together, With the result that comes from it The kind that stays together, Exactly like fire and melted copper.

ૹૢૢૢૢૢૢૢ૽ૼૣ૾૾ઽૣ૽૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૻૻઽ૽ૻૹૣૻઽૻૡૹૢ૾૱ૡૻ૱ૻૡ૱ૹૻૡૢ૽ૡ૾૾ૻ૱ૡૻ૽ૡ૾ૻ૱ૻૡૼ૱ૻૡ૱ૡૡ૱ૡૡ૱ૡૡૢૻ૱ NAAN'55' સુશ' માં છે શ' માં 5' સે સ' સ র্মবামান্দানজিরার্রা สู้เวลิซิรา รุนิราสา สารราสรงพลิเนาริรานูสาชิสาธราสุจานารติสาส์ ๅฉๅ๊ฉานหัส ติฆายาวิามาฏีนารนายาลย์ ซิสาน์ วิาณาอิน

Any particular thing acting as a cause that could bring about any other thing—that is, its result—without a change could never be its transforming cause; which is to say, its material cause. It would be, for example, like a buffalo and a cow or any other such thing.

And the mind and the body are just the same: they could never be for each other a material cause and the thing that the material cause produced. This is because they each come from their own material cause, and from each other only as a factor that is one together with them. They stay, for example, together—exactly like fire and melted copper.

The unusual Tibetan words here about the cows refer to a buffalo and to a milk cow.

[The idea being expressed is that, although a buffalo and a cow can interact and affect each other, and thus in a sense act as factors for certain details of each other's being as they coexist, they are not the kind of cause and effect for each other where one transforms into the other; that is, they are not the kind of cause and effect that seeds and their sprouts are, for example. Fire affects copper by melting it in an apparently simultaneous way, but does not itself turn into the melted copper.]

19

Selections on How Ignorant Desire Triggers Another Life

The first selection is from the Overview of Dependent Origination, by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), an eminent author of textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. The work constitutes ACIP electronic text S0014.

...The definition of that ignorance which constitutes the first of the twelve links in the chain of dependent origination is: "That view of the perishable assemblage [view of a "me" or "mine" which has its own nature] which inspires one to commit fresh cases of the relevant second link--that of immature karma."

...The definition of that immature karma which constitutes the second link in the chain of dependent origination is: "That impure movement of the mind which is of the type that is inspired freshly by the relevant first link, of ignorance."

 নির্বা नेरम्गुरम्पदेग्वर्भर्तन्वस्रस्य प्रस्तिवस्रस्य प्रस्तिवस्य प्रियस्य य प्रियस्य प्य य प्रियस्य य

This particular immature karma can be divided into three types: merit, nonmeritorious karma, and unshifting karma. Meritorious karma and unshifting karma are not mutually exclusive, for there does exist something which can be both basic virtue which is consistent with merit and also the causal form of balanced concentration.

There are various typical examples of these three. The first would be the karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the better forms of life in the desire realm. The second would be a karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the three lives of misery. The third would be a karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the three lives of a person who takes birth in one of the three lives of a person who takes birth in one of the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the higher two realms.

...The definition of that craving which constitutes the eighth link in the chain of dependent origination is: "The mental function which, based on the link of feeling, desires of its own accord not to be separated from its object."

This particular craving can be divided into three types: desire craving, fear craving, and existence craving. Each of these three can be described in the following typical examples. The first is that craving where you desire not to be separated from an attractive object. The second is that craving where you desire to be separated from an unattractive object. The third is that craving wherein you crave the parts of your being at the time of your death, out of fear that you think you are going to stop.

The definition of that grasping which constitutes the ninth link in the chain of dependent origination is: "The strong desire that represents the craving of the previous link developed to an intense degree."

This particular grasping may be divided into four types: grasping to the desirable, grasping to views, grasping where you profess the existence of a selfnature, and grasping where you hold mistaken forms of morality and ascetic practices to be supreme.

The first of these is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to an attractive object. The second is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to bad views. The third is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to professing that a self-nature of a person exists. The fourth is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to bad ascetic practices.

These two links possess certain typical characteristics. Among the three categories of being virtuous and so on, they are invariably ethically neutral. There are types of each which are eliminated by the path of seeing, and types of each which are eliminated by the path of habituation; both types are possible. These links are found with both normal beings and with realized beings, and are had by beings in all three realms.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Eight

$$\Sigma \subset \mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{A}}$$
 પ્રાથમિંશ વનેવશ શેનુ સેનુ પોત્ર યાદ્ર દુદ યોશ યાર્શ શાક્ત પ્રાથ સિંચ પ્રાથ સે સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સાંગ સે સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સે સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ સાંગ્ર સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ્ર સો સાંગ સો સાંગ સો સાંગ સાંગ સો સાંગ સો સાંગ સાંગ સો સ

The definition of that ripened karma which constitutes the tenth link of the chain of dependent origination is: "The movement of the mind which is in its essence an impure ripening where karma has become extremely potent due to its being triggered by the relevant links of craving and grasping."

* * * * * * *

The second selection is from the Jewel of the True Thought. The verses are inserted from the original work by Master Dharmakirti, sometimes in shorter excerpts than in Geshe Wangchuk's text, to facilitate comparison with the corresponding commentary.

Suppose because he's free of the perishable view He would stop rebirth at the beginning of the path. Because the innate one's not yet eliminated. If it were, then how could there ever be a rebirth?

୲ୖଵୄୄଈ୕୳୶୲୕ୗ୷୲ୖୄୠ୵ଽୄୖଽ୕୕୕୕ୗ୕ୄଈୖ୕୵୲୷୲୷୳ୢଌୖ୲୷୲୰୲ୡୄୖଽ୷୲୰ୡ୕୵ଽ୲୵୳ୢଽ୲ ଽ୵୳୵ୢୖୢୠୄ୶୲୶୲ଌ୶୲୴୵ୢୢଈୖୄ୵ୢୖୄଌ୲୶୲୶୶୶୶ୢୖୄୢୠ୕୵୕୰ୠୄ୵୳୵୲୵ୢୠୄୢୄୄ୷୲୰୵ ୵ୄୖଽ୶୲ଌୖ୕୶୶୲୶୲ୣଌ୲୰ଽ୵ଽୣୠ୴୰ୡୢୖ୳୵୲ୖଵ୶ୢୖଽଽ୵ୗୢ୲

Suppose someone makes the following argument: "Let's say that you are right, and that the view of the perishable assemblage [seeing some "me" or "mine" with a self-nature] is the very root of the cycle of rebirth. Well then, just after a person had been able to develop the **beginning** moments **of the path** of seeing, **he would** have **stopped** himself from every crossing again the line into a new **rebirth**. Why? **Because he's free then of the perishable view."**

Our answer then would be as follows: "Consider a stream enterer [a person who has reached the path of seeing, and seen emptiness directly.] Isn't it rather the case that he has not yet reached a point where, because he has eliminated the perishable view, he need not take another rebirth? **Because** isn't it true that **the innate one**, the inborn perishable view, **is not yet eliminated**? And **if it were** eliminated, **then how could there ever be a rebirth**? In that case then he could of course never take another rebirth."

You could also answer: "Consider then a stream enterer who sees peace in that same life [that is, who reaches nirvana in the same life in which he reached the path of seeing]. **How could there ever be a rebirth** for someone like this? He is one of those people who is certain to eliminate the perishable view completely, and thereby achieve nirvana, in the same life that he reaches the path of seeing.

That state of mind where a person thinks of "me," Where he wishes to himself "May I be happy," Or "May I never suffer any pain," This viewpoint of a person is the innate.

And suppose you say, "Perishable view only comes in one kind: the type where you consciously believe [in a "me" or "mine" which has its own nature]. Therefore it is not the cause for suffering existence." It is not true though that there exists no innate form of the perishable view. Think of that case where a person wishes a certain object, where he thinks to himself, "May I be happy," or "May I never suffer any pain." Without being influenced by any kind of intellectual belief, he holds to a "me," he thinks of a "me" who is independent, and who is not just a label applied to the various parts of himself. That particular state of mind is the viewpoint of a person which is the innate one.

। মজিমা অর্থীমা মাজীয় মাজীয় । মন্যা মাজমা মাজীয় মাজীয় । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয । মন্যা মাজীয় মাজীয মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজীয় মাজিয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজীয় মাজিয় মাজীয় মাজিয় মাজীয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজিয় মাজীয় মাজিয় মাজ মাজিয়

If they never thought they saw any kind of "me," If they had no attachment at all to some kind of "self," If they were free of this craving to a self-nature, They'd never race on through desire for happiness.

And are you saying then that people like stream enterers [those who have seen emptiness directly but have not yet reached nirvana] have no attachment at all to some kind of "self"? You must be, because [according to you] they never think they see any kind of "me." If you agree, then you must be saying that they could never be the kind of people who race on to the next life through a desire for happiness [for a self-existent "me," and yet they are.] This would have to be the case, because they would be free of this craving to a selfnature.

The *Great Commentary* says: "Wherever a person **never thinks they see any kind of "me,"** then they have **no attachment at all to some kind of "self."** And because **they are free of this craving to a self-nature,** then **they can never race on** again to a next life **through a desire** for "my-self's" **happiness."**

We should note at this point that it is incorrect to assert, as some have done, that the simple awareness of oneself constitutes the perishable view. This is proven by the fact that enemy destroyers and Buddhas do possess states of mind in which they think to themselves, "These are my robes," or "This is my wisdom bowl."

If you disagree that this could ever be the case, then you would have to say as well that there could never exist that failure in one's monastic vows where you steal the robes or bowl or any similar article belonging to one of these beings. This would have to be the case, for these beings would according to you lack any state of mind where they considered something "mine." A lack of such a state should always mean that one could not steal from such beings, for the following distinction is correctly made: So long as the Teacher is still blessing the world with His presence, there can occur the failure of one's vows where he steals what rightfully belongs to the Teacher; and yet, after He pretends to pass into His final nirvana, such a failure can no longer occur.

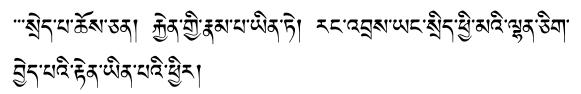
୵ୡୄଽୣୄ୶୲୳୲ଊ୶ୄୄୢୄ୷୲୵ୡୖଽୣୄ୶ୖ୷୶ୄୣୖ୷ୄଽ୵ଽୣୣୠଊ୲୳ୡୖ୲୶ଽୡ୲ୄୢ୷୶ୄୖୢ୷୶୲ୄୄୗ୶୲ୖୖୄଌ୲ୄୣ୷ଽ୵ଽୣଽଽୖ ะาพิเวลูสามาละๆ เดิญาญญาณาจาร์ไไ

There are moreover those lines in *Entering [the Middle Way]*, which talk about being

Like the case where Buddhas, who are free of the view Of the perishable assemblage, still speak of 'me' and 'my teaching'."

* * * * * * *

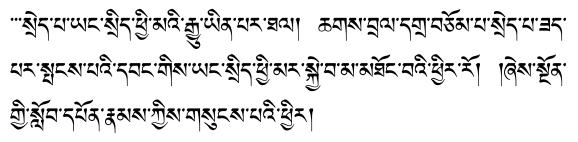
From the one cause of being attached to some self-nature, They conceive of what's not happiness as happiness, And as a result they dive into everything; Therefore craving's a basis for rebirth.



Consider now **craving.** It is the [aspect of the truth of the source of suffering we call] "factor." This is because it **is a basis** which contributes to a corresponding result; ie, another **rebirth**.

It is true that craving is this way, because **those** who have been brought down by the tendency to **conceive of what's not happiness as** being **happiness dive as a result** of this **into "everything,"** which refers to unworthy things and goals. Neither is it true that this totally mistaken backwards conception of things is without its proper cause, for all this occurs **from the one cause of being attached to some self-nature.**

Because of the fact that the Masters have said "Those free of attachment will never see birth."



It is true that craving is a cause for a future rebirth, **because of the fact that Masters** of the past **have said** that "Enemy destroyers, **those** who are **free of attachment**, **never** again **see** a **birth** in some future life; this is due to the fact that they have eliminated craving in its entirety."

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Nine: How Karma Works, Part One

1 On the Four Ancient Schools of Buddhism

The first selection is from the Schools of Philosophy (Grub-mtha'), written by Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786) and found at ACIP electronic text numbers *S0060-S0063*.

""।ననాల్పొళ్లే సావాత్సి ప్రోషాలు క్రోష్టాలు సావాత్సి సాత్రికి సాత్రి సాత్రి సాత్రికి సాత్రికి సాత్రి సాతరికి సాత్రి సాత్రి

Here next are the Buddhist schools. They are the Detailists, the Sutrists, the Mind-Only School, and those of the Middle Way. The number of these schools is exactly four, no more or less, and this is proven by numerous statements from both the secret and the open scriptures. In particular, in proof of this number there is the following quotation from the *Commentary by Diamond Heart:*

Those of the Buddha are four; the Able One Had no intention of a fifth.

Master Aryadeva has said as well:

Those who assert that the teachings of the Buddha Consist of four schools have seen the way it is: These, for those who hope to practice, are precisely The paths explained by the Detailists and the rest.

On the question of an evolution of these four schools, some people assert that the Detailist and Sutrist Schools started after the third council for assembling the scriptures. They say that the Middle-Way School began during the days of Master Nagarjuna, and that the Mind-Only started in the time of Arya Asanga. They also believe that, prior to these points in time, there was no concept of the four schools.

This idea is however incorrect, for we do see the concept of the four schools in works such as *Ocean of the Angels*; the *Secret Teaching of Lo Diamond, in Two Parts*; the *Secret Teaching of the Wheel of Time*; the *Secret Teaching of Diamond Arali*; and others as well.

2 About the Title of the Treasure House

The verses throughout the commentary below are from the Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha, Chos mngon-pa mdzod,), written by the Master Vasubandhu around 350 AD and found at ACIP electronic text number T4089. The commentary to the verses is from Illumination of the Path to Freedom, written by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474) and found at text number S5525.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Nine

In Sanskrit, the *Abhidharmakosha Karika*. In Tibetan, the *Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa*. [In English, The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.]

In Sanskrit, the title of this work is *the Abhidharmakosha Karika*. In Tibetan, this translates as *Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa* [or, in English, *The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.*] *Abhidharma* refers to "knowledge," *kosha* to "treasure house," and *karika* to "set in verse."

Now why do we bother mentioning the Sanskrit title of this commentary to the Buddha's words? We want to indicate that the work is of reputable origin. Buddhas of all three times, whether past or present or future, attain their enlightenment at the Seat of the Diamond, in India. So the Indian name is meant to show an origin in the seat of knowledge, India.

A commentary is worth no more or less than it is, but if people think it comes from India they'll take the time to study and teach it, just because of the better source. It's just like the local merchants. If they hear some barley has come from the lowlands, right away they want to trade for it, because the source is a good one.

A commentary may actually be excellent, but if you don't put some Sanskrit in it nobody wants to work with it. They think it's just Tibetan. Like local merchants who heard that some barley came from a highlands nook—nobody wants to touch it, whether it's really good or bad.

Mentioning the title in Sanskrit has the further purpose of starting a mental propensity for this excellent tongue. All Buddhas of the three times teach the Dharma in Sanskrit after their enlightenment. An acquaintance with just this small amount of the language acts as a mental seed, which will ripen into a nearly automatic fluency. Finally, it helps one comprehend the differences in word order between Tibetan and Sanskrit.

Why do we mention the title at the very start? It facilitates locating the proper volume, and understanding its subject at a glance. Why put the Sanskrit and Tibetan side by side? So we may recall the kindness of the master translators, and strive to repay our debt to them.

We'll explain the actual import of the title later on; here first comes the obeisance of the translator.

""। รุรารักมาสมุญมา สาสมารสุราฏิ สมารราสาดสาวา รสุรารักราสาสา วรุโณ สมารราสาดสาวา สาสมาสราสารัฐราฐาสารารัฐสารารัฐสารรัฐ ลา

...We now turn to the second part of our detailed treatment of the text's subject matter: an explication of caused phenomena. In this regard we examine the actual content of the text only after discussing its structure in three divisions: a listing of the eight chapters, a demonstration of their interrelation, and a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight.

Master Purnavardhana presents the eight chapters of the *Treasure House* as follows:

Eight chapters were written to elucidate in detail what is indicated only briefly by the opening words of the texts: "All phenomena, stained or without stain." The first two of the chapters are devoted to a general treatment of stained and unstained phenomena.

³ The Eight Chapters of the Treasure House

A detailed presentation of stained phenomena is left to the next three chapters. The third, for example, relates (1) *who* it is that is so very afflicted, (2) *where* they live so very afflicted, and (3) *how* they are so very afflicted. It does so with respective presentations on (1) the five types of beings in the three realms--the world of living beings; (2) the external world--the "vessel" which holds these beings, and (3) the four modes of birth and twelve links of dependent origination. The fourth and fifth chapters describe *what* it is that makes beings so very afflicted--stained deeds and the mental afflictions.

=୩ાએન શું સ્વાપ્તુ ક્ષેં સ પયે નગમ તુ અધ્ય ગામ અપ્યું અગામ અપ્યું ગામ સમ પ્ર શુદ્ ગયે ગામ સ્વાપ્ત ગામ તુ સમય તે ગામ સમય શુદ્ ગયે ગામ સમય તે ગામ તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ તે ગામ તે ગામ તે ગામ સમય તે ગામ સમ

The final three chapters give a detailed treatment of unstained phenomena. Chapter Six covers *who* it is, what kind of person, that is purified; *where* it is, the place, that he is purified; and *how* it is, by what stages of realization, that he is purified. Chapter Seven concerns *what* it is that makes the person pure: as sutra says, "Affliction is something wisdom must destroy." Chapter Eight concerns meditation--that which provides a base for wisdom to rely on--for as sutra states again, "The mind in meditation gleans pure reality."

Other masters of the past have outlined the eight in the following way:

The work is presented in eight chapters in order to address three points: objects, activity, and result. In general, all *objects* may be divided into two types: apparent reality and actual reality. The first two chapters are devoted to apparent reality; the third, fourth, and fifth deal with actual reality--the four truths. The sixth chapter explains the different types of realization, whose sphere of *activity* is actual reality. The *result* which is attained, wisdom, as well as other personal attributes associated with it are treated in the final two chapters.

 $| \Pi \hat{\beta} \hat{\aleph} \cdot \chi \cdot \hat{\eta} | = \hat{\delta} \hat{\kappa} \cdot \chi \hat{\kappa} \hat{\kappa} \cdot \chi \hat{\kappa} \cdot \chi \hat{\kappa}$

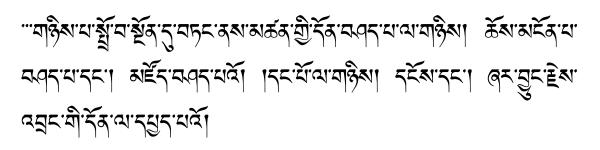
As for the interrelation of these chapters, the first presents the general subject matter addressed by the works on knowledge: stained and unstained phenomena. The first chapter makes but a mere mention of the powers and of the way in which caused phenomena arise; thus the following chapter, the second, is devoted to a more detailed treatment of these two points. The subject of the three realms, given only passing mention in these opening chapters, is therefore explored in the third. Some believe that the three realms thus presented are creations of some god, such as the one they call "Powerful"; the following, fourth chapter therefore disproves this idea and shows that the real source is deeds.

<u>ই</u>শ্বান্থান্থান্ ক্রান্যন্ নার্ম্বর্দ্রান্ট্র্যা

The message of the next chapter, the fifth, is that the motivating force behind the deeds outlined in Chapter Four is the widespread mental afflictions. The sixth chapter is devoted to demonstrating a path by which we may eliminate these afflictions, so naturally comes after their presentation. The seventh chapter provides additional detail about the types of knowledge mentioned in the sixth; the eighth, lastly, completes the interrelationship of the chapters by enlarging upon the qualities which the Buddha possesses in common with advanced beings at lower stages--these qualities and those unique to the Buddha having first appeared in Chapter Seven.

The third point we have promised, a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight chapters, will be understood from the words of the Master's work itself.

4 What is Abhidharma?



Having thus covered the pledge to compose the work with its preliminary eulogy, we shall present the actual explanation of the work's title, the first subject treated once the author has inspired himself for the work. The word "knowledge" will be explained first, both by itself and, incidentally, with regard to its accessories. Then we will speak of the expression "treasure house."

Knowledge is unstained wisdom, and its accessories.

[I.5]

Master Vasubandhu has promised "To write this commentary, the *Treasure House of Knowledge.*" But what does he mean by "knowledge"? There are two types of such knowledge; we may describe the first in the form of a logical statement:

Consider the following three paths without stain: those of seeing, habituation, and no further learning.

They are actual knowledge, because

They constitute **unstained wisdom and its accessories**.

Now the second portion of knowledge, its accessories, may further be addressed in two divisions of real accessories to knowledge and merely nominal accessories to knowledge. Real accessories to knowledge may be considered in terms of the level upon which they rely, the meaning of reliance in the present context, and an investigation into how many heaps knowledge has, if you also count all which stand in attendance to it.

१८८२ में के दिन दे मासुस स मार पा यहन के ना स्वे में रायस के मानस स मानन स दुया याद रुद पा यहने पा प्ये के नि क्रिंग प्रस्त के मायस स्वा मानन स्व का दुया याद रुद पा यहने पा याद के मायस के मायस के मायस मानन स्व क्या प्र दे के से स के मायद के मायस के मायस के मायस के मायस के माय दे के से स के मायद के माय के माय के मायस के माय क के माय क का माय के माय का माय

On what levels do the three mentioned paths rely? The path of seeing may rely on any of the six levels of concentration. This is because the final stage of the path of preparation, known as "ultimate phenomenon," may itself rely upon any of these six levels; and the path of seeing always relies upon the same level as the stage of the ultimate phenomenon. As the scripture states, "Same level as ultimate phenomenon." Scripture also confirms our assertion that the ultimate-phenomenon stage can rely on any of the six levels:

Meditative at beyond no leisure, Extraordinary concentration level too.

> 5 Nominal Accessories to Knowledge

าริ ์ชั่น ฏ ซู้ มาการรรามผู้สายชังเการา

Those used to achieve it, and the commentaries.

[I.6]

าทุธิพานาสิโ รพานนิ ซิพาพรัสานาริ ซิสานรายารนิ ซิราราตุกพานนิ ซิพา าลมาสู้มากลูมาฏิ. วิมาราวอการจะการรรา สิมาร์ราฏิ. วิมาราวาร

$$\widehat{W}$$
ર્સ્સ્ય ત્ર્યું તે સમય ત્ર્યું તે ત્રુપ્ય તે પ્રસ્થે તે સ્

There are a number of accessories to knowledge which are merely nominal. **Those** include first the wisdoms of learning, contemplation, and meditation, which are practiced in order **"to achieve it"**--actual knowledge. Second there is that amount of wisdom with which one is born. Finally there are **the** classical **commentaries** which take these very types of wisdom as their subject matter. These include *The Practice of Wisdom* and similar works.

Let us use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the accessories to knowledge just mentioned.

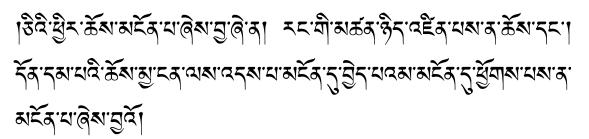
They may be given the name "knowledge," because

They constitute the means or cause of one's achieving actual knowledge.

What is the actual process of causation here? Untainted wisdom springs from meditative wisdom, which comes from contemplative wisdom, which derives from the wisdom of learning--all dependent upon the wisdom with which one was born.

Calling these accessories "knowledge" serves a specific purpose: the author is trying to tell us that they must be relied upon as methods, or causes, for achieving real knowledge. In actual point of fact they could never *be* knowledge, since they are stained.

6 The Meaning of the Name of the Book



Where does the word "knowledge" [Sanskrit: *abhidharma*] come from? A phenomenon [*dharma*] is that which possesses [*dh*_{*T*}] a nature. And knowledge brings to [*abhi*] you, or leads you to [*abhi*] that highest of all existing phenomena: nirvana.

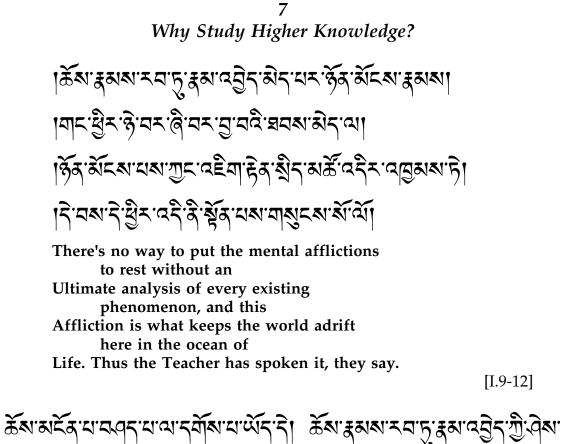
"Treasure house" of knowledge because they all fit here In its points, or since they are its home.

[I.7-8]

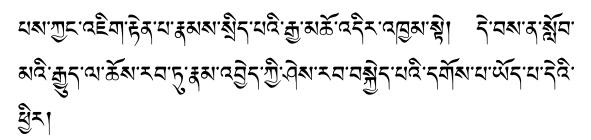
Master Vasubandhu has stated: "I shall write this commentary, *The Treasure House of Knowledge.*" Just how is it a **treasure house of knowledge**? The very most prized points of the Seven Works on Knowledge **all fit here in the points**, in the subject matter, of the Master's commentary. The scabbard in which you sheathe a sword, for example, is called the "scabbard of the sword," and the place where you deposit your riches is termed the "treasure house of riches."

You could also say that the Seven works on Knowledge are themselves the **"treasure house,"** and that **they are the home,** or source, for the present work. The expression "scabbard of the sword," for example, can just as well indicate the place from where the sword was drawn.

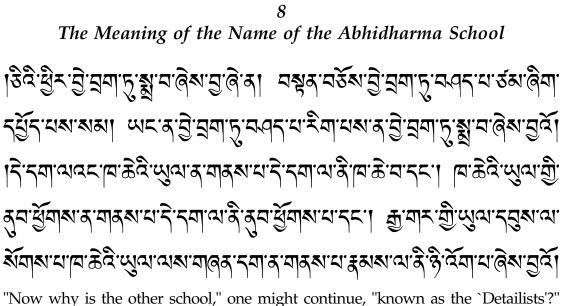
Next comes a demonstration that the teachings on knowledge are the word of the Teacher, preceded by a statement of purpose.



รุสามาร์สามักลานาสุมุณชิวาราสิวาราสิวาราสิวานาร์สามักณา รัสามักณา



Giving an explanation of knowledge has the following purpose. Without wisdom which analyzes every phenomenon in an ultimate way, there is no way of putting to rest all that the mental afflictions imply. And this affliction is what keeps those of the world adrift here in the ocean of life. It is therefore necessary to plant, in students' minds, wisdom which can make this ultimate analysis of phenomena. Thus the explanation.



"Now why is the other school," one might continue, "known as the `Detailists'?" One may say that they are "Detailists" because they devote their study exclusively to the classical commentary known as *Detailed Exposition*, or else because they understand the *Exposition's* meaning. The school itself may be further divided into a number of groups. Those who reside in Kashmir are known as the "Kashmiris," while those who live in the western part of the same land are known as the "Westerners." Detailists in areas other than Kashmir, those in central India and so forth, are referred to collectively as those "Under the Sun."

Now the lines beginning with "There's no way to put the mental afflictions to rest..." also indicate that Master Vasubandhu's commentary possesses the four requisite attributes of a reputable work. Again we may use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the act of making a statement of purpose, and of a relation of the text to that purpose, here at the beginning of the commentary.

It has a purpose of its own, because

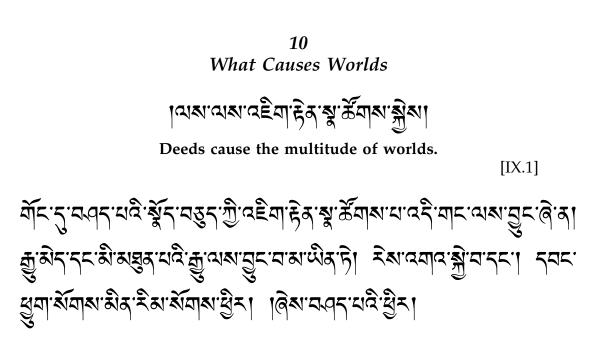
It conveys to disciples the fact that the commentary possesses the four attributes of a reputable work. Once they realize that these attributes are present, disciples will be inspired to study the text.



Here are the four attributes:

- 1) The *subject matter* of the text concerns stained and unstained types of phenomena. It is indicated in the verse with the words "every existing phenomenon."
- 2) The *purpose* is to utilize this subject matter to plant, in students' minds, that wisdom which analyzes phenomena in an ultimate way. It is indicated by the words "ultimate analysis."
- 3) The *ultimate goal* is to have these students achieve nirvana, both with and without anything remaining. It is indicated indirectly by the entire phrase running from "There's no way..." up to "...without," and on from "this affliction..." up to the word "Thus."
- 4) A *relation* exists in that the purpose must be achieved through the subject matter of the work, and the ultimate goal through this very purpose.

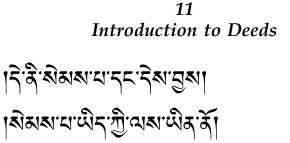
One may also state the relation as being between the subject matter of the work (that is, all existing phenomena) and the means by which this subject matter is expressed (i.e., the commentary itself).



One may begin with the following question: "You have just described a multitude of worlds—both the great vessels of the outer worlds and the living beings they contain. Where do they all come from?" They do not come from no cause at all, and they do not come from causes that are inconsistent with their own nature. This is because they stay for some time, then go away; and as the root text said itself, "Not an almighty one or the like, because of stages and such."

What then *does* cause them? It is the past **deeds** of living beings that **cause** all **the multitude of worlds**--both the places and the people.

The exposition that follows now on deeds is divided into two parts: first on the basic nature of deeds, and secondly on listings from sutra on the different types of deeds. The former is itself presented first in a brief introduction and then in a more detailed treatment.



They're movement of the mind and what it brings. Mental movement is a deed of thought; What it causes, deeds of body and speech. These are either communicating or not.

[IV.2-5]

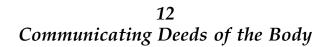
"In the line above," one might continue, "you said that `deeds cause the multitude of worlds.' Just how many types of deeds are there?" **They**--deeds-**are** of two different types: deeds consisting of **movement of the mind**, **and** the deeds that **it brings**--those that the mind motivates.

ଽୖ୵୵୶୲୕ୖ୩୲ଽୖ୕ଽ୷୕୶୷୕ୖଵ୕୶୲ ଈ୕ୖୖଋୄଈ୕୰ଽୖୠୖୄୖ୴୰ୠୖୄୖୖୢୖ୷୲୴ୖ୶୷୷୷ୖୠୄ ଽ୲୵୵ଽ୕୶ୢୠ୕୵ଈୄୖ୴୶ୢୖୠ୲୴ଈୖୖ୴ୡ୶୳ୖଌୄୖୠୖ୰୲ ଈୖଈଈୖ୰୳ୖଽଈ୲୳ୢୖୢୠୄୖୣୠୣ୵୲୴ୖଌ୕ୖ୰ୠଈ୶୲୳ୡୖ ୴ଈ୲୴ୄୠୄଈୄୖୢୖୢୗ୲୴ଢ଼୲୵୵୲୲୵୶୲ୖୖୠୄ୕ୄଈ୲୴ୠୖଈ୲ୖଽ୲୵୶୲୴ଢ଼ଽୖଽୡ୶୳୷ୖଽ୶୲ୢୖୠୄୣୖ ୵୵ଽଽୡ୲୳୷ୖଽ୶୲ୢୠୄୖ୵୲ଈ୴ୠ୳୳୴ୠୖୄଈ୲୶ୠୖୄଈ୲ୖୠଽୣଽ୲

One may ask about each of their basic natures. **Mental movement is a deed of the thought,** for it consists of a deed linked with consciousness of the thought. **What it causes**--that is, deeds motivated by the mind--are of two kinds: these are **deeds of** the **body and** deeds of **speech**. **These** two themselves can be further divided into two types each: they **are either** what we call **"communicating" or not.**

Our more detailed treatment of these points continues in three steps: the definition of a deed, typical features of the three types of deeds in general, and different divisions of non-communicating types of deeds.

In discussing the definition of a deed we will cover first the communicating, and then the non-communicating types. The former will be described first for those of the body, and then for those of speech.

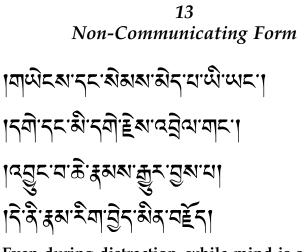


ૡૢ૱૱૱૱૾ૻ૱૽ૻ૱૱૱૱૱

Body communicating held to be shape.

[IV.6]

"You mentioned," one might start, "a line just now saying `these are either communicating or not.' Can you describe the types of bodily deeds that are said to be `communicating'?" **Communicating** deeds of the **body** are **held** in the present school **to be** the **shape** that the physical body takes under motivation by movements of the mind present for the duration of specific actions such as prostrating oneself before a holy object or taking the life of a sentient being.



Even during distraction, while mind is stopped, Virtue or not, continuing after, Taking the great elements as its causes, This form we say does not communicate.

[I.41-4]

ดิฆานคราสา สุฆานราริสาฏิรามาพิสานฉาสุสาฆาราสราติเลา

Someone may begin:

What about the line above that ends with the words "...and noncommunicating"? What do you mean by "non-communicating form"?

This form which **does not communicate** possesses five distinctive features. The first is a feature of period: this type of form is present **even during** periods when one is **distracted**, or **while** one is engaged in a controlled meditation where **mind is stopped**.

તે અંભેવા એવા બાર્ચવાયા પાયા પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપ્ત પ્રાપત પ્ર પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્ર પ્રાપત પ્ર પત પ્ર પ્રાપત પ્રાપત પ્ર પત પ્ર પત પ્ર પ્ર

This much is also true of the eye and so on, so that we must mention a feature of essence: this form is either **virtuous or not**. The description so far could apply to communicating form as well, so a feature of time is included: non-communicating form **continues** on **after** a deed, in a perfect stream. As much could also be said of virtuous and non-virtuous holds, and thus we note that this form **takes the great elements as its causes**.

ઽૺૡૻૡૻૻૹ૽ૡઽૢ૱૱૱૱૱૽ૺૡઽ૾ૡૻ૱ૹૡૼૻઌૹૣ૱૱ઙ૾ૼૹૡૡૡૺ ૹ૾૾૱ઽૺૹ૾ૢૺઽૹૡૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૡ૱ૢૣ૾ૣૣૣૡૢૡૻઌૡ૾ૼઽૡૢઽૡઽઽૢૣૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૡૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡૺ૱ૻ૱ૡૼ૱ૹ૾ૢઽઽૺૹૢ૱ૡૡ૾ૢ૾૱ઌ The Kashmiri Sanghabhadra [?] attacks this definition with the following verse:

It's incomplete, contradicts classical Commentary, one then is not, One not then is. "Even's" superfluous, A feature not mentioned should be.

He explains his criticism as follows:

Let's consider some non-communicating form at the first instant of its existence. According to you, it could never be noncommunicating form, because it is *incomplete*—it lacks the feature of continuing on in a perfect stream. Consider this form again. According to you, it could also never be a substantial thing, because it's a stream. And if you go ahead and agree that it is not substantial, you *contradict* the *classical commentaries* which explain that it is.

Consider further the non-communicating form that is created by single-pointed concentration. If your definition is correct, *then it is not* non-communicating form. This is because it does not exist during particular periods when one is distracted, or while mind is stopped; rather, it is present during periods when one is not distracted, and when the mind is functioning.

Take too what is *not* this kind of form at all: form which does communicate intent. If you are right *then* it *is* form which doesn't communicate intent, because it is present during periods without distraction, and with a functioning mind. Moreover, the word *"even" is superfluous:* when you state that this type of form is there when the mind is distracted, everyone understands that it is also present at times when the mind is functioning. You have, finally, also made the mistake of *not mentioning a feature* which *should* have *been:* the fact that this type of form is invisible and ineffable.

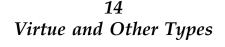
Sanghabhadra [?] then presents an alternative definition, in the following verse of his own:

Form different from the one You made: during thought and also Not, specified, ineffable, This does "not communicate."

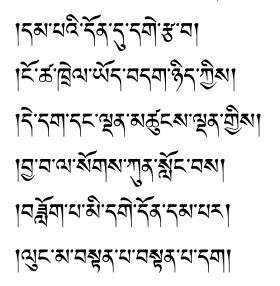
ฉรัราสุ กิญฏิราฏราริกาสณาการรา จัมพามิราฏิริพาญฏิรามพาริกา

ଽୖଽ୵ଽୖୄଽଽୖଽଽ୶୴୶ୢୄଈୖ୶୳୳ୖୖଌୄୖୄଈ୳୳୰୩ୖୄୠୡ୲ୖ୵ୖଈୡ୳୳ଽୢୢଵ୕ଊ୲୳ୡୖୖ ୶୵୩୶୶ୖ୶ୄ୲୲

Both of the above systems, nonetheless, amount to the same inconsistency. If you establish something as non-communicating form because it relates to periods when the mind is not distracted, or functioning, then form which does communicate intent must also not communicate it. And if on the other hand you establish something as non-communicating because it relates to periods where the mind is stopped, then the two restraints which arise from singlepointed concentration could never be non-communicating.



... สะ.นเ



...Freedom

Is the ultimate virtue. The roots as well as Shame and a conscience are so in themselves. Those that are linked with them, by a mental link; Actions and the like, by motivation. Their opposites, non-virtue. The ultimate In the ethically neutral, those described.

[IV.30b-6]

One may ask whether virtue and the rest are established only on the basis of the motivation involved. They are not; in fact, there are four different divisions, beginning with what we call "ultimate" virtue. How do we describe them?

First consider **freedom**--nirvana. It **is the ultimate virtue**, for it is the highest state of happiness, free of every single suffering. It's like a totally healthy person. Next consider **the** three **roots** of virtue, **as well as** a sense of **shame and a conscience.** They are virtue by nature, for they are virtue **in** and of **themselves**, without relying on anything else. They are like medicinal herbs.

Still further let us take **those** instances of mind and mental functions **that** are joined in a mental **link with them**--with these virtues. They are **"mental-link"** virtue, for we establish them as virtue **by** the fact that they share **a mental link** with virtue. They are, for example, like the liquid in which you mix your medicinal herbs.

Next consider physical and verbal **actions and the like**--the things that are motivated by the mental elements just described. They are what we call "motivational" virtue, for they are considered virtue **by** reason of the virtuous **motivation** involved with them. We can compare them to the milk that a mother produces after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the medicinal herbs described.

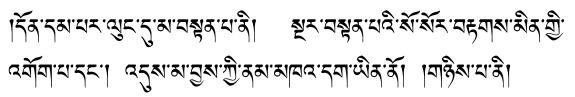
The opposites of each of the above are what we call **"non-virtue"**; the process is as follows. First take the cycle of life. It is the ultimate non-virtue, for it is the highest form of unhappiness--total bondage in suffering. It is like an illness.

Next consider the three root non-virtues, as well as shamelessness and the lack of a conscience. They are non-virtue by nature, for they are non-virtue in and of themselves, without relying on anything else. They are like poisonous herbs.

Then consider instances of mind and mental functions which share a mental link with these non-virtues. They are "mental-link" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue because they share a mental link with non-virtue. These we can compare to a liquid in which the poisonous herbs were mixed.

$$\begin{split} \hat{f}_{1}^{-1} \hat{\eta}_{1}^{-1} \hat{\eta}_{1}^{-1} \hat{\eta}_{1}^{-1} \hat{\eta}_{2}^{-1} \hat{\eta}_{2}^{-$$

Let's next take the deeds of body and speech motivated by the mental elements described. These are "motivational" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue through the non-virtuous motivation involved. These types resemble the milk that a mother gives after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the poisonous herbs.



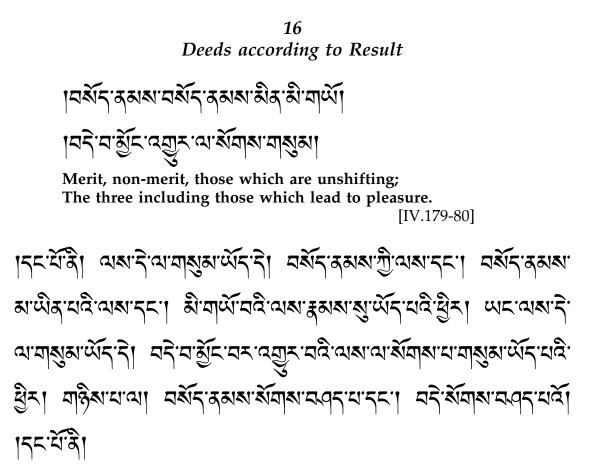
The ultimate in the things which are ethically neutral consist of those instances we have **described** previously: non-analytic cessations and unproduced space.

15 The Definition of the Three Types of Karma

The following brief definition of the three types of karma is found in the Treasure House of Chim, a commentary upon the Treasure House of Wisdom by Chim Jampeyang (c. 1280) found at S6954.

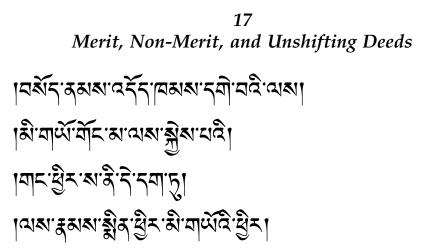
Sutra describes three kinds of karma: virtuous karma, nonvirtuous karma, and neutral karma. Virtue is that karma which, in the short term, brings you a karmic ripening which is desirable (that is, a feeling of pleasure), and ultimately protects you from suffering (that is, helps you achieve nirvana). Non-virtue is that karma which brings you a karmic ripening which is undesirable (that is, a feeling of pain). A neutral deed, something neither virtuous nor non-virtuous, is that karma which brings you something which is neither desirable nor undesirable.

We return next to the commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama:



Now deeds may be divided into three different types: deeds which represent **merit, non-merit,** or **those which are unshifting.** They can also be divided into a different set of three: **the three including those which lead to** an experience of **pleasure** and so on.

Our more detailed treatment of these points will proceed in two steps: first a presentation of merit and the rest; secondly, a description of the mentioned pleasure and so on.



Merit, virtuous deeds of the realm of desire. The ones that come from the above, unshifting. They're unshifting for the reason that The deeds involved ripen at their levels.

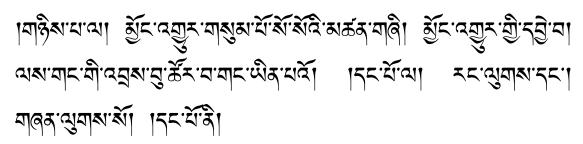
[IV.181-4]

One might start with the following question: "Just how do you describe merit and the other types of deeds you mentioned?" Deeds that we call **"merit"** are the **virtuous deeds of the realm of desire.** What we call **"unshifting"** deeds are **the ones that come from those** realms **above**; that is, from the form and formless realms.

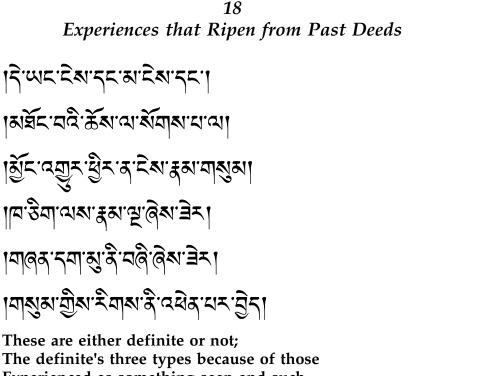
"Isn't it contradictory," one may object, "for you to describe deeds of the upper realms as unshifting, when those of the third and lower levels of concentration are explained as shifting types?" There is no contradiction. The levels of concentration from the third on down are explained as "shifting" or "affected" only with reference to their being affected by the various problems that prevent one from perfecting single-pointed concentration. The point in calling deeds of the upper realms "unshifting" is in reference, rather, to the fact that they do not shift direction when they ripen.

These deeds are called "unshifting" **for the reason that** a **ripening** of **deeds** which is meant to occur **at "their" level**--at the levels of the form and formless realms--will never occur at any other level. The point is thus that the ripening is an **unshifting** one.

Deeds of the desire realm, on the other hand, are shifting--someone meant to be born as a pleasure being can, through the effect of certain factors, take birth as one of the other types of beings. There was for example the case of the Brahmin who because of his generosity was to be born as a pleasure being. But he caught sight of an especially majestic elephant and thought to himself how wonderful it would be if he could obtain one. As a result, he took birth as the elephant known as Son of the Protector.



Next we consider deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. We proceed in three steps concerning (1) definitive examples of each of the deeds leading to specific types of experiences, (2) the various divisions of experience, and (3) the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds they result from. Definitive examples are discussed in terms of both positions accepted by the present school and those accepted by others.



The definite's three types because of those Experienced as something seen and such. Some claim that the kinds of deeds are five, Others that the combinations are four. Three of them act to project a discrete being. [IV.197-202]

Now there are three types of deeds which lead to a future experience through a process of ripening. These types of deeds themselves are grouped into two: they are either definite, or not. The "definite" group is of three different types, because it includes (1) those deeds with results that are experienced as "something seen"--that is, deeds which ripen into an experience in this very life; (2) deeds with results that are experienced after one's rebirth--that is, in the very next life; and (3) deeds with results that are experienced in "some other" life--which is to say, in any life after the next.

Some people **claim that the kinds of deeds are five:** they arrive at this figure by dividing indefinite types of deeds into (1) those which will definitely ripen but at an indefinite time, and (2) those where neither ripening itself nor its timing is definite.

Others--namely, the Exemplist group in the Sutrist school--claim **that the** possible **combinations** which hold true in this regard **are four.** They say there are (1) deeds which are definite to ripen but at no definite time, (2) deeds which should ripen at a definite time but which are not definite to ripen at all, (3) deeds which are definite in both respects, and (4) deeds which are definite in neither respect.

One may ask which of these deeds projects a discrete being in the future. **Three of them act to project a discrete being**, but deeds with results that you see in this very life do not. This is because they ripen upon the very same stream of heaps which performed the original deed.

Next we examine the number of different deeds that can be projected with different realms and types of beings.

19 Deeds that Definitely Ripen
। ইর র্মন্থান্দ দেন্দ হার্যা র্যান্দ ।
র্ম্পির দের জিন দেন কি কি বি নি কি বি
เ <u>ป็สเสเป็นเพ</u> ชเสเลเน
14.भ.यार्श्वेन.याट.टे.टेश.श्रे
NAJEL. પ્રુચ. ત્વીંચ. ત્વી. જે થી. જો છે.
ได้รารราสสมาร์สังสรารราสสม
<u>৻</u> য়৻ৼ৾৾ঢ়৻ড়য়৾য়৻য়৾৾৸ঀ৾য়য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾য়৾৾য়৾
। রুঝা স্ক্রীর দিঝা না বাদি শির্মা নার্বি নি বিশ্ব নি বিশ

Those are definite which involve fierce Mental affliction or faith, an object of special Qualities, anything done on a Continual basis, killing father or mother. Deeds with results which are something seen, Due to features of the object or thought; Anything which was something certain to ripen, Where completely free of the level's desire. [IV.213-20]

"Just what," one may ask, "do you mean when you mention types of deeds that are certain to ripen?" **Those** deeds **are definite** (will definitely ripen into a future experience) **which involve** any of the following:

1) fierce emotions, of either mental affliction or faith;

2) **an object of special qualities**--that is, deeds performed with respect to the Gems;

3) anything done on a continual basis; and

4) **killing** one's **father or mother**, even when this is done with meritorious intent.

"In the lines above," one may continue, "you mentioned that `one is the type with results that you see.' Can you describe this further?" **Deeds with results which are something seen** in the same life are this way **due to** special **features of the object or thought** involved.

A case of a deed which, because of the special features of the object involved, turned into the type that gives a result in the very same life would be as follows. In one of his former lives, our Teacher was once a certain monk who had mastered all three sections of the canon. There had been a steady increase in quarreling among the community of monks. One monk--who had himself committed the sections of the canon to memory--managed to bring the different sides to an agreement. This angered the other monk (the one who was a master of the canon), who made the sarcastic statement that "A woman has settled a women's quarrel." Because of this deed the monk turned into a woman in that very life, and took five hundred births thereafter as a woman as well.

An instance of a deed which, because of special features of the thought involved, turns into the type that gives a result that you see in this very life would be as follows. King Kanaka had a certain eunuch by the name of "Longwa." He met someone driving a herd of five hundred cattle and asked the man what he planned to do. "We're going to castrate them," was the reply. Overcome with compassion, Longwa managed to save all the cattle from their fate: as a result, his own organ was restored in the very same life.

$$\begin{aligned} |\widehat{\gamma}^{*} \cdot a \cdot a \cdot \widehat{\gamma}^{*} \cdot \widehat{\gamma}^{*}$$

Aside from the above, **anything which was something certain to ripen** at any particular level can also constitute a deed which gives a result that you see in the very same life, in cases **where** the person has become **completely free of** any **desire** for this **level**.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Nine

20 **Objects with Very Special Features** ากะเวลาเวล์โลเลียพร.ยู่สะตัวสารา าริณาผลาสาส์ราฐสามาพ ૡૣૢૹૻૡૢૡૡૣઌ૽ૻૢૼ૾ૢૢૼ<u>ૼ</u>ૼઽૻૻૻ૱ૡ૽૾ૢૢૼ૱ Help or harm to any of the following Leads to quick experience of a result: Anyone coming out of cessation or love, No affliction, seeing, result of destroying. [IV.221-4] ู่ได้รามายรายรายรายเล่ามา กรารการที่การาณราณรายการายาง สารณ์ทานารราวราสิริษา อุณพานาสรามิรารราชิสามัรพามิรานลิริระริ <u>ॡॕक़ॵॴॡॵॵॿॻऻय़ॵॺक़ॵड़ॖॕॖऺॖॖऺऀॖॻऀॵय़ॵख़य़ॖॵय़ॖऀख़य़ऺॵॶॖॕड़ॱॻॸॱ</u> वगुरुने केमकारुम मकारुदायायम्यादा केंम्सेंटकायासेदायवे सुमायवे าลมานารราวุฏิณาติรา) สิวติรามุมณารณิรามีราสมุณสรามิรามมาพัรมา ญ าลังงานนิ ยิงา

One may ask about the features that make an object special. **Help or harm** which you perform **to**wards **anyone** who has just **come out of cessation leads to** a **quick experience of a result**, for it is almost as if such a person has just come back from nirvana. Help and harm too towards anyone who has just come out of a meditation on immeasurable **love** or a state of one-pointed concentration where he has **no affliction** at all also leads to the speedy experience of a result. This is because such persons are helping every living being; they are involved with a willingness to accept the ultimate personal responsibility, free of any affliction; and they are totally imbued with an immeasurable kind of merit, very sharp and clear.

Help or harm done towards a person who has just come out of the path of **seeing** is another example of a deed that leads to a quick result. This is true because this person has just attained, for the first time, an unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of seeing.

Finally, beneficial or harmful acts towards a person who has just come out of the state where he achieved the **result of destroying** the enemy also lead to the quick experience of a result. The reason here is that the person has just achieved, for the first time, the unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of habituation.

Help or harm performed towards those who have just come out of a state where they have achieved one of the two results--where they need either return or not return to the realm of desire--does not though lead to a speedy result. First of all, their "new" condition of having reached an unstained state free of the objects eliminated by the path of seeing has by this time become somewhat old. Secondly, they have yet to reach the unstained state where they have just managed, for the first time, to rid themselves of the objects stopped by the path of habituation. We turn now to the third and final step in our discussion of deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. This is a presentation of the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds from which they result. Following the actual presentation we will go into some detail on the subject of mental illness.

21 Je Tsongkapa on the Consequences of Karma

The following selection is from the Great Book on the Steps of the Path, *composed by Lord Tsongkapa* (1357-1419) *and found at S5392:*

યાશુઆયારે જે ત્યાં મુખ્યત્વે આવે છે. ત્યાં મુખ્ય મુખય મુખ્ય મુખ્ય

Here is the third section, a presentation on the consequences of the various kinds of bad deeds. We proceed in three parts, beginning with what are called the "ripened" consequences.

Now each one of the ten paths of karma can itself be divided into three kinds—lesser, medium, and greater—depending on the intensity of the three poisons. The *Main Stage of Levels* states that, from the ten greater instances of killing and the rest, one is born into the hells. It says that from medium instances of each of the ten you take birth as an insatiable spirit; and from the ten lesser instances, you are born as an animal.

The *Sutra on the Ten Levels* however states the consequences of two of the kinds of instances, the lesser and the medium, in reverse of this.

The "consistent" consequences are as follows. Even if you do manage to escape the realms of misery and take birth as a human, the following respective results occur to you:

- 1) Your life is short.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on.
- 3) You have problems keeping your partner from others.
- 4) People don't believe what you say, even when you're telling the truth.
- 5) You lose friends easily.
- 6) You hear things as bad sounds.
- 7) No one listens to you.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire.
- 9) Your personality is dominated by anger.
- 10) Your personality is dominated by stupidity.

The *Chapter on the True* and the *Sutra on the Ten Levels* state that there are two such consequences for each of the ones given here; even if you do manage to take birth as a human,

- 1) Your life is short, and you get sick easily.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on, and what you do have is all just common property with others.
- 3) The people who work around you are "inconsistent," which here means unreliable, and you find yourself having a lot of competition for your partner.
- 4) No one believes what you say, even when you are speaking the truth, and others are always deceiving you.
- 5) The people around you are always fighting against one another, and have an undesirable character.
- 6) You hear many unpleasant things, and when others talk to you it always seems to you as if they want to start a fight.
- 7) No one respects what you say—no one thinks that what you say has any particular value, and you are afflicted with a lack of confidence.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire, and you are never satisfied with what you have.
- 9) You are always finding yourself without help, or never find the help you need; and you are always hurting others, or always being hurt by others.
- 10) You become a person who keeps harmful views, or a deceitful person.

Great lamas of the past have expressed the position that it is a consequence of consistent *action* where as a karmic result of killing you become someone who takes pleasure in killing and the rest. It is a consequence of consistent *experience* then when you have to undergo the results just listed.

Next is what we call the "environmental" or "dominant" consequence. Here for example the consequence of killing expresses itself in the outer world around you. Food, drink, medicine, the crops in the fields, and other such things have very little power; they are always inferior; they have little nutrition or potency; they are hard to digest, and they cause disease in you. Because of this the majority of the living beings around you die before reaching the end of a full life.

Because you have stolen, then the crops are few and far between; the crops have no power to remove hunger; they spoil; they never come up; dry spells stay on too long; it rains too much; the crops dry up, or die off.

Because you have done wrong sex, you live in a place where there is piss and shit all around, and mud and dirt and filth, and everything stinks, and everywhere seems unpleasant and distasteful.

Because you have lied, you live in a world where, when you undertake farming or some work in cooperation with other people, in the end the work fails to prosper, and the people can't work well together, and for the most part everyone is cheating one another, and is afraid, and where there are many things to be afraid of.

$$\mathcal{A}$$
 સાર્ચ તે તે સાર્ચ સાય ત્વર ત્વર ત્વર સુંદ સુંદ ત્વર સાંગ્ર સંગળ ત્વર ત્વર ત્વર સુંદ સુંદ સ્ટ સાર્ચ ત્વર ત્વર ત્વર સાય સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વય સાય ત્વય સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વર સાય ત્વર સા

Because you have split people up with your talk, the very ground in the place you live is all uneven, covered with crags and gullies, full of highs and lows, so that you can travel only with difficulty, and where you are always afraid, and there are many things to be afraid of.

Because you have spoken harsh words, the ground where you live is covered with obstacles like the trunks of fallen trees, and thorns, and stones, and clods of dirt, and lots of sharp broken pieces of glass; it's rough, and dreary; no streams, or lakes, or springs of water; the whole earth is parched, poisoned with salt and borax, burning hot, useless, threatening; a place where there are many things to fear.

Because you have talked meaninglessly, fruits refuse to grow on the trees, or they start to grow at the wrong times, never at the right times, and seem ripe when they're still not ripe, or their roots are frail, or they can't stay long; there are no places to take your leisure, no parks, no glades, no pools of cool water, and many things around to make you afraid.

Because you have coveted what others have, then each and every good thing you ever manage to find starts to get worse, and less and less, never more, each one of them, with the passing of each of the four seasons, and in every month, and even day by day.

Because you have wished bad things on others, you live in a world of chaos, where diseases spread, and evil is everywhere, and plague, and conflict, and fear from the armies of other nations; where there are many lions or leopards or other dangerous animals; where there are everywhere venomous snakes or scorpions or poison biting worms; you live surrounded by harmful spirits, and thieves or muggers, and the like.

Because you have held wrong views, then you live in a world where the single highest source of happiness is steadily disappearing from the earth; a world where people think that things that are unclean and things that are suffering are actually nice, and happiness; a world where there is no place to go, no one to help, nothing to protect you.

22 The Mind-Only School on How Mental Seeds Cause our Perceptions

The selections below are taken from the Illumination of the True Thought, *found at S5408 and written by Lord Tsongkapa:*

. . .The second part has two sections of its own: stating the position of the other school, and then denying this position. Here is the first.

This is how the presentation was made. Then those of the Mind-Only School come back, considering and then presenting a position which by itself reflects the primary belief of their entire system.

They speak first of the mental seed, the energy, from which the "mind of the eye" (which refers to the consciousness of the eye) comes forth. Another case of consciousness, as it is in the process of stopping, in the next moment plants this mental seed in the foundation consciousness. When this seed ripens later, it produces that consciousness of the eye, one which takes after the earlier one.

Consider now this energy as it exists immediately before producing the consciousness of the eye related to it; consider the energy which acts as the immediate basis for this eye consciousness. Normal people, out of ignorance, conceive of this as the physical faculty of the eye. In truth though a power of the eye which is something separate from consciousness is something that doesn't even exist. This same explanation applies to all the remaining physical faculties.

Here the cause behind the consciousness of the eye, the mental seed, is the primary factor behind it. The faculty of the eye is the component of the body that provides a contributing circumstance.

$$|227 \times 3\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2} \times \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2} \times \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}$$

Here when the physical faculty of the eye is presented as the direct cause of the consciousness of the eye, the real intent is to refer to the situation where the mental seed which produces the eye consciousness is ripening. They are not talking here of what we normally think of as the physical faculty of the eye.

Regarding this the text called *Middle and Extremes* states,

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Nine

The combination of the objects and the person, The base consciousness, is a consciousness that appears; In reality this is not the being.

Here the word "objects" refers to form and the rest, and "the person" refers to the five faculties; the lines are describing a consciousness that arises and which appears to be them, but which is actually foundation consciousness. Master Stiramati also explains the physical faculties as the object of foundation consciousness. The point then is that those of the Mind-Only School who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness believe that the physical faculties of the eye and so on are actually the condition of the foundation consciousness appearing as the physical faculties.

Once they have demonstrated that there is no such thing as physical faculties of the eye and so on that could ever be anything separate from consciousness itself, then they must show how form as well is nothing other than consciousness. To do this they give the following description. Consider now the five types of consciousness that, according to general belief, arise from the five physical faculties. It is not that there are any outside physical objects such as the color blue and so on which the consciousness has to grasp to. Rather, blue and the rest are only an appearance which occurs through the ripening of the very mental seed which was planted in the foundation consciousness and from which consciousness itself has arisen. Not realizing this fact, people look at the mind appearing as blue or whatever and accept or interpret these appearances as being outer objects.

Here is the second part [of a different] discussion [about where the Madhyamika school believes the mental seeds from karma are planted, since they do not accept the concept of foundation consciousness]. One may begin with the following question:

Suppose you deny then the existence of a foundation consciousness. Nonetheless you must accept that mental seeds from virtue or non-virtue do get planted, and that consequences do arise from the ripening of these mental seeds. After all, the autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* does state that "For time without beginning, in the suffering cycle of life, the mental seeds for things have been planted, and have then ripened, and have then been interpreted by people as the things themselves." There are as well many other quotations which mention the same thing. And it would be incorrect to say that there existed no basis or place where these mental seeds were planted. What then, according to your view, provides this place for the seeds to be planted?

According to those who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness, the thing called "afflicted mind" focuses on foundation consciousness and holds it to be "me"; they say that this foundation consciousness then is the place where the mental seeds stay. In our [Madhyamika] school too we have a similar concept; we say that the base which is stained with the mental seed is exactly that thing that you focus on with your simple, natural awareness of yourself and call "me."

Iદેં ન વદ્યા વર્યોતા બન્ના અન્ન મુખ્ય છે સુવ નયા જ્યાના જાણ પ્રાણે માલે માં માનુ માં માટે ભૂમ याक्षराम् देष्यदारेश्वादावदेष्यमाक्रम्रास्त्रीं पदेष्मविरादमुरार्दे।

One may ask the following:

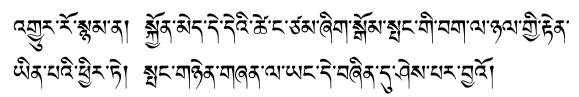
The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* states that the stream of the mind is the basis where the mental seeds are planted. How does this fit into what you have just said?

The very thing we call the simple "me" is something which results from a label being applied to the *mind*, or consciousness. It also goes on in a *stream*. From this point of view then we can also refer to it as the "stream of the mind." And even if what you mean by a "stream" is the continuation of later, similar instances of mind itself, you can say that it too is the basis which is stained by mental seeds of particular occasions.

That thing which tends to stop, and yet still stain, and then continue on in the flow of the mind is what we refer to as a 'mental seed.' The expressions 'continuity' and 'habit' and 'root' and 'mental seed' for the state of mental affliction all refer to the same thing. This is something that Listeners and Self-Made "Buddhas" are unable to eliminate even though they may already have eliminated the state of mental affliction itself through using the unstained path. It's similar to what happens with sesame butter or flowers; you may already remove these things from the scene, but the vase in which the flowers were, or the piece of cloth that the butter stained, still retain some subtle trace of them due to the previous contact.

How then could there be any sense to saying that there is another basis, a second one, on top of the one mentioned here, where other types of mental seeds, like those of virtuous deeds and non-virtuous deeds and the rest, are planted?

Here is how the mental seed for ignorance works. The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* says,

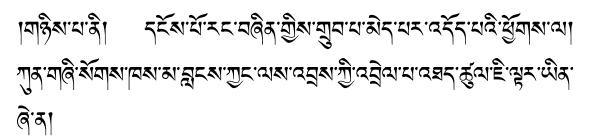


One might wonder about something else:

Let's talk about the period while you are in the "uninterrupted" stage of the path of seeing [the actual direct perception of emptiness]. I can accept that at this point the negative thoughts eliminated by this path are no longer present, but we would have to say that the negative things eliminated by the path of habituation are still there, in a dormant way. At this particular point in time, the consciousness of the mind is unstained, unaffected by the mental seed which causes the mistaken state of mind where the appearance and actuality of things are different from one another. As such none of these things could lie dormant here, due to its very quality at the time. There is no consciousness of the senses that could act as the basis for those mental seeds, and it would be improper to say that physical form could ever provide such a basis either. According to you, moreover, there's no foundation consciousness. I would have to think then that there is no basis at all where these dormant things could stay.

And yet there is no such problem, for at this point in time it is the simple "me" which is providing the basis for the dormant things eliminated by the path of habituation to stay. You can apply this reasoning as well to all the other cases involving things to be eliminated, and the antidotes which eliminate them.

24 The Middle-Way School on the Question of Where the Seeds of Karma Stay until They Give their Result



Here is the second point [of still another discussion]. One may ask the following:

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Nine

Those who believe that entities have no natural existence [meaning the Madhyamika Prasangika (or Consequence) School] do not accept the concepts of a foundation consciousness and the like; how then is it that they can still assert that all the workings of karma and its consequences are totally right and proper?

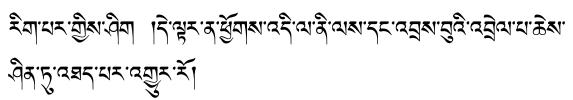
All the Buddhist schools, whether higher schools or lower schools, accept the principle that the consequences of pleasure and pain and so on arise from virtuous and non-virtuous karma or actions, even though the original karma and its eventual consequences may be separated by a very long period of time. The problem though is that, if the karma stays around during the entire period up to the point at which it gives its consequence, it would have to be unchanging. An unchanging thing though is incapable of affecting anything, and so you could never have a relationship where karma gave rise to any consequence.

From the moment after you complete a karma or deed, that deed is finished and gone. During the entire period from that point up to the point at which the consequence actually occurs, the deed no longer exists. A deed which is already gone is no longer a thing that can have any affect on anything. How then does a deed or karma ever produce any kind of consequence? Here is how we explain this problem:

Let's consider the deed or karma as it exists up to the point right after the moment in which the deed is completed; that is, let's consider the deed as it approaches its end. The energy of the deed has to be stored somewhere, and so some thinkers have invented the idea of some kind of foundation consciousness for it to stay. Others have said that there is something which is changing but neither mental nor physical, something they call "the fact of not just going away"; they say it is something that exists separately from the two types of deeds [virtue and non-virtue], and that it resembles the document written up for a loan that has to be repaid. Still others have invented the idea that there is another changing thing which is neither mental nor physical, again different from the two kinds of deeds themselves, something they call a "hold."

Others finally have invented the idea of a stream of consciousness which is stained with the mental seed of the deed. This then is why, they say, that it is no contradiction for the deed to produce its consequence later, even after a very long time. The deed or karma plants a mental seed in the foundation consciousness, and so the mental seed is the result of the deed. This mental seed continues on in a stream of similar forms until eventually it produces the consequence. Thus, they say, the consequence of the original karma is something that is produced indirectly, via a medium. This same type of idea applies to the other three positions expressed.

The first of these positions belongs to a certain group within the Mind-Only School. The second position is explained by Master Avalokitavrata to be that of the Detailist School—of a certain section other than the Kashmiri Detailists. The third position also belongs to a specific group within the Detailist School. It is not completely clear where the fourth position belongs, but since it is consistent with the ninth chapter of the autocommentary to the *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, it would appear to be an alternate belief of the Sutrists and the Kashmiri Detailists.



Although the Kashmiris do accept the idea of a "hold," they do not assert that a hold could be produced by the two types of karma as something retained by the hold. The position here though belongs to someone who does assert this, and this is the point of the phrase "according to someone."

According to someone now of the Madhyamika Consequence school, the deed or karma is not something which arises in and of itself, and so, for this very reason, neither is it something which finishes through any nature of its own. Nonetheless it is no contradiction to say that something which never finishes through any nature of its own can still produce a consequence. As such a consequence can come from a deed even if we never accept the idea of a foundation consciousness or the like.

You must understand then that this is why the two kinds of karma can already have finished in the mental continuum of any given sentient being, and yet still after a long time—even after the passing of many millions of years—these deeds can nonetheless produce their consequences "perfectly," which is to say, without any confusion. [That is, good deeds lead to pleasure, and bad deeds lead to pain, and there is never any case where this law somehow goes wrong, and good deeds lead to pain, or bad deeds to pleasure.]

Given all this, the connection between deeds and their consequences is, in this school, purely and totally correct.

The point of all this is that all four of the positions above, as they attempt to answer the problem raised, do so from a viewpoint of accepting that a deed has a beginning that exists by definition and an ending too that exists by definition. They are agreeing as well that the later condition of the deed's having ended is something that exists by definition. The Master [Chandrakirti] is stating that it is improper to answer the problem raised above by saying that, "Even though the ending of the deed is that way, it's no problem, because we believe in foundation consciousness." He is denying all these positions, for the reason that there simply doesn't even exist any beginning or ending of a deed that could occur through any nature of its own.

The Master, to demonstrate how this way of answering reflects exactly the position of the Arya [Nagarjuna], quotes the following statement from the *Root Text on Wisdom:*

Because the karma never begins, Because it has no nature of its own, And since it has never even begun, Neither then can it simply go away.

The lines are saying that, because there is no such thing as a karma that exists through its own nature, no such karma could ever have a beginning that came in and of itself. Because of this, it is completely impossible for a karma ever to end by any nature of its own. It is illogical to think of the subsequent condition of the deed's having ended and invent some idea of something that can never just go away.

25

What the Middle-Way School Means When it Says Things are Just the Results of Projection

This section [still another one] has two parts to it. First we will show how it is that objects are established through the process of projecting, and then describe what it is to grasp to true existence, wherein one holds things as existing in the opposite way. Here is the first.

The Sutra Requested by Upali includes the following lines:

A splash of pleasing flowers open their petals, Golden palaces blaze in breathtaking beauty; Look for their maker, but you'll never find him, For all of these are built of projections— The world is an invention of projections.

The verse is describing how objects are established through the process of projection, and there are as well many other statements of the Buddha that describe how every single object in the universe is nothing more than a creation of projections.

$$\begin{split} & \left[\hat{\lambda} \eta \hat{\mathbf{w}} \cdot \mathbf{u} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{z}} \eta \cdot \hat{\mathbf{w}} \cdot \eta \hat{\mathbf{w}} \cdot \eta \cdot \hat{\mathbf{z}} \right] \left[\hat{\mathbf{v}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{z}} \hat{\mathbf{w}} \hat{\mathbf{$$

ม_ีญุฉานรัฐญานพายุธญุญานาร์มาการจุราชิกา

The Sixty Verses on Reasoning say as well,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only projections.

The meaning of this verse, according to the commentary, is that none of the many worlds that exist does so through some essence of its own: none of them are anything more than products of our projections.

ุ่วสูนาณลาฏกา สิภานามิรานกาลรัราสภาลาณา ไม้ภาลาณาณัราชิราณ์รา มิสาสา เพรารทารัสารรารักานาดิจา เส้ารราชสานาญาติภาณะีสา เดิจา ฑพูรพ.ศิราริลิ ฉญิญานาณพาฏรา สิภามาพิรามาศิรสพาพิรามาติรารรา ้ส์ภานาณิรานราพิรานาชิราณิรานารารกาสา กัราณาธภานรายกานานผู้กางาน ณาสุกุสางานลิาฐุณาลูสาสสามาร์รัสังางาสูสานสาริงาร์ เดิงาสางูรงาริ พรารทารัสาสารราทารัรสีญาราร์ เริ่านาสรราณารรัสาริเพาร์

The 400 Verses says as well:

Without projections, desire and such Are nothing that can even exist; Why then would anyone with a brain Believe in reality and projection?

The commentary to the work states that-

Things that can't even exist in the absence of projections are, beyond any manner of doubt, absolutely things that cannot exist through any essence of their own: they are like a coil of rope you label with "snake."

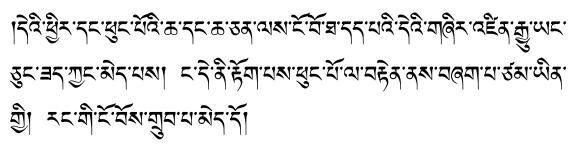
The expression "reality" here refers to something that could exist through its own essence. "Projection" is the fact that things occur through the process of projection.

When this commentary states that "desire and such" are like a piece of rope labelled "snake," it is only giving a single example; what it means to say is that each and every other existing object is as well like a rope called a snake: they are all established through the process of projection.

Here the colored pattern of the rope and the way it's coiled make it resemble a snake; and if you're in a place where you can't see it very clearly, then you start to think to yourself, "It's a snake!" The fact though is that there is nothing about the rope as a whole, nor anything about its various parts, that you could ever establish as being one kind of a snake; the snake of the rope, then, is nothing but a creation of projections.

$$|\hat{f}|^{-1}(\hat{q}_{q}, \hat{f}) = \hat{f}|^{-1}(\hat{q}_{q}, \hat{f}) = \hat{f}|^{-1}(\hat{q}, \hat$$

The same thing happens when you get the idea of "me" about the heaps, the various components to yourself. There is nothing about these components as a whole, when you consider them as a continuum in time, nor as a whole considered in a single moment in time, nor as the various parts to a whole, that you could ever establish as being any kind of "me." We'll go into this in more detail further on.



Because of this fact, and since moreover there is not the slightest thing outside of the parts or whole of the components to yourself that you could ever consider any kind of "me," this "me" is nothing more than a creation of projection, based on the components. There is no "me" which exists through any essence of its own.

26 What the Buddha Really Meant when He Said that Things were "Mind Only"

Now the Sixty Verses on Reasoning says,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only projections. If one were to end his ignorance, Then how is it that the thing that's ended, Despite our misunderstanding, could never Disappear, even in projections?

The meaning of the lines is as follows. If things existed in their very essence, then they would exist as some independent reality. If this were so, then when you finally stopped your mistaken states of mind, they would never disappear, although they should have.

The mind is the main thing; and to show this, the following explanation appears in the scripture:

The world, in the form of those who live in it, finds its very being through the power of the karma they have collected with their minds, and through the bad thoughts in their minds. All the vast multitude of worlds too, in the form of the places where these beings live, have been put there, have been produced, by the collective karma of these same beings, and no one else—by the karma within their own minds. This refers to everything up to the farthest reaches of the world, from the great disc of wind that underpins our planet up to the highest temporary heaven, the one named "Below No Other."

୲ୖ୵୲ୣ୰ଽ୶ୄୠ୲ୣ୷ୖଈ୕ଽୠ୶୷ୡ୕୵୶ୖୢଽ୷୲ୢୖ୷୷୷୷ୢଈୖ୶ୠ୲୷୳ୢୢୖୡ୲ୖ୶୶୶୶୰ୡ୕୵ୖ୵ ୡ୶୶୲ୖୖ୷୶ୖୡ୲୷୶୲ୢଌୠୖଈ୕୵୕୶୲୴ୖୡ୷୳୶ୢୖୢୠୄୖୢୢୢୢୗୣୖ୵ୖ୳୵ୡ୕୲୲୳୵୕୶୲୷ୖଈ୕ଽ୲ୠ୲୰ୡୖ୵ୠୖ ୶୵୵୵୲୳ୖଽ୕୶୲ୢୢୢୢୢୡୖ୷୶୶୳ୖୡ୲ ୖ୶୶୶୰ଌୠୖୠୢ୲ୢଌୠୖଈ୕୵ୖୠ୲ୢ୲୴୶ୄୖୢୢୢୗୠ୵୳ୡ୕୲ ୲ୖ୵୲୰ୖୖଵୠୄ୵ୢୄ୕୵୶୲ଵୠ୲୴୵ଽୖୠଈ୲୳୵ୄୠୡ୕୲

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Nine

On this subject, the intricate patterns on a peacock and other such objects are produced by each one's personal karma. The intricacies of the petals and colors of a lotus flower and other such things are produced by the collective karma of living beings. You can apply these principles to all other cases as well.

मासुदरू सेंग १९६मा हेव महिला द्वत सेंद मी अला भीव सेव महिला मुनि मही ลิมลาร์มาฏิภาุลุการาพการครามลามิมลาร์มาฏิญฤมาณกรารัฐราฏิวยิญ हेव सेन भा के के के

As the verse goes,

It's through the karma of living beings That the great dark mountains arise in their time. It's like the hells, and the heavens above, And swords, and jewels, and trees in the world.

The great books of the Mind-Only School also discuss whether the two worlds [of beings and the place they live] are produced by karma that is collective or not, and so it's not as though the system of the Mind Only denies the existence of the world where beings live.

And so it is spoken, that all the living beings of the universe are produced by karma. And if somehow you could stop all minds, then karma itself would cease to be, for it is only through mind and what comes along with it that

karma can be collected. Therefore karma itself depends on the mind. So the statement from the *Sutra of the Ten Levels*, where it says that there is no great master of all things, and no great maker of all things, conveys one meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only"; the point is that there is no other creator of things than the mind itself.

It is stated in scripture as well that each and every one of the twelve links in the chain of interdependence depends on a single thing: the mind. These references convey yet another meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only." Here the point is that mind is the main thing. The former scriptural references are putting their point in a negative way, and the latter references are putting their point in a positive way.

Thus we can see that it's the mind which is the one single principal cause that sets all life into motion. The principal cause is not something other than the mind. Therefore when the sutras speak of "mind only," they are making the point that mind is the main thing, and not matter. Although we do of course admit that physical matter exists, this matter is not the one prime creator of sentient beings in the way that mind is.

Therefore all these scriptural references are denying that the opposite of the mind, something other than the mind, could be the creator. They are not though saying that there are no outside physical objects at all.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Ten: How Karma Works, Part Two

27 On the Cause of Our Suffering

The following selections are from the *Overview of the Middle Way*, composed by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).

Let us first consider enemy destroyers of the Listener or Self-Made Buddha type. Aren't you saying then that, like the non-Buddhists, they fail to eliminate all the widespread mental afflictions that operate in all three realms? Because isn't it true that they have failed to achieve the path which is directly incompatible, in the way it holds its object, with the root of all these afflictions; that is, the tendency to conceive of things as existing through some nature of their own? And this is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that things have no nature of their own.

Consider these same enemy destroyers. It is true that they have not yet realized, entirely, the fact that the person has no self nature. This is because they have yet to perceive directly the fact that the person has no nature. This in itself is true as well, for they are still chained by total misperceptions, in such a way that they will never be able to root out the object that they think they see when they hold the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing from its own side. And this too is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that the parts to the person have no nature of their own.

The first of our logical statements above is always true. For suppose that a person is still unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing through some nature of its own. As long as he goes on this way, then he will continue to find himself unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the thing which gets the label, the "me," as existing from its own side. And as long as he continues with this, then by the power of this misperception he will continue to collect karma. And as long as he collects karma, then he will continue to spin around in this wheel of suffering life.

28

Lord Maitreya's Six Steps

This then is the ultimate idea within the root text and the commentary of the *Higher Line*, [written by Maitreya and Asanga]:

Due to the mental seeds for the two kinds of tendencies to grasp to some selfnature, these two tendencies themselves spring up.

Due to the fact that they have sprung up, an impression with a wrong way of looking at things springs up, and some things seem as though they are pleasant from their own side, and other things seem as though they are unpleasant from their own side.

Due to the fact that this impression has sprung up, the emotion of liking springs up, where you focus on a pleasant object and don't want to lose it. And the emotion of disliking springs up, where you focus on an unpleasant object and want to avoid it.

This then forces you to collect karma.

And karma forces you to spin around in the wheel of suffering life.

And this is why the Buddhas have said that this suffering life is something forced on us because we have not been able to see, directly, the essence of the Ones Gone Thus [that is, emptiness].

ૡૢૡઃઽ૽ૺઽઽઽ૾ૢ૾૾ઽૺ૱ૡ૾ૼઽ૱૱૱૱૱ૡૼ૱૱ૡૼ૱૱ૡ૽ૼ૱

Here we will analyze the statement [from *Entering the Middle Way*, by Master Chandrakirti (650 AD)] where it says, "...The mind of a craving spirit as well, which sees a stream of water as pus." One may begin with the following question:

Let's consider the objects of the following states of mind: the visual consciousness of a craving spirit where a river of water looks like pus and blood; the visual consciousness of a person with a kind of cataract where a clean white porcelain basin looks like a hair has fallen into it; and that kind of meditation where you visualize skeletons—where you imagine that the entire surface of the earth is covered with the bones of corpses. Are all these objects completely equivalent, as far as being something that exists or doesn't exist?

In reply we will first set forth a relevant passage, and then we will explicate the passage. Here is the first. The text called *The Abbreviation of the Greater Way* says,

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

Insofar as craving spirits, animals, Humans, and pleasure beings, each according To their class, have differing perceptions Of a single thing, we say it has no reality.

Asvabhava, the venered layman with lifetime vows, has explained the passage. His words include the following:

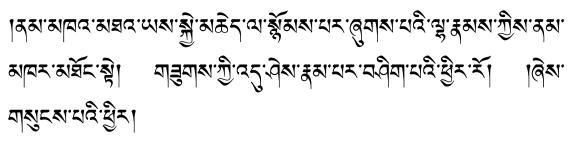
ฏิพ.สุภาเฐภาณาพัญพานพาฦกาวราพฮ์กาวารกา

When they look at *a single thing*, a stream of water, each one sees what the ripening of his particular karma forces him to see. A *craving spirit* sees the river full of pus and blood and the like.

An *animal* or such, on the other hand, thinks of this same water as a place to stay, and makes his home there.

มิ สมมาฏิมาสิ มีการาวารา รายานารา กมิณาสลิ สราร์ สมมาสา विश्वर देंग सिंगानीर हो। रियावहीयांग्

Humans look at the same thing and perceive it as water—sweet, clear, and cool. They drink of it, they wash themselves with it, and they swim in it.



Those pleasure beings who are wrapped in deep meditation at the level we call the "realm of limitless space" see the water as empty space, for their ability to conceptualize physical matter has dissolved altogether.

30 Arguments on the Glass of Liquid

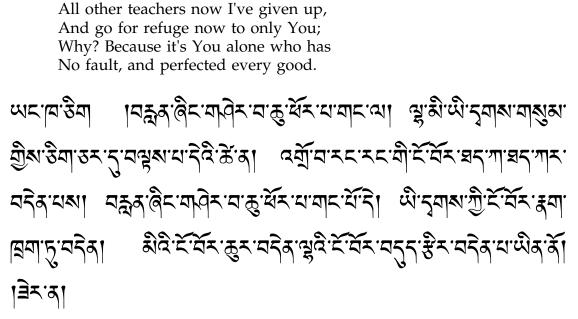
Here secondly we will explain the meaning of the text we quoted first. We proceed in three steps: disproving the position of others, establishing our own position, and then refuting their rebuttal. Here is the first.

Someone may make the following claim:

Given the statements that have come above, the fact is that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other.

Well then, you must be suggesting that the system of the Buddha is all the same as the system of every non-Buddhist belief, that there is no difference in their correctness at all. And you must be saying too that we could never state that our Teacher was the highest teacher, and that the teachers of the non-Buddhists are lesser.

And you must be suggesting all this, for you have claimed that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other. Now if you should agree that none of the differences mentioned above exist, we must reply that they do, for as the verse says:



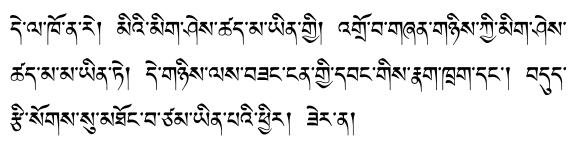
Someone else might make the following claim:

Suppose a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit sit down together and look at a glass filled with water: the thing that we define as "wet and flowing." Since to the perceptions of each different type of being it is real, the glass full of wet and flowing water is in reality pus and blood to the eyes of the craving spirit, and in reality water to the eyes of the human, and in reality ambrosia to the eyes of the pleasure being.

We ask you then a question: in the situation you've just described, is it that the visual consciousness of all three beings are a valid perception, or is it that only one or two of them are a valid perception? Suppose you say all three are valid. Well then, the glass of wet and flowing water must be full of something that is all three different things: pus and blood, and each of the others. And then too it must be possible for there to be multiple and yet still valid perceptions which see one thing in two completely incompatible ways. And finally there must be such a thing as a valid perception which correctly perceives that the glass is filled with something which is simultaneously water and yet not water. Why so? Because, according to your view, the three differing cases of visual consciousness possessed by the three different beings would all have to be valid perception.

And if you try to agree to these absurdities, you are wrong, for the quality of being pus and blood is incompatible with the quality of being either one of the other two substances mentioned. Moreover, the quality of being water and the quality of not being water are directly incompatible in such a way that, if something exists and lacks one of these qualities, it must then possess the other.

31 Which of the Perceptions are Valid?



Someone may answer with the following claim:

In the case mentioned, the visual consciousness of the human is a valid perception, but the visual consciousnesses of the other two types of beings are not valid perception. These latter two see something like the pus and blood, and the ambrosia, only because their karma (which is good in one case, and bad in the other) forces them to.

Well then, according to you, the visual consciousness of the human wouldn't be valid perception either. Because isn't it true that the human sees the water only because his karma (which in this case is halfway between the good and the bad just mentioned) forces him to? Moreover, aren't you implying then that there is no such thing as a valid tactile consciousness, or a valid auditory consciousness, in the mental stream of any being who is not a human? Because aren't you saying that there's no such thing as a valid visual consciousness in the mental stream of any such being? Certainly you are, for you believe your original position to be correct. And suppose now that you do agree that such beings can have no such valid consciousnesses.

Aren't you then implying that these beings never have any case where they are able to reach a definite conclusion about something, or to analyze an object? And if so, aren't you implying that there could never be a case where one of these beings could recognize another? Of course you are, given your position.

32 The Truth of the Glass of Liquid

Here secondly is the section where we establish our own position. Now suppose three different types of beings—a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit, each with their own karma—sit down together and look upon a glass filled with water, the thing we define as "wet and flowing." The glass of water is not at this point one thing which is simultaneously three different objects. Neither is it necessary in this situation for there to be three identical valid perceptions. And when the glass full of wet and flowing water occurs, it occurs with three different, distinct parts to it.

It is not though the case that, from the time it first started, the glass of water came with the three different parts, or that they stay with the glass of water until it eventually ends. What happens is that one of the parts of the glass filled with wet and flowing water provides a material cause, and the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being blood and pus.

Another part of the glass of water again provides a material cause, and the karma of the human provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being water.

Yet another part of the glass of water provides a material cause, and the karma of the pleasure being provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being ambrosia, and so on.

At this point, the glass full of wet and flowing water is something with three different parts. Nonetheless, it is not the case that all three different beings see all three parts. The craving spirit is forced by the bad karma he has collected to see the glass of water as pus and blood; and he doesn't see the other two things. One should understand that a similar case holds with the latter two types of beings.

What we just described as happening is only with reference to where a glass of something wet and flowing is an object shared by the three different beings, as they look at it together. When the craving spirit himself though picks up the glass in his hand and begins to partake of its contents, the glass of liquid is no longer something that exists with three different parts. Since at this point

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

it is something that the craving spirit is experiencing exclusively, its continuation starts being pus and blood.

How the glass of liquid exists originally all depends on the particular outer world from where it has been taken, for each of the three different beings has a different outer world, depending on the specific karma he himself has collected. If the glass of liquid were sweet, cool water taken from the world of humans—a world created by the specific karma of the human in the group—then that would be its original condition, and so on.

33 Who Made Hell?

અમ્યાયજીમાં વિર્મે માથ્યુ મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે માય્યુ માર્ગ્યુ મુશ્રે મુશ્ય મુશ્રે મુર મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્રે મુશ્

Someone again may come and claim the following:

Let's consider once more this situation where three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. Isn't it true that there is no actual pus and blood there? Because isn't it true that the burning steel and so on in the hells is only something that appears to a person who is born there, but that there is nothing there which actually is these objects? Because isn't it true that there is no one at all who went and made all these kinds of things? And isn't this a fact, because doesn't the text of *The Bodhisattva's Way of Life* say:

> Who made the burning steel that acts As the floor of the world of hell? Where did all the mass of flames You find there all come from?

The Able Ones have spoken that Everything there like this Is nothing at all other than The mind of what's non-virtue.

$$\widetilde{\mathfrak{A}}$$
 $\widetilde{\mathfrak{A}}$ ર્ગરે તેરે તે સુગ્રાચ્ય સે ગાય સે ગાય સે ગાય તે ગાય

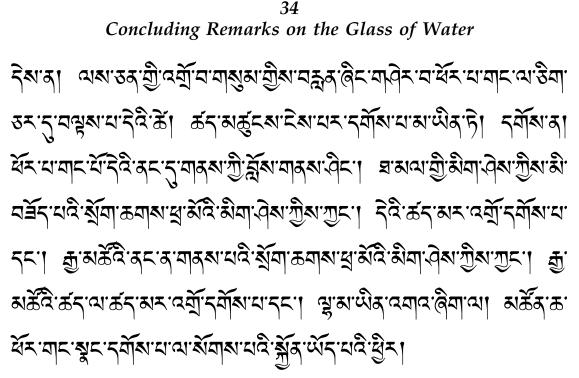
Yet there is no such problem. The point of this quotation is to say that the burning steel and so on are not something that was created by some unchanging creator being or something like that; by someone who thought it over first and then created them. The lines are meant to show us that what really made all these things is the non-virtuous states of mind had by the beings who have to take birth there.

If this were not the case, then consider those holy people who lead their lives following the ten virtues, and who are then born into the higher realms, and

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

then experience the pleasures of these realms. And consider too those miserable people who lead their lives following the ten non-virtues, and who are then born into the lower realms, and then experience the sufferings of these realms. Is the difference between them just that they are having some better or worse kind of misperception, and not whether they are experiencing pleasure or pain? This would have to be the case, if your reasoning were correct.

Suppose you agree that it is only a matter of better or worse misperceptions. Are you saying then that the pleasures of the higher realms don't even exist, and that the pains of the lower realms don't even exist? You must be, if you agree this way.



In conclusion now, let us consider again these three kinds of beings, each with their different karma, as they sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. It's not necessarily true that they must all have valid perceptions which are identical. If they did, then the three beings looking at the glass of water would have to think of the water as a place to live, in the way that a creature living in water would. The three beings as well would have to see the water in the same way that microscopic organisms living in the water, little beings imperceptible to normal visual consciousness, see it with their own visual consciousness. Then too the visual consciousness of microscopic organisms living in the depths of the ocean would have to be a valid perception towards the entire extent of the sea. And certain kinds of near-gods too would have to see weapons as glasses of water, and on and on; the problems raised would be many.

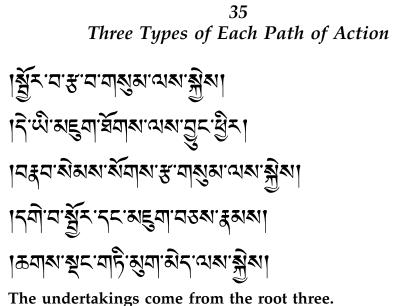
Again consider this same situation. Even though it is not necessarily true that the valid perceptions are identical, it is possible for there to be three valid perceptions here which happen to be identical. This is because, as we have already established logically, there can be a case where by the force of karma three different objects, each one confirmed by a valid perception, start to exist. And since this is possible, then it is equally possible that, by the force of karma, three equivalent valid perceptions of a vessel could start to exist as well.

$$a$$
 ગાભ એ ગામ પ્રવેગ્વર્મે સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુમ્રા સ્વાગ્ય સંગ્લામુમ્રા સ્વાગ્ય સંગ્લામુમ્રા સ્વાપ્ત સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુ સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુમ્રા સંગ્લામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગ્લામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગ્લામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલામુ સંગ સંગલામુ સંગલા સંગલામુ સંગલા

Generally speaking, each of the three objects mentioned—the pus and the other two—are things of the type that block other objects from entering into the space which they themselves occupy. It is no contradiction though to say that,

in this situation where the beings are looking this way, they are not objects such that they block other things from entering into the space they occupy. This is true for the following reason.

A central mountain of the world which is square in shape, and a central mountain of the world which is round in shape, and the like, are objects such that they block other things from entering the space they occupy. Nevertheless, it is possible for both these things to occupy the space taken up by a single central mountain of the world. A red-hot ball of steel is something that's hot, but consider what happens when a person touches it after he has used the mantra of steel on his hand. The sensation that he feels is not a sensation of heat; on the contrary, it is a sensation of something not heat.



The undertakings come from the root three. Because they occur just subsequent to them, Coveting and the rest come from these three. The virtues, with undertaking and conclusion, From no desire, dislike, ignorance.

[IV.272-6]

ાગાઉચાયની અર્ડે અચ સેંગાગાઈ ગગામું ગરે ગામું ગરે ગામું અર્ડે ગામ સુચાયના સુ સુચાયના સ Now sutra states that there are three types of killing: that which comes from desiring something, that which comes from disliking something, and that which comes from being ignorant of things. One may ask then whether the various paths of action are each brought to completion by these three roots of all non-virtue.

The answer is that they are not. The statement from sutra was made only with reference to the fact that **the "undertaking"** stages of deeds such as killing **come from the root three.**

One may next ask for a description of the process by which the "undertaking" stages of the ten non-virtues come from the three roots of non-virtue. Let's start with the act of killing. The "undertaking" stage of this type of act comes from desire in a case where, for example, you take the life of another being in order to get its flesh to eat. An instance where this stage comes from dislike would be where you kill your enemy. And a case where the undertaking stage comes from being ignorant of things would be where you kill someone like your father or mother out of some meritorious intent.

Next let's consider the act of stealing. An example of the "undertaking" stage for this act coming from desire would be where you steal something of value out of a longing for it. A case where this stage comes from dislike would be, for example, where you steal something of value from your enemy. An

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

example of the "undertaking" stage for stealing coming from ignorance is exemplified by the description that "It's religion when a Brahmin steals." าลรัฐานสาณีทานราทุณสานาลรัฐาสทุลาณสารฏิสานาสิโ สทุลานลารู้เสลา ૡૻૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻૡઽૡૢૻૡૻૻ૾ૡૢૻૡૢૻ૾ૡૢૻૡૡૹૻૹ૾ૢૣ૽ૼૹૡૻૹ૽૾ૺ૾૾ૡૡ૱ૹૢૡઌૡ૾ૡ૽ૡૡ૽ૺ૱ૡૻ ลลิ่มานรู้รานหาลูเป มหิงพุ่มเลงรู้โพนรูป พระมีเ มายุ่มเรา เ สพาศพัพาณิศพานราฐสามาระา สูรัศพาระา แพรระวรราสพาสมพา ઙ૬'૾૽૾ૢૢૺૼ૱ઌ૱ૣૢ૽ૡૼ૽ૡૢ૾૱ઌ૱ૻૢૡૼ

Sexual misconduct that comes from desire would be a case where, for example, one engages in some wrong kind of sexual activity because of lustful feelings. Sexual misconduct born from dislike would be represented by engaging in sexual intercourse in order to harm someone else's reputation. Sexual misconduct that you do from ignorance is typified in the statement that "Sex should be enjoyed by everyone together, like the flowers and the fruits of the earth, like a banquet ready for the feast, like a pool in the river, like a public road."

Coveting and the rest of the three misdeeds of thought **come from these three** roots of non-virtue **because they occur just subsequent to them**--to these three roots. **The** ten **virtues**, and here we consider them **with** all their various stages (**undertaking** and **conclusion**, as well as actual commission), come **from** the states of possessing **no desire** for something, no **dislike** for a thing, and no **ignorance** of things.

This brings us to our third point, a detailed discussion of non-virtuous paths of action. We present first the way these paths are committed, the their individual definitions, and finally the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."

36 How Non-Virtues are Completed

Taking life, malice, and harsh speech are Brought to their completion by dislike. Sexual misconduct, coveting, and Stealing are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views by ignorance of things; The rest accepted as completed by three.

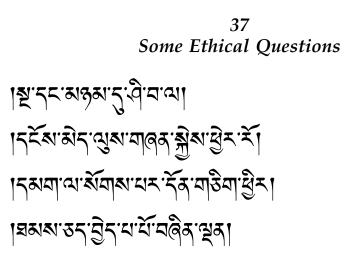
[IV.277-82]

। ମୁନ୍ଦ ସିଂଶି। ଦିଂଶ ଭାମସା ସାଧ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ଦ ସାନ୍ଦ ସାହାର ଅନ୍ଧର୍ମ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତ ଅନ୍ମ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ ଅନ୍ତର୍ମ୍ବ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍ଭ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ତର୍କ୍

One may ask just what it is that brings each of the different non-virtues to completion. Three of them—taking life, malice, and harsh speech—are brought to their completion by the emotion of dislike.

Another three—the non-virtues of **sexual misconduct**, **coveting**, **and stealing**—**are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views** are brought to completion **by** an **ignorance of things**, for mistaken views spring from a deep-seated lack of understanding.

The "rest"—which refers to the three of lying, divisive speech, and meaningless talk—are **accepted as** being **completed by** all **three** poisons of the mind. Such actions motivated by desire, for one example, would be brought to their completion by desire.



There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born. Because their goal's the same in a war or whatever, All possess it as much as the one who commits it. [IV.285-8]

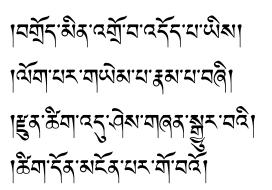
"Suppose," one may begin, "that a person takes a weapon and delivers a blow to someone else which is sure to kill him, but then this murderer himself happens to **die**, either **before** his victim **or together** with him--at the same time. Can we say then that the **actual** "commission" **stage** of a full path of action has occurred **for** such a murderer, or not?"

The answer is that **there is no** occurrence of this stage for such a person. In the first place, the stage cannot occur before the victim dies; in the second place, where the murderer dies at the same time as his victim, **another body** of the killer **has been born**. There is no actual commission because the body never went through the stage of undertaking this act towards the victim in question.

One may raise another question: "Suppose a group of people are engaged in a war or similar activity, and one of these people kills someone from the other side. Does a path of action occur only for the one person who actually did the killing?" It does not. **Because** they are engaged **in** the **war** (**or whatever** activity it may be) for **the same** common **goal**, all the people involved come to possess a full path of action, just **as much as the one who commits it**.

Next we present the definition of each individual non-virtue. We start with the "root" non-virtues, continue to the "four expressions," and end with the six "branch" non-virtues.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten



Taking life is killing another being Purposely, and without a mistake. Stealing is to take possession of Another's wealth by means of force or stealth. Sexual misconduct, of four types, Engaging in improper kinds of sex. Lying's when the meanings of one's words Are understood, a wrong impression given.

[IV.289-96]

"What," one may ask, "is the basic nature of each of the ten non-virtues?" The **taking** of **life is** defined as **killing another being purposely, and without a mistake.** The word "purposely" is meant to indicate that there is no problem like where the being in question has died but there was no intent.

The words "without a mistake" are meant to indicate that no "actualcommission" stage of an act occurs in a case of mistaken identity; for example, in a case where you undertake to kill John but instead kill Joe because you have mistaken him for John. The word "another," finally, is meant to indicate that no "actual-commission" stage occurs either in an instance where one takes his own life.

Stealing is to take possession of another's wealth, purposely and without a mistake, whether it be **by means of** superior **force or** by **stealth**—undetected. **Sexual misconduct** is **engaging in kinds of sex** which are **improper** to perform, purposely and with no mistaken identity.

$$\begin{split} & \Pi[\alpha]_{\mathcal{A}} = \Pi[\beta]_{\mathcal{A}} = \Pi[\beta]_{\mathcal{A$$

This sexual misconduct is **of four** different **types**, as the number of the following list each constitutes one of its forms:

- sex with someone else's wife or with a woman who, although she is not another person's wife, is too closely related to oneself—his mother, or sister, or any female related to one up to seven generations past;
- 2) sex with a woman, even is she is one's wife, using an improper part of her body—her mouth or anus;
- 3) sex in an improper place—out in the open or in the environs of a shrine or temple; and
- 4) sex at an improper time—while a baby is still nursing from the woman, or when she is pregnant, or during the period that she is observing the one-day layman's vow.

Lying is when the meanings of one's spoken words are understood by the other person involved, and a wrong impression has been given him-purposely, and without any mistaken identity.

39 Six "Branch" Non-Virtues
<u>।स</u> ्रस्य में भाषती प्रति की स्वार्थ के स
) ঈব:মাঁনঝ:ডব:মী:মাঝঝ:মী:রূমা
ો જેવા ફુ વ મેં ને સે ક્રુન ય
જિંત સેંદશ અનગાત ગાય જેના
। শালব নি নি নেশ শালব দিব নি
।মি [.] মাৰুমান্মু, ২২. স্ক্ৰিশ্বমান মঞ্জিমা
เจลูสาวชั้งเรสาวติสาวสุวาพิมพาสิโ
নির্মান্যমান্তব স্ত্রী র্ব স মে ক বামা
দার্বি-'শিষ্মমান্যমান্য বিজ্ঞান্তর আন্থন দা
17मो रन्यो के र सु या
าณ์ฤานา หานานใจ

Divisive speech, the words of a mentally Afflicted state meant to split up others. Harsh speech is that which is unpleasant; Meaningless, really every afflicted. Others, every other afflicted type like Flattery for gain, a song, a show. Like too wrong commentaries. Coveting Wrong desire for another's wealth. Harmful intent, hating a living being; Mistaken view, the idea that neither virtue Nor non-virtue even exists.

[IV.301-11a]

Divisive speech consists of **words** which are spoken purposely, without any mistake, and in a **mentally afflicted state**; they are **meant to split up others** who are friends, and their meaning should be understood by the other person.

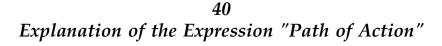
Harsh speech consists of unpleasant words which are spoken purposely, and without any mistake; their meaning to should be understood by the other person.

"Meaningless speech" really refers to every case of words spoken in an afflicted state of mind. Other groups say that what "meaningless speech" actually refers to is every afflicted type of the spoken word other than those three already mentioned. They say cases would be like a monk's engaging in the improper livelihood of flattering someone for the purpose of some gain, or else singing a song out of desire.

Still other cases would be where the monk told stories to entertain others at **a show** put on by some performer, or **too** where he began reciting some **wrong commentary** written by a non-Buddhist.

Coveting consists of a **wrong** (that is, an improper) **desire for another's wealth**, which leads to a wish that one make it his own. **Harmful intent** is the desire to hurt another **living being**, a desire which comes from the attitude of **hating** him. And **mistaken view** is **the idea that neither virtue nor non-virtue even exists**.

Next we discuss the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."





In them, Three are paths, seven deeds as well.

[IV.311b-12]

। ମକ୍ଷ୍ୟାସ୍ୟ ନି ସହୁସିଂଦ୍ଦିଂ ସଂହିଦ୍ଧି ଅନ୍ୟା ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍ମାର୍ଥ୍ୟ ଅନ୍

One may ask why the expression "path of action" is used **in** reference to "**them**"--to the group of ten just listed. The name derives first of all from the fact that the **three** involved with thought **are paths** by which the "action" or deed of mental movement is expressed. Moreover, the **seven** involved with body and speech are action or **deeds** themselves, **as well** as paths through which mental movement is expressed. Thus they are all "paths of action."

41 The Parts of a Karmic Act

For the next selections, we return to Je Tsongkapa's Great Book on the Steps of the Path.

Here is the first. One may ask, "How do you define the act of killing?" The *Abbreviation* says that five parts are involved: the object, the conception, the thinking, the bad thought, and the conclusion. These five can be shortened into four: the middle three can be included into the thinking, and we can add the stage of undertaking; this makes the presentation easier, and in no way violates the intention of the original text.

Now the object for killing is a sentient being: anything with life. The *Levels of Practitioners* does state "another living being," but is only referring to the fact that, when the murderer is murdering himself, there is a wrong deed of undertaking, but not one of completion.

The part of the thinking has three components of its own. Conception can be of four different types: to conceive of the object, say a living being, as being a living being; to conceive of a living being as something other than a living being; to conceive of something other than a living being as being other than a living being, and to conceive of this same thing as a living being. The first and third types of conception here are unmistaken; the second and fourth are mistaken.

This is a particular feature of the motivation. Suppose, for example, that you think to yourself, "I only want to kill John," and undertake the deed. Then you mistake Joe for John, and kill Joe. In this sort of case, there is no "actual-commission" stage; so we can see that, for this stage, the conception you have must be unmistaken. If on the other hand you undertake the deed with some general kind of motivation, if you think to yourself, "I'll kill anyone I happen to meet," then this detail of the conception having to be unmistaken need not be complete. You should understand that this point applies to the other nine as well.

क्रेंब केंदरूपाय है। दुया या शुक्रा या मा रहा रहे ।।

The second component of the thinking is the bad thought involved. In this case, it can be any of the three poisons.

A third component is the motivation; here, it is the wish to kill.

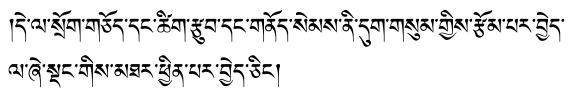
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

Here are the different aspects of the undertaking. As far as the one who undertakes the deed, it doesn't matter whether you perform it yourself, or get someone else to do it for you, it's all the same. The essence of the undertaking is when the deed is initiated, either with some kind of weapon, or poison, or spell, or whatever the case may be.

The conclusion occurs when, due to this undertaking of the deed, the other person dies, either at the time of the undertaking, or later on. As the *Treasure House of Knowledge* says,

There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born.

42 The Motivation for Negative Karma



Three of the ten—killing, harsh words, and harmful intent—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, and are brought to a conclusion by disliking.

Three of them—stealing, sexual misconduct, and coveting—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but are brought to a conclusion only by desire.

Three more—lying, divisive speech, and meaningless speech—can be initiated and brought to a conclusion by all three.

One of the ten—wrong views—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but is brought to a conclusion only by dark ignorance.

The movements of the mind are an action (karma) but not a path of action. The seven of body and speech are both an action and—because they are the basis in which the movement of the mind engages—are also a path of action. The three of coveting and so on are a path of action but not themselves action (karma).

43 How Most Basic Virtue is Lost

We return now to the commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama:

Most basic lost by the view they don't exist; Taken in the desire, had from birth. Through the one denying cause and effect, And through all. In stages, among humans, Lost by those who are male or female, by the Intellectual. This is not to have it.

[IV.313-8]

One may ask just what kind of non-virtue can make one lose his most basic virtue. The **most basic** virtue that a person possesses is **lost by the view** that certain important objects **don't** even **exist**.

One may next ask how the process occurs. Most basic virtue which is **taken in** by **the** realm of **desire** can be lost, but not that which is taken in by the form or formless realms. This is because the types of views required can never appear in the mental streams of the beings of these realms.

Even among the most basic virtues included in the realm of desire, only those which one **had from birth** can be lost--never those which have been acquired by applying some efforts in practice. This is because these latter types of virtue are gone by the time the mistaken views involved have even reached a minor stage of minor intensity. They have been lost because the hold retaining them was lost.

As for the type of mistaken view involved, a person loses his most basic virtue **through the one denying** the principles of **cause and effect**. It is not however

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

the view that realized beings do not exist which causes one to lose his most basic virtues.

Now some make the claim that views involving unstained phenomena or levels which are not comparable cannot cause a person to lose his most basic virtues. The fact though is that this virtue can be lost **through all** the forms of this view: through those that focus on levels that are comparable or those which are not; through those that focus on unstained phenomena or on those with stain.

How exactly does the loss occur? Some claim that a person loses his most basic virtue all at once, the same way he loses all the undesirable objects that the path of seeing eliminates, once he gains this path. What actually happens though is that the virtue is lost **in stages**, the same way one loses the undesirable objects eliminated by the path of habituation.

One may next ask what kind of being can lose his basic virtue. Such a loss can occur **among humans** of the three continents, but not among other types of beings. The afflicted mental capacity of hell beings lacks the necessary stability, and the same lack of stability characterizes the non-virtuous thoughts of humans on the continent of Terrible Sound. Pleasure beings in the realms of desire and form are beings who see the three conditions directly; the principles of cause and effect are evident to them therefore, just after their birth.

Even among humans, basic virtue is **lost by those who are male or female--**not by those who have lost their sexual organ, or who never had one. This is because non-virtuous thoughts in the minds of such beings are never very stable.

Humans in general can be divided into two types: **the** more **intellectual**, and the more sensual. It is the former of the two that can lose this virtue, for they are capable of sustained intellectual activity marred by mental afflictions.

The basic nature of **this** loss or what we call "cut-off" of a person's most basic virtue **is** simply **not to have it.**

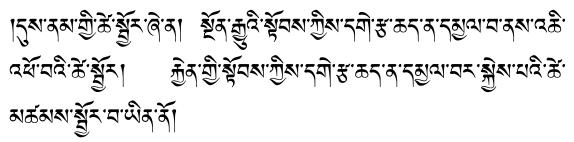
44 How Most Basic Virtue is Regained

Regained by suspecting, view there are; Not in this, when immediate's done.

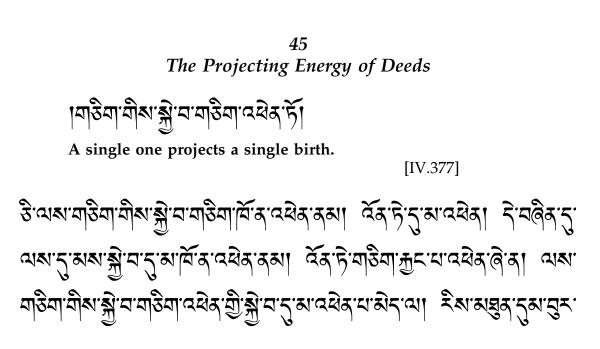
[IV.319-20]

ૡ૽ૺૼ૱ૢૢૢૢૢૣૣૢૣૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡ૾ૺૼૼ૱ૢૢૢૢૢૢૣૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡ૾ૢૢૢૼૼ૱૱૱ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૺ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱ ૡ૾ૢૢૢૢૢૢૼૼ૱૱૱ૢૢૢૢૢૺૺૺૢ "What," one may ask, "can help a person regain his most basic virtue after he has lost it?" This virtue can first be **regained** simply **by suspecting** that the principles regarding deeds and their results may actually exist. It can also be regained by gaining the correct **view**, whereby one actually perceives that **there** really **are** such principles.

One may ask whether it is always certain that a person will be able to regain his most basic virtue in the same life that he lost it. The answer is that he does **not** regain the virtue **in this** same life **when** he has **done** any of the **"immediate"** type of wrong deeds.



"When then," one may ask, "does such a person regain his basic virtue?" If he originally lost this virtue because of some main cause, then the person regains it once he dies and migrates out of his hell birth. If on the other hand it was only some secondary factor that made him lose the virtue, then he regains it when he takes his hell birth.



Does a single deed project but a single birth, or many different births? And do a number of deeds project a number of births, or just a single birth? The answer is that **a single** deed **projects a single birth;** it cannot project a number of births. And since they would function to project a whole group of similar births, a number of deeds on the other hand is never something that projects but a single birth. This by the way is all the Detailist system.

าลังสาสาณานั่งกรายหรายสายสิ่งหรังเพลา

Now someone may object that this description contradicts the following quotation from the *Sutra of Sovereignty*—

The elder, Aniruddha, spoke to the monks as follows:

"Venerable monks, I once took a birth in Varanasi, as a poor man whose job it was to collect straw for use as fuel. The poor man made the traditional offerings of food to a Self-Made Buddha by the name of Tengnesam [?], who was also known as `the one with the top center part of his head protruding like a *takar* flower.'

"My one act of giving away these offerings ripened into a birth as a pleasure being in the Land of the Thirty-Three. I was born there a total of seven times, and then took another seven births as a Wheel Emperor. And still it continues now, with my present birth into the wealthier class of the Shakyas."

Yet there is no contradiction: the process was as follows. His offerings brought the poor man the good fortunes of a happier birth; later, he recalled what had brought him this state. These recollections themselves brought him still further merit. Thus although we can say that the one act of merit brought him such and such different births, what we really mean is that he achieved these births through a process that began with the one act. It's like saying "I got rich on a single *dong-tse* [an amount of money]" when what you really did was start with a single *dong-tse* and turn it over in a great many business deals until eventually you became wealthy.

You could also say that the poor man started with the one instance of offering food and that it caused numerous instances of gladness and rejoicing over the act; these are themselves deeds consisting of a movement of the mind, and the many births can be said to have resulted from them.

46 The Finishing Energy of Deeds

ૡ૽ૻઽૼૹૻૡૻૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૹ૽ૻૡ૽૿૱ૻૻૡ૽ૻ૱ૻ

Those that act to finish them off are many.

[IV.378]

It is but a single energy of deeds that projects a birth having a nature consistent with the deed; **those** deeds though **that act to finish off** the finer details of this future life **are many**. A master painter for example can sketch out the canvas with a single piece of chalk, and then a number of other people can come and fill it in with various different colors.

Any given group of people is similar in being human, but some of them who've had the details of their lives finished by virtuous deeds will have more attractive bodies, all their senses complete, greater material wealth, freedom from illness, positions of greater authority, and so on. Others in the same group who've had the details of their lives finished by non-virtuous deeds will have bodies with a repulsive appearance and so on.

Thus we can say that all four combinations between the two are possible: projection of a life by virtue but finishing by non-virtue, the reverse, a case where both are virtue, and a case where both are non-virtue. An example of the first would be persons born as pleasure beings or humans but who possessed certain sufferings.

An illustration of the second would be either the "Lord of All Things"—the Lord of Death—or the kings of the serpent-like *nagas*, those like the "Prince of Opulence." An example of the third combination would be "Hundred Offerings"—lord of the great pleasure beings. And a case of the final combination would be the beings in the lowest hell, known as "No Respite."

The Sutrists and others assert though that there are many explanations, in a number of different sutras, that a single deed can project multiple rebirths. Therefore, they say, a single deed can project many births and a number of deeds can as well project a single birth.

47 Introduction to the Five Immediate Misdeeds

Split community, a thing without a Link, its nature to be unreconciled. Not afflicted, neither specified, Something the community possesses. The disapproved that leads to it's a lie; This the one who made the schism has. [IV.389-394]

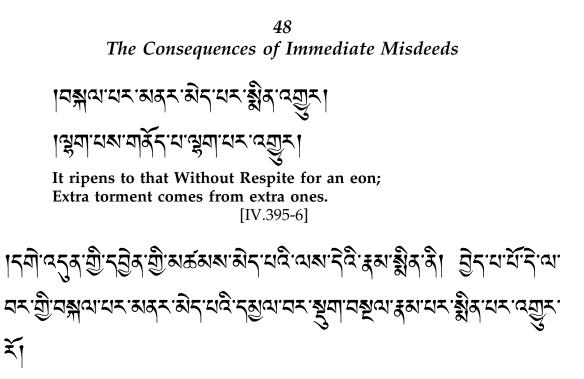
The first three of the five "immediate" misdeeds mentioned above are different types of killing, and the fifth is a preliminary to killing. These are, therefore, deeds of the body. The fourth of the immediate misdeeds is a kind of lie, and therefore a deed of speech.

Now a **split** in the **community** of monks, at least according to the Detailist system, is said to "exist as a distinct entity—it is **a thing** (one of the factors) **without** involvement in **a** mental **link; its** basic **nature** is for the two factions of the community of monks **to be** still **unreconciled**.

Such a split can also belong to both those who have eliminated their mental afflictions and those who have lost even their most basic virtue; the nature of the split is thus such that it is **not afflicted**, but **neither** was it **specified** as being virtue. We can therefore say that it is ethically neutral, without acting as an obstacle.

The kind of schism described here is **something the community** of monks on both the opposing sides **possesses**. It is not though the "immediate" misdeed itself. **The disapproved deed that leads to** the community's division—its cause—**is a lie** that functions to split the community up.

It is the lie which constitutes the immediate misdeed, and **this the one who made the schism** in the community **has**—whether it be Devadatta or someone else.



"Into what kind of consequence," one may ask, "does the immediate misdeed of dividing the community ripen?" It ripens into suffering, for the person who committed it, within the hell known as "Without Respite." He must endure this suffering for the length of an intermediate eon.

"And what happens," one might continue, "when a person commits any of the remaining immediate misdeeds?" Committing any of these other immediate misdeeds is certain to lead one to a birth in the hells, but in a more specific sense it is not a definite thing that they will always bring a birth in the hell Without Respite.

One might next pose the following question:

Suppose a person commits two, or even more, of the "immediate" misdeeds. If he takes only one birth in the hells, then you would have to say that committing several of these deeds is no more serious than committing only one. If on the other hand he takes two or however many births in the hells, you can no longer say that these deeds give "immediate" results, and that their results are invariably experienced in the very next life.

The Detailists respond with the following claim:

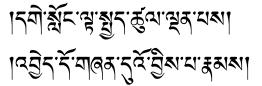
A person takes no more than a single birth in the hells as a result of committing **"extra ones"**—that is two, three, or even more immediate misdeeds. His body there in the hell of "Without Respite" though is twice the normal size (or more, according to the number of such deeds committed), and much more sensitive. He therefore feels an **extra** amount of pain: his **torment** increases in multiples the same way as his size. This frees us of both the problems you raised; incidentally, the earlier of the deeds is the one that projects the birth and the later one (or ones) finishes the details.

ૹઽૼૺૹૣ૾ૺૡૡૹૼૹૹૡ૾ૺૺ૾ૹૼૹૹૹૺઽૹઽૡ૽ૼૼૼૡૢૹૡૹૹ૱૱૱૱ૡ ઽઽૡઽઽૢૹ૾ૢૢૺૡઽૣૣ૾૾ૡૹૡ૽ૢૺઽૡૡ૾ૺૡૢૹઽૺઽઽઽ૱ૢૢૢૢૡૡૡ૽૱ ૹ૾ૢૺૹૹૼૹૹૹૺઽૡૡ૾ૺૡ૾ૢૢૺ૱ઽઽૣૣ ૱ૹૡૡ૱૱૱ૢૼૡૡ૾ૺૺ૱૱ ૱ૡૡૡ૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱૱

The Sutrists and others though explain the point as follows:

If a person commits a number of immediate misdeeds, he is born into the hell of torment Without Respite again and again. There is though no other type of birth taken between the body in which the deed was done and the body of the hellbeing, so the result is still "immediate." The idea that the result must be experienced in the very next life cannot be substantiated.

49 The Details of a Schism



The schism's made by an intellectual, Full monk with his morals, elsewhere, children. [IV.397-8]

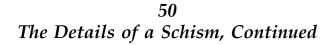
399

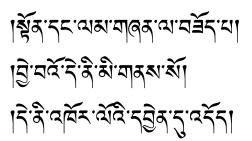
What kind of person causes the split? **The schism is made by** someone who is a **full monk** and **an intellectual** type **with** all **his morals.** The person in question cannot be a layman, or the type more inclined to sensual pleasures, or someone who has lost his morals. This is because, first of all, he is vying with the Buddha. Secondly, he must have a very sharp mind. Finally, the community of monks would lend no credence to such types.

Where does the split occur? It must take place "elsewhere"--that is, in some location other than where the Buddha himself is residing. It could never occur in the direct presence of the Buddha, since his overwhelming glory would never permit it. And who is it that gets split off? It is only "children"—that is to say, common beings [which refers to those who have yet to see selflessness directly]—among the community of monks who are estranged. Realized beings cannot be led into a schism, for they possess a faith in the Buddha born from knowledge: they have perceived Reality directly.

ุศเชิญการ์รานเชิญการ์สูงเข้าสุมพาฏการฏิเจรามิเสูงเข้าริรา

Some people have claimed that it is also impossible to split up persons who have achieved the "mastery" stage of the path of preparation.





Split at the acceptance of another Teacher, path. It does not remain. Accepted as a breaking of the wheel.

[IV.399-401]

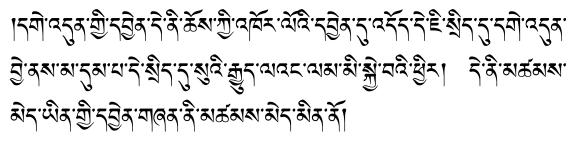
મુષાગીશાવરશાયરાયશાયશાયલિય સુષા દીષા શીશાદશાયમા વદ્યુદાવમા દ્વાવે. ยิรา ดิ์ลิาฐานารา จาฐานารา จงสาสาจังรงลาฐานารา สัสาสา รุฬานการที่เการุกา ผู้กาพิเสกาผู้พาณฑายการาวาวกุฑานาติพาภูารณิ ୳ୄୄୠୣୠ୳୳ୖୡୖୄୖ୷ୠ୶ୄୄଌ୲୳୰ୡ୶୳୷୲ୖ୶୶୶୳୲୵୲୵୲ଽୖଽ୵ୖୖୠ୵୳୵୵୵ୖୄ୵୲ୖ୶୶୳୳ୖୖୖୣୖୖୖୖୖୖୠ୲୷୲ दनुबु:मु:मर्दे।

One may ask at what point a schism is considered to have occurred. The community of monks is considered **split at** that point when, first of all, there is an **acceptance of** some **Teacher** (namely, Devadatta) **other** than the Buddha himself. Secondly, this is the point where there is an acceptance and attempt to practice some **path other** than that enunciated by the Buddha. This opposing path consists of the "Five Rules" set forth by Devadatta for attaining freedom from the world:

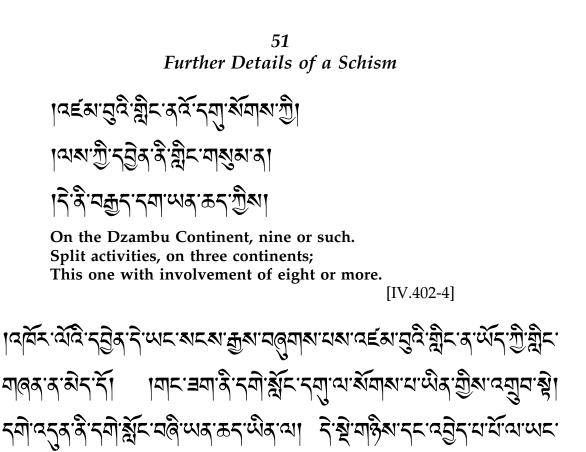
- 1) giving up the use of curds;
- 2) giving up meat;
- 3) giving up salt;
- 4) giving up the traditional patchwork robes; and
- 5) staying in temples inside of towns.

१५ूरू हे र्श्वे ५५५ जावरू ले वा हे जरे के के छे ५७७५ जी जा जा के ज जावरू के

And how long does the schism last? This split in the community has its own peculiar nature: **it does not remain** for more than one 24-hour period.



A division of the community of monks is **accepted as a breaking of the wheel** of the teachings, for no new paths start up in the minds of anyone at all until the estranged monks are reconciled. What we've described here is the immediate misdeed of a schism in the community; other types of divisions are possible, but do not constitute the "immediate" type of deed.

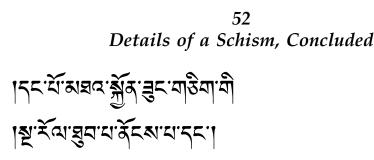


รทิ'สู้ระริพานรารทัศานลิ'ซูรา จริ'สิ'ซูราพยองรอฐราราพิสาฏิพราราณ

The break in the wheel described above occurs **on Dzambu Continent** (as this is where the Buddha resides), but not on the others. As for the individuals involved, the deed can only be accomplished with **nine "or such"** (meaning "or more") full monks. This is because it takes at least four monks to make what we call a "community" of monks; there have to be two such groups created, along with one person who incites the schism—and he too must definitely be a full monk. This of course represents the bare minimum—there is no certainty that a great many more individuals might not be involved in such a schism.

Now what we call a "**split** in the **activities**" of the community can occur **on three** different **continents**--that is, on any one where the teachings exist, which would eliminate only the northern continent of Terrible Sound. This type of schism occurs only within the confines of a single physical monastic institution, and where the required rites of the monastic confession and so on have been performed with unity up to that point.

How many individuals are required for this type of schism? A split in the activities of the community requires no separate person to incite the division, so the deed can be accomplished **with** the **involvement of eight or more** full monks.



ไฟซุฟฟ.ฟ.ปลิป.ส.ปิป. ٵؚڡڷڡٚٙ؆ٮڡٚۯڎٚ٦ڟؘۣ٩؆ٛ؆؆ڡۊؚۣڂڎٚٵ

A breaking of the wheel never occurs At the beginning, the end, before the faults Or one of The Pair, after The Able passes, Until the residences set apart.

[IV.405-8]

Now a breaking of the wheel of the teachings as described above never occurs at "the beginning"—that is, during the period just after the Buddha has first set this wheel in motion. This is because at this point everyone shares a peculiar sense of unity, a perfect harmony born of communal joy.

Neither does the break ever occur **at the end** of the Buddha's precious life—when he passes into his final nirvana. This is because his followers at this point share exactly the same thoughts: a special awareness of how rare the Buddha is, and strong feelings of resignation with life once its impermanence has been drawn to their attention then.



Verses on Vowed Morality contains the following lines:

Instructions of the Teacher remain pure, Free of any breach for twelve years' time, Free from taint, like waters of the autumn, Working to remove the mental afflictions.

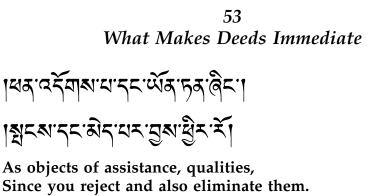
This means that a schism in the community will furthermore never happen **before** certain **faults** occur—faults in the way that followers view the teachings and maintain their morality. For until such time, the teachings themselves remain without defect.

Furthermore, no division can occur **before** the appearance of **one** or another **of The** Great **Pair**. This is because the division is of very brief duration and could not otherwise be brought to an end, since the reconciliation is always performed by one of these two.

No schism can occur **after The Able** One himself **passes** on (that is, subsequent to his final nirvana), since there is then no Buddha present for the leader of the schism to compete with.

Finally, no division of the community can occur **until** such time as different monastic **residences**, both large and small, are **set apart** from each other. This is because divisions between the community of monks that occur within a single monastic institution do not qualify as a breaking of the wheel, although they are a type of schism. In summary then we can say that there are six periods during which it is impossible for a break in the wheel of the teachings to occur.

Now this schism is something that depends upon the past deeds of the disciples involved, so does not occur with every single Buddha. The explanation goes that, in a former birth as a bodhisattva, our own Teacher (the Leader of the Shakyas) created a schism among the followers of a certain great adept who possessed the five types of supernormal powers: the present schism is just the eventual ripening of this misdeed. According to the teachings for those of higher capacity though this description is not to be taken literally.



[IV.409-10]

One may ask the following: "Why is it considered an `immediate' misdeed only when a person performs one of the actions such as killing his father or mother? Why isn't it the same kind of deed when a person commits an act, such as the killing, towards someone else?" The answer is that killing one's father or mother is an "immediate" misdeed **as** they are very special **objects**, due to the great **assistance** they have rendered one: they have given you a body, a body with which you can attain freedom. And by thinking to kill them **you reject them;** by actually undertaking the deed, you **also eliminate them**.

The case with enemy destroyers, the community of monks, and Buddhas is similar. They are objects possessed of exceptional **qualities**; by thinking to do the particular deed towards them **you reject them**, and by actually undertaking the various deeds involved you create conditions which are not at all conducive to their continued life.

Here we should mention that, although it is impossible for anyone to actually kill a Buddha, the thought to do so is a rejection of the Buddha. Kinds of actions other than those described above are in no way as serious, so are not counted among the "immediate" misdeeds.

54 Clarification of Certain Immediate Misdeeds



It is, even should the organ switch. Mother, the one whose menses he came from.

[IV.411-12]

One might ask the following question: "Suppose a person kills a father or mother whose sexual organ has changed. Is it still an `immediate' misdeed?" **Even should the** sexual **organ** of one's father or mother **switch** (and they thus become a female or a male, respectively), **it is** still the "immediate" deed of patricide or matricide if he kills them. This is because one has still killed the person who performed the function of a father or mother: the one who endowed him with his very special body.

One may then pose another question: "Suppose the embryo in one woman's body is removed and placed in the womb of another, and the child takes birth from this woman's womb. Killing which of these two women would constitute the `immediate' misdeed?" The **mother** of the person in question is the former of the two women: **the one whose menses he came from.** Therefore killing this first woman would be the immediate misdeed; she played the principal role in providing the person a body fit for gaining freedom. We could not consider the second woman, the woman who kept the child in her womb, the child's mother—this act alone would not make hers the principal role.

Now it is not an "immediate" misdeed if a person undertakes to kill his father or mother and ends up killing someone else; nor is it if one undertakes to kill someone else and ends up killing one of his parents. This is because, with an "immediate" misdeed, the actual commission of the act must be concluded with the same person towards whom the act was undertaken. And this is true of neither of the cases mentioned. Similar examples would be where the person killed his mother by accident as she hid under his bed, or where the son of the washerman threw a rock to kill a fly and smashed his father's skull instead.

Suppose that a person, in the single blow of some weapon, kills his mother and some other living being. The non-communicating form here consists of both deeds: the "immediate" misdeed and a simple act of killing. The communicating form though is subsumed only by the immediate deed, since an immediate deed possesses such tremendous force.

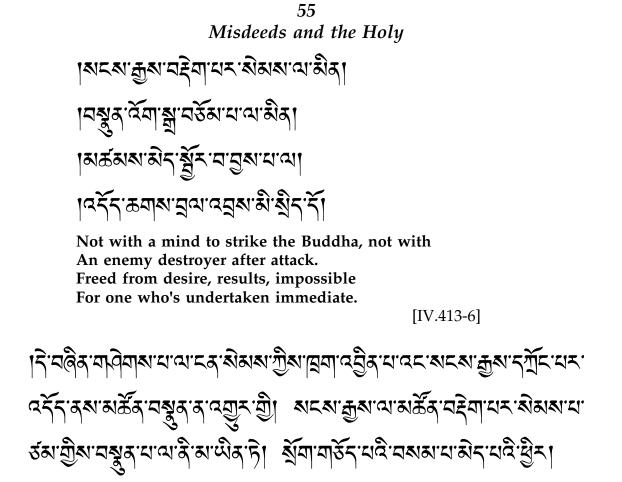
गलफिष्यण्यमण्धेमुखा नुषामर्छेम्रायवमण्धेमुख्यस्य मण्यमण्धेमु नुषामर्छेम्रा मण्यमण्धेमुखाम्बर्यम् नुषामर्छेम्रायम्बर्यम्बर्यम् मण्यम् मोहेमा भेमुक्ति। हेमुग्वाहेमाल्यस्यमेन्यवेद्धिम्।

Next let's take a case where a person kills his father, a father who happens to be an enemy destroyer as well. Or suppose he kills a person who is both his mother and an enemy destroyer too. Here he commits a single "immediate" misdeed, that of killing an enemy destroyer—for only the single physical base of a person was involved.

One may ask how then we reconcile this position with the following message, quoted in *Divisions of the Word:*

In days gone by there was a king of Rauruka City by the name of Udrayana. He was murdered by his son Shikhandi, who thus killed a person who was both his father and an enemy destroyer. The King's last words to the assassins sent by his son were "Return and tell Shikhandi for me, `You have now committed two immediate misdeeds—that of killing your father, and that of killing an enemy destroyer."

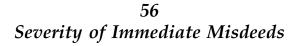
The point of the king's words was to tell his son that he had on two accounts committed an immediate misdeed, or that he had committed the deed in two different ways. There was though no more than one immediate misdeed done.

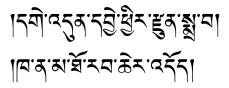


Let's next consider the immediate misdeed of striking and drawing blood, with evil intent, from the One Thus Gone. It's considered the immediate misdeed when a person uses his weapon with the intent to kill the Buddha, but it is **not** considered this type of misdeed when a person uses his weapon simply **with a mind to strike the Buddha.** This is because such a person lacks the "intent" stage for an act of taking life.

Suppose for a similar example that someone uses a weapon against a person who has yet to reach the stage of **"enemy destroyer,"** and then at some point **after** the **attack** the victim does attain this level. Suppose further that our new enemy destroyer then dies as a result of wounds incurred in the original attack. It is **not** considered the immediate misdeed **with** such a person, for his attacker did not undertake the action against someone who was an enemy destroyer.

One may pose the following question: "Suppose a person undertakes to commit an immediate misdeed. Is it possible for such a person—without abandoning this course of action—to achieve the state where he is free of desire, or to gain one of the results?" The answer is that it is **impossible for one who has undertaken** an **immediate** misdeed to gain either the level where he is **freed from desire** or one of the **results**. The two states of mind are completely contradictory.





Lying to divide the community Accepted as most heinous of misdeeds.

[IV.417-18]

ર્વિંગ અર્ઠઅશ્વચેર્ડારેડ્વાયશ્વશ્વાર સુંજેવા ડ્યાવર્ડ્વાયછેશ્વર્શ્વા સ્વેશ્વર્યું સુંગ્રે સ્ટ્રે સ્ટ

One may ask, "Which of all these immediate misdeeds is the most serious?" **Lying** in order **to divide the community** of monks into two parts is **accepted as** the **most heinous of misdeeds** among all the immediate. This is because a person has thereby struck a blow to what is known as the "reality body" of the One Thus Gone. And as long as the community remains unreconciled, there is a general stop in the world to certain great virtuous deeds: no one finds the true certainty, no one achieves the results, no one gains freedom from desire, and no one brings an end to all stains.

$$\begin{aligned} & = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \sum_{i \in \mathbb{$$

Moreover, such a division prevents persons from engaging in meditative concentration, and from reading scripture—from daily recitations and from contemplations. This then interrupts progress in gaining both higher births and the states of nirvana and Buddhahood. All the inhabitants of the world, on up to the great pleasure beings, are thrown into turmoil—they lose their happiness, they lose their freedom, they lose their ability to think. And the perpetrator must take his birth in the lowest hell, Without Respite, for an eon. These are what make this deed the worst.

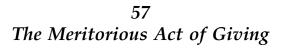
$\left| \hat{\zeta}_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \hat{E}_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \hat{Z}_{\alpha}^{\alpha} \hat{Z}_{\alpha}^{\alpha}$

The next most grave of the immediate misdeeds is the fifth; then come the third, the first, and second—in that order. Thus the murder of one's father is explained as the least serious of the five.

One may object that this description contradicts the statement in sutra that, of all the three types of wrong, the three deeds of thought are most serious and that—within these three—holding mistaken views is most grave. There is though no inconsistency here. The misdeed we've described leads one to the hell "Without Respite" for a full intermediate eon; from the viewpoint of the magnitude of the result that ripens from the deed, we can say that dividing the community is the most serious of all the immediate misdeeds.

One the other hand there is the case where the raw emotion of fury in the mind of the great adept brought death to the many individuals of Dantaka Monastery and other places; we can say then that, with respect to the general result of death among the populace, actions of the thought are the most powerful among three groups of deeds that relate to the three passageways.

And with respect to the "creative" result of losing one's most basic virtue, mistaken views would be the most serious of the deeds of the thought, for the others in this group lack the power to make one lose this virtue. To express it in a different way, we can say that each was stated to be the most serious: dividing the community, deeds of the thought, and holding mistaken views—but only with the respective assumptions that one is limiting himself to the five immediate deeds, deeds of the three passageways, or the five views.





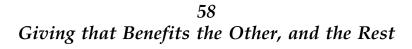
Giving is when anyone acts to give, Out of a wish to honor or to aid. Deeds of body and speech with motive, linked; Its result, possession of great wealth.

[IV.449-52]

Now among these three, **giving** is described as follows. It **is when any** person, with thoughts of virtue, **acts to give** any thing he owns to someone else. As we read in *A Sutra Taught at the Request of Vyasa, a Great Adept:* "Oh great adept, all acts of giving even the smallest thing from faith are Giving."

As for the motivation involved, it is only the meritorious act of giving when one gives away the thing either **out of a wish to honor** (some very high object) **or** out of a wish **to aid** (some very miserable object). It is not real giving when one does so only out of fear, or out of hopes of getting something in return, and so on.

Giving moreover consists of **deeds of body and speech** along **with** their **motivation** and what is **linked** with it mentally. The **result** of the giving is the **possession of great wealth**, at least for the time being.

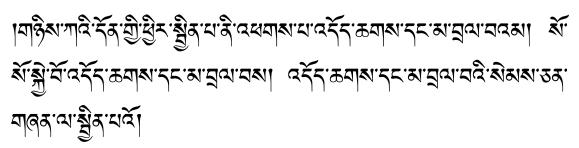


Giving is that which benefits oneself, The other, both, and neither one of them.

[IV.453-4]

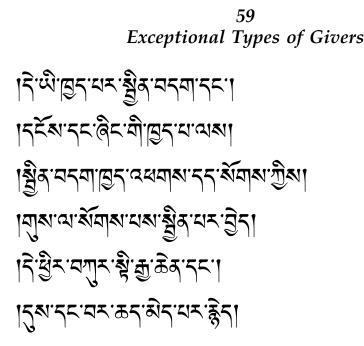
As for the different divisions of **giving**, the first **is that** giving **which benefits oneself**. This would be for a person who had not yet freed himself from desire for desire-realm objects, or for a common person who had done so but through the "path of the world," to make offerings to a shrine.

Giving that benefits **the other** would be any act of giving performed by a realized person free of desire towards another living being not so freed. This assumes by the way that we do not consider any results that the former individual will experience in this same life.



Giving that benefits **both** would be for a realized being who was not yet free of desire, or for a common being who was not thus free, to present something to another living being who was not yet free from desire either.

Giving that benefits **neither** would be for a realized being who was free of desire for the desire realm to make offerings to a shrine. This is because the only point of the offering is for this being to express his deep respect and gratitude. Here again incidentally we are not counting any results of the offering that he will achieve in the same life.



Exceptional types of it from exceptional Givers, given thing, whom given; of these the Giver's exceptional through faith and the rest, Performs his giving with respect and the like. As a result one gains the honor, a wealthy, The timely and a freedom from hindrances.

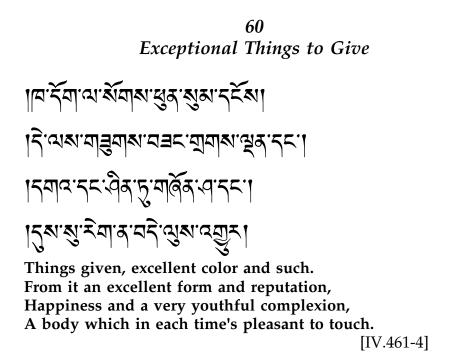
[IV.455-60]

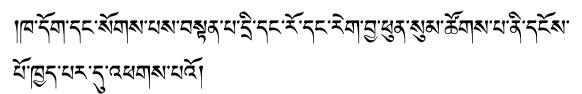
Very **exceptional types of "it"**—of this giving, come **from** exceptional kinds of **givers**, exceptional kinds of **things** which are **given**, and exceptional kinds of objects to **whom** the things are **given**. Of **these**, **the giver is** made **exceptional through** a motivation of **faith and "the rest"**—which refers first of all to the rest of the "seven riches of realized beings": morality, generosity, learning, a sense of shame, a conscience, and wisdom. The phrase also refers to having little desire for things.

As for how he undertakes the act, the exceptional giver **performs his giving** (1) **with** an attitude of **respect and "the like."** These last words refer to handing the object to the other person with one's own hands; (2) giving something when it is really needed; and (3) performing the actual deed in a way that does no harm to anyone else. Examples would be where one had stolen the object from someone else in the first place, or where one presented a sheep to a butcher. Included here too are cases where the object given hurt the recipient—examples would be giving someone poison or unhealthy food.

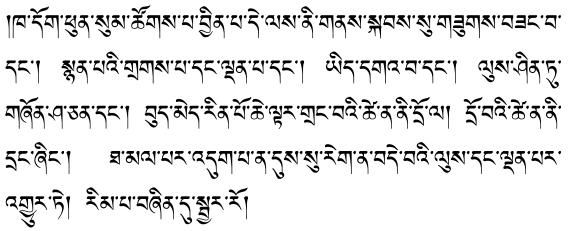
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Ten

Concerning the consequences of such giving, the person has performed his charity with an attitude of respect and so on, as listed above. As a result he gains the following (and here the list follows the three numbers above). In his future life he wins (1) the honor and respect of those who follow him, as well as a wealth of material things (which because of his former faith he enjoys at his total discretion). In this next life he also gains (2) the timely fulfillment of his own needs, as well as (3) complete freedom from any hindrances to his wealth: enemies, loss of his things in a fire, and so on.

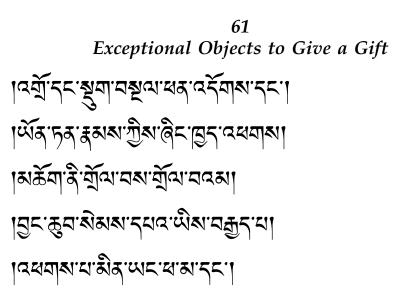




An **excellent color "and such"**—which refers to an excellent smell, or taste, or feel—are what make **things** that are **given** exceptional.



From "it" (that is, from giving things with an excellent color), one gains **an excellent** bodily **form**—at least for the time being. Temporarily too he gains other results (following the order of the qualities just listed): **a** good and widespread **reputation**; great **happiness**; **and** a body with **a very youthful complexion**. The **body** that one possesses is moreover like that which belongs to the "jewel of the queen": it is **pleasant to touch in each** of the **times**—whether the temperature is just normal, or whether it is cold (when the queen's body gives you warmth), or hot (at which time the queen feels to you cool).



Exceptional—those you give to—by the being, Suffering, aid, and by good qualities. The highest someone freed by someone freed, By a bodhisattva, or the eighth. Gifts made to a father or a mother, To the sick, a spiritual teacher, or A bodhisattva in his final life Cannot be measured, even not realized. [IV.465-72]

Those to whom **you give** a gift can be **exceptional** by virtue of four different reasons, first **by the** type of **being** involved. As *Gautami's Sutra* states,

Ananda, you can look forward to a hundredfold result ripening back to you, if you give something to an individual who has reached the animal's state of birth. But you can look forward to a thousandfold result if you give something even to a human who's immoral.

The object towards whom you perform your giving may also be distinguished by his **suffering.** Suppose for example that you take all the things that a person can give in one of those types of acts where the merit derives from a substantial thing. It is stated that if you give these things to a sick person, or to someone nursing a sick person, or to someone when it's cold outside or whatever, the merit is immeasurable.

The recipient may furthermore be distinguished by the **aid** he has given one in the past. Here we include one's father and mother, or anyone else who has been of special help to one. Examples may be found among stories of the Buddha's former lives, such as the one about the bear and the *ru-ru* deer.

ાલેશ્વાયાલ્ટ્રા સુંચેર પ્રેંગ્ન પ્રત્ય સુંચેર પ્રસ્ટેર્ગ વલે મેં ને સમજ્ઞ શીજા લેન્ટ શિંન પ્રત્ય ન્ટ્રે নধন্যৰু:জ্য

The person to whom one gives his gift may, lastly, be exceptional **by** virtue of his **good qualities.** *Gautami's Sutra* provides some examples:

If you give to someone who has kept his morality, you can expect it to ripen into a result a hundred thousand times as great. If you give to someone who has entered that stage known as the "result of entering the stream," it ripens into something which is immeasurable. And if you give even more to someone who has entered the stream, the result is even more immeasurable.

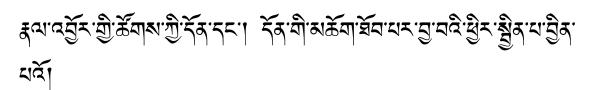
ุศมสามุผูสาณสามุ์ณาวสามุ์ณาวาณาฏิสาราษิๆ ฉมิ์ญารามิฉามร้านสา มารา ดิ์ญญูญรายนายสีทพานานเมือง ไลของบนนานที่ยามหู้ยายผู้ในการที่ยายเป็นไป

Now **the highest** kind of giving is for **someone** who has **freed** himself of the three realms to give something to **someone** else who has **freed** himself as well. This is because both are the highest kind of individual. Again we see, in *Gautami's Sutra*,

The highest form of giving a physical thing Is by one free to another free of desire: But one with his body and speech restrained, Reaching out his hand to offer food.

We can also though take a giver who is a **bodhisattva** and who gives any object at all, for the sake of helping every being alive. Although this is an act of giving by a person who is not yet freed and is directed to another person not yet freed, it is still the highest kind of giving. This is because the act has been performed for the sake of total enlightenment and every living being. And this is because one has given something in order to become the savior of every single being.

 $w = w + \tilde{Y} + \tilde{Y}$



Now a certain sutra gives the following list of eight types of giving:

- 1) Giving to close ones;
- 2) Giving out of fear;
- 3) Giving because they gave to you;
- 4) Giving because they will give to you;
- 5) Giving because one's parents and ancestors used to give;
- 6) Giving with the hope of attaining one of the higher births;
- 7) Giving to gain fame;
- 8) Giving to gain the jewel of the mind, to gain the riches of the mind, to win what great practitioners collect together, to achieve the ultimate goal.

We can alternately describe the highest type of giving as **the eighth** in this list: giving to gain the jewel of the mind and so on.

As for the meaning of the expression "giving to close ones," certain masters of the past have claimed that it refers to giving to someone when they are standing close by, or to someone when they approach close by. "Giving out of fear" means that a person decides he will give the best he has, but only because he perceives some great imminent danger to himself. And "giving because they gave to you" refers to giving something to a person with the thought that "I'm doing this because he gave me something before."

The remaining members of the list are easily understood. "Jewel of the mind" refers to the ability to perform miracles, while "riches of the mind" refers to the eight parts of the path of realized beings. "What great practitioners collect together" refers to perfectly tranquil concentration and special realization. The "ultimate goal" can be described as achieving the state of an enemy destroyer, or the state of nirvana. This is how the Master Jinaputra explains the various types of giving.

Master Purna explains them as follows:

Giving to gain the "jewel of the mind" and the rest of the four refers respectively to (1) that which brings one the riches of faith and the rest; (2) that which is totally inconsistent with the stink of stinginess; (3) that which makes the happiness of balanced meditation grow; and (4) that which brings on the state of nirvana.

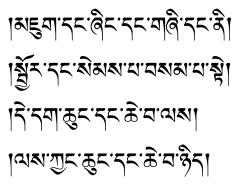
These four have also been accepted as relating respectively to the four "results of the way of virtue," or to (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the path of seeing, (3) the path of habituation, and (4) nirvana. An alternate way is to correlate them with (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the seven impure levels, (3) the three pure levels, and (4) the level of a Buddha.

Beyond the above, we can say that there are other acts of giving where, **even** though the recipient is **not** a **realized** being, the resulting merit still **cannot** be **measured** in units such as a "hundred thousand times greater" or such. These would involve **gifts made to** one's **father or mother** (recipients who had given one great aid), **to the sick** (recipients who are in a state of suffering), to **a spiritual teacher**, **or** to a bodhisattva in his final life.

Support for this description can be found in the *Sutra on Causes and Effect of Right and Wrong,* which equates the merit of giving to these objects with the amount of merit you collect from giving something to the Buddha himself:

Moreover, the act of giving performed towards any one of the three different kinds of individuals ripens into a result which never reaches an end at all. These objects are the One Thus Gone, a person's parents, and the sick. 62

The Severity of Deeds according to Six Factors



Conclusion, one who's acted toward, commission; Undertaking, thinking, and intention: The power of the deed itself's exactly As little or great as these happen to be.

[IV.473-6]

Here we might touch by the way on what determines how serious a given deed will be. The first factor that can make a deed serious is what we call "performance in **conclusion**," which means to continue a particular act well after the original course of action.

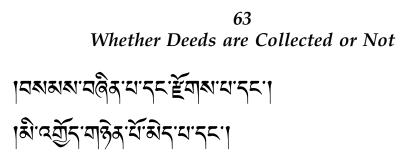
The **one who's acted toward** in any particular deed—someone who may have lent one great aid in the past—is also a factor in making the deed a serious one. Deeds which are more serious because of the basic type involved in the actual **commission** of the act would include cases like killing (among the different deeds of the body), lying (among the deeds of speech), and mistaken views (among the deeds of thought). Even among the different types of killing there are those which are more serious—killing an enemy destroyer, for example—because as *Close Recollection* states,

...it leads one to the lowest hell, "Without Respite." A less serious type of killing would be to take the life of a person who had reached any of the paths. And the least serious type would be to kill an animal, or a very immoral person.

$$|rac{2}{3}$$
ર પ્રચાર તે પ્રચાર ગાયો સાર દેશ શું સુંત્ર પાર્ટ્સા સાથે સાથ પ્રચાર છે પ્રચાય સાથ છે સું સુંત્ર પ્રચાય સાથ છે પ્ય સાથ છે પ્રચાય સાથ છે પ્રચાય સાથ છે પ્રચાય સાથ છે પ્ય સાથ છે પ્રચાય સા

Deeds made serious by the stage of their preliminary **undertaking** would be those which involved actually applying oneself physically or verbally. Deeds made serious by the **thinking** involved would be those where one's thoughts in carrying out the act were particularly strong. And deeds which turn more serious because of the **intention** involved would be those where one undertakes an act with particularly strong thoughts of motivation.

We can summarize by saying that **the power of the deed itself is exactly as little or great as these** six factors of conclusion and the rest **happen to be** in their own force. One should understand that deeds where all six factors are present in force are extremely serious.



A deed is called "collected" from its being Done intentionally, to its completion, Without regret, without a counteraction, With attendants, ripening as well.

[IV.477-80]

୲୴ଽ୕୵୶ୖଽ୕୵୶୶୲୕୕ୖ୶୶ୠୠ୕ୖ୶୷୳୷୶୶ୠ୶ୠୄଽଽୄ୲୕ୖ୶୶ୄଽୠୖ୶୷୳ୠୄ୶୷୰ୠ୶ୠ୶୷ ୶୶୶୶ୠୢଽ୶୶୲ୖୠଽଽ୶୲ୖୖୖୖଽୄୠୢୠୖୠ୲

Now sutra also mentions a number of concepts including "deeds which are done and also collected" as well as "deeds which are done but which are not collected." One may ask just what these are.

A deed is called "done and also *collected*" from its being done with six different conditions, described as follows:

1) The deed must be done **intentionally**; that is, it cannot have been performed without premeditation, or simply on the spur of the moment.

2) It must have been done **"to its completion"**—meaning with all the various elements of a complete deed present.

3) The person who committed the deed must feel **no regret** later on.

4) There must be **no counteraction** to work against the force of the deed.

5) The deed must come along **with** the necessary **attendants**.

6) The deed must **as well** be one of those where one is certain to experience the **ripening** of a result in the future.

Deeds other than the type described are what we call "done but not collected." From this one can understand what kinds of deeds are meant by the expressions "collected but not done" and "neither done nor collected."

As for the phrase "to its completion," in some cases a single act of right or wrong leads one to a birth in the states of misery or to a birth in the happier states. In other cases, all ten deeds of all three doors lead a person to the appropriate one of these two births. In either case the deeds have been done to their completion.

The phrase "without a counteraction" refers to deeds done (1) with mistaken ideas, misgivings, or the like; (2) without confession, future restraint, or such.

A deed "along with its necessary attendants" means a deed of virtue or nonvirtue along with attendants of further virtue or non-virtue. Admittedly, the *Commentary* does explains these as "Any deed which you rejoice about having done." Nonetheless the attendants here are the preliminary undertaking and final conclusion stages of the deed.

$\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R 4	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class One

1) Name the author of the *Principal Teachings of Buddhism* (give both his popular name and his monk's name), as well as his dates. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

2) What is the actual name of this work? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) Who wrote the commentary that we are studying? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

4) Who is the disciple of Trijang Rinpoche who wrote the introduction? Give his full name and correct titles. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

5) Name the three principal paths. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)
- c)

Course XVI, Class One, Homework, cont.

6) What are the two bodies of a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b)

7) Which of the three principal paths cause each of these two bodies?

- a)
- b)

8) What is the relationship between the three principal paths and tantric practice?

9) Name the ten characteristics of a qualified lama. (Tibetan track students name all in English and give Tibetan for at least five.)

- a)
- b)
- c)
- d)
- e)
- f)
- g)
- 5)
- h)
- i)
- j)

Course XVI, Class One, Homework, cont.

10) List the three requirements of a good student as found in Aryadeva's 400 Verses.

a) b) c)

11) Define what is meant by "cycle of life," or *samsara* in Sanskrit. (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word.)

12) List the eight worldly thoughts. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
g)
h)

Course XVI, Class One, Homework, cont.

13) Name the four principles of action (or *karma*.) (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d)

14) What is the point at which you know you have developed true renunciation?

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, on whether or not you have been able to reach the three principal paths yourself. *Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):*

$\boldsymbol{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R 2	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	_

Homework, Class Two

1) Give an explanation of the two parts of the word "bodhichitta." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) Does it refer to the mind of a buddha?

2) Give the seven steps in the cause-and-effect method for developing the wish for enlightenment; explain briefly why each is necessary for the next. (Tibetan track name the seven steps in Tibetan, and explain in English.)

a)		
b)		
c)		
d)		
e)		
f)		
g)		

Course XVI, Class Two, Homework, cont.

3) Name the two truths, and describe them briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

4) Explain what "interdependence" means in each of the three Buddhist schools below. (Tibetan track students give Tibetan word for "interdependence.")

a) Functionalist Group:

b) Independent Group:

c) *Implication Group*:

5) Does the self exist?

6) How can the idea of karma (that is, ethics or morality) co-exist with the idea of emptiness, or do they contradict each other? (Tibetan track students give the words for "morality" and for "emptiness.")

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, on the interconnection of emptiness and karma. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

$\boldsymbol{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R 2	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Three

1) Give a brief definition of the perfection of wisdom. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "perfection of wisdom.")

2) The root text for our study of the perfection of wisdom is the *Ornament of Realizations*. Who spoke this work, to whom? What is the estimated date of the work? (Tibetan track give both the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for both the work and the authors.)

3) Who wrote the Tibetan monastic commentary on what we are studying, and what are his dates? (Tibetan track give Tibetan name also.)

4) Give the definition of the Dharma Jewel, and give one example each of a cessation and a path.

5) Give the definition of taking refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "taking refuge.")

6) Describe the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a lesser scope. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for practitioners of the three scopes.)

7) Describe result refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for cause refuge and result refuge.)

8) Give the shorter definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "greater way's wish for enlightenment.")

9) Describe the two types of the wish for enlightenment. (If you know two different ways of dividing the wish into two, you may write either one.) (Tibetan track give the Tibetan names for the two types and describe them in English.)

a)

b)

Meditation assignment: Analytical meditation for 15 minutes per day, in which you distinguish mentally between the Three Jewels as paintings or statues, and the actual Three Jewels as they relate to emptiness, and doing the good deeds that protect you. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
7	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Four

1) Give the definition of nirvana. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) What does "individual analysis" mean here?

3) Describe the difference in this school (Madhyamika Svatantrika) between nirvana with something left over, and nirvana with nothing left over. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for both these kinds of nirvana.)

4) There is a kind of nirvana called "nirvana which does not stay." What is the meaning of the phrase "does not stay"? (Tibetan students give Tibetan for this nirvana, and for the two extremes.)

5) Describe the three main parts of the method for achieving nirvana.

a) b) c)

6) Why is it important to identify the object that we deny? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "object we deny.")

7) Explain the three different perceptions of the three different people in the metaphor of the magic show. Who are the three types of real people that these three represent? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for these last three.)

a)

b)

c)

8) Write out the reasoning called the "Emptiness of One or Many."

Course XVI, Class Four, Homework, cont.

9) Why is it true that if something has parts, it cannot be one thing which really exists?

10) In the section of the commentary known as the *Text of Maitreya*, a debater comes and argues that Maitreya has no state of mind aspiring to fulfill his own needs, and so he has written the *Ornament of Realizations* only for the sake of others. Perhaps the debater is assuming that Maitreya is already a Buddha. If he does assume this, what mistake has he made? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "way which is shared" and "way which is not shared.")

11) The eighth century master Dharmakirti, in his root text on Buddhist logic, says that two elements must be present for tantra to work. Name them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, attempting to imagine your mind in nirvana (that is, totally free of any slightest mental affliction). Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	I TE ASIAN CLASSICS
7 1	

INSTITUTE INSTITUTE	
Course XVI	
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, I	Part One

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Five

1) List the five parts for our study of the practice of meditation.

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			

2) List just the names of the six preliminaries that should be performed before a meditation session. Be careful not to confuse them with the "seven ingredients." (Tibetan track students answer in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d) e) f) 3) What are the seven ingredients? (Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
g)

4) Which of the six preliminaries are these seven a part of? Which of the seven act to gather the power of goodness, and which function to clean away obstacles, for a successful meditation?

5) Name the six conditions that must be gathered together for meditation. Do not confuse these with the six preliminaries. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d) e) f) 6) Briefly describe the eight characteristics of correct meditation posture. (Tibetan track students also give Tibetan for each.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			
g)			
h)			

7) Name the first of the five problems of meditation. Which four of the eight corrections are used to counteract it? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a) problem:

b) *four corrections*:

(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)

8) Name the third of the five problems of meditation. What is its correction? (Tibetan track give both in Tibetan.)

9) Explain the difference between gross and subtle dullness of meditation. (Tibetan track name the two in Tibetan, and explain in English.)

10) What is the fourth of the five problems of meditation? How do you know it has occurred? (Tibetan track give the name for the problem in Tibetan.)

11) The correction to the fourth problem can come in two different forms. Name them.

b)

a)

12) Name and describe the nine states of meditation. (Tibetan track give the names in Tibetan and describe in English.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			
g)			
h)			
i)			

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, on trying to identify agitation or dullness, or
their subtle forms, in your own mind while you try to
visualize a holy being.Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

λ.	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
· · ·	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Six

1) Name three different types of meditation. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)
- c)

2) Give the meaning of the word "lam-rim." Where does the name come from?

3) Which of the five great texts, and the different levels of secret practice, are contained in this text?

4) Name four parts to the practice of taking yourself to a Lama. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a) b) c)
- d)

5) Name the three parts to the subject of taking the essence of this life. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b)

c)

6) What are the three principles of the death meditation? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c)

7) Name the four laws of karma.

a) b) c) d)

8) State briefly the difference between Buddhists of lesser, medium, and greater capacity.

9) Do you think that it is true that every event in our present kind of life is suffering? Why or why not?

10) Of the three trainings, why is only the training of morality mentioned at this point?

11) Give the two parts to the steps of the path which are shared with practitioners of the greater scope (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)

12) Give the definition of quietude (called *shamata* in Sanskrit and *shi-ne* in Tibetan).

13) Give the definition of insight (called *vipashyana* in Sanskrit and *hlak-tong* in Tibetan).

Mediation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on why even every "good thing" is suffering. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

$\boldsymbol{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R 2	

INSTITUTE COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:	1
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Seven

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for the Buddhist study of logic and perception, which is the same as the word for "correct or valid perception." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) What is the Buddhist definition of existence? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) What did the Buddha himself say is the purpose of Buddhist logic? (Give the exact quotation, Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

4) Name the two basic types of valid perception, and what levels of reality they are used to perceive. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

5) Give the text of Master Dignaga's famous opening statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

6) Give the definition of valid perception. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

7) Describe very generally the meaning of the term, "person of valid perception." (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word for this person.)

8) What are the three main methods for a normal person to determine that the Buddha is totally correct about the very deep teachings He gave? (Tibetan track give the one name for the three, and explain in English.)

a)

b)

c)

Course XVI, Class Seven, Homework, cont.

9) Describe briefly the three "ground rules" for interpreting the Buddha; that is, for deciding that something which Lord Buddha said was meant only figuratively, and not literally.

a) b) c)

10) What does a person have to know in order to be all-knowing?

11) What evidence do we have that the Buddha is "unerring"?

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes of analytical meditation as follows. Choose three
people whome you have judged today in one way or
another. Review the "logic" you have used to make your
judgement, and decide whether you may be mistaken.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

	١	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R	-2	

COURSE XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Eight

1) The last of the four reasonings of the forward order involves great compassion. What is the difference between great compassion, holy great compassion, and just compassion?

2) Name three reasons why the Charvakas believed that the mind died when the body died.

- a)
- b)
- c)

3) Explain the meaning of "material cause." (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "material cause.")

4) Why can't the cause of your mind at birth be living physical matter? (Tibetan students give Tibetan for "living physical matter.")

5) Why can't this cause be outside physical matter? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "outside physical matter.")

6) If this cause is mind, why can't it be the mind of someone else? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mind of someone else.")

7) What is the basic principle underlying Master Dharmakirti's arguments in favor of past and future lives?

8) Explain why the mind of a normal person at the moment of death crosses into another state of mind of a similar type.

9) Give the three parts for Master Dharmakirti's main proof for future lives. (Tibetan track in Tibetan with English translation.)

a) b) c)

10) Name and describe the three types of the eighth link of the chain of dependence from the Wheel of Life. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, describe in English.)

a)

b)

c)

11) The key as to why craving triggers your existing karma at the moment of death is how it focuses upon yourself. Describe the four levels of focusing upon yourself, and explain which ones can trigger this karma.

a) b) c)

Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, practice what it would be like to see yourself in the four different ways mentioned in question #11 above. *Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):*

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R . 2	

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Nine

1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (*Abhidharma*); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the Sanskrit title of this root text.

3) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

4) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)

a)

b)

c)

d)

5) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

6) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

7) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)
- c)

8) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)

a)

b)

9) Give the abbreviated list of ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
g)
h)
i)
j)

10) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).

- a)
- b)
- c)

11) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the three gateways, and explain the three consequences it will produce.

a) in body:

i)"Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii)"Environmental result":

b) in speech:

i) "Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii) "Environmental result":

c) in mind:

i) "Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii) "Environmental result":

12) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

13) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.")

a) b)

c)

14) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole universe and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that there are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."

a)

b)

Meditation assignment: Fifteen minutes per day, analyze the problems in your current life, and decide from studying the correlations of specific actions and their consequences what you must have done in the past; then think how you can avoid these kinds of actions again specifically.

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

Δ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	INSTITUTE

COURS	SE XVI				
The G	reat Ideas	of Bu	ıddhism,	Part	One

Name:	Ī
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Ten

1) Maitreya, in his work entitled *The Higher Line*, describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			

2) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explains what is happening when three different beings sitting around of glass of liquid see it as being three different things. Use the concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors. 3) Name the four parts to a path of action—in the act of killing for example—as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.

a) b) c) d)

4) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.

a) b) c)

5) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)

6) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")

Course XVI, Class Ten, Homework, cont.

7) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)

8) Why are the five "immediate misdeeds" called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

9) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.

10) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your giving that make it exceptional, giving examples for each.

a) b) c) d)

Meditation assignment: Choose a person who causes you some irritation. Practice seeing how each of the six different steps described by Lord Maitreya comes up with them when you feel upset towards them. Spend 15 minutes per day on this analytical meditaiton.

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
	I DE ASIAN CLASSICS
7 N	

INSTITUTE
Course XVI
The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Name:	I
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class One

- 1) Name the three principal paths. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
- 2) What are the two bodies of a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a)
 - b)

3) What is the relationship between the three principal paths and tantric practice?

4) Name the ten characteristics of a qualified lama. (Tibetan track students name all in English and give Tibetan for at least five.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			
g)			
h)			
i)			
j)			

5) Name the four principles of action (or *karma*.) (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d)

$\boldsymbol{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
F 7	

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Two

1) Give an explanation of the two parts of the word "bodhichitta." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) Does it refer to the mind of a buddha?

2) Give the seven steps in the cause-and-effect method for developing the wish for enlightenment; explain briefly why each is necessary for the next. (Tibetan track name the seven steps in Tibetan, and explain in English.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			
g)			

3) How can the idea of karma (that is, ethics or morality) co-exist with the idea of emptiness, or do they contradict each other? (Tibetan track students give the words for "morality" and for "emptiness.")

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
r 7	

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Three

1) Give a brief definition of the perfection of wisdom. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "perfection of wisdom.")

2) Give the definition of taking refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "taking refuge.")

3) Describe result refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for cause refuge and result refuge.)

4) Give the shorter definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "greater way's wish for enlightenment.")

N	THE ASIAN CLASSICS

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Four

1) Give the definition of nirvana. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) What does "individual analysis" mean here?

- 3) Describe the three main parts of the method for achieving nirvana.
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)

4) Why is it important to identify the object that we deny? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "object we deny.")

5) The eighth century master Dharmakirti, in his root text on Buddhist logic, says that two elements must be present for tantra to work. Name them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

$\boldsymbol{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Course XVI		
The Great Ideas	of Buddhism	n, Part One

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Five

1) List just the names of the six preliminaries that should be performed before a meditation session. Be careful not to confuse them with the "seven ingredients." (Tibetan track students answer in Tibetan.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			

2) What are the seven ingredients? (Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
g)

3) Name the six conditions that must be gathered together for meditation. Do not confuse these with the six preliminaries. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

4) Name the first of the five problems of meditation. Which four of the eight corrections are used to counteract it? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a) problem:

b) four corrections:

(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)

	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
(· ·)	

Name:		
Date:		
Grade:		

Quiz, Class Six

1) Name three different types of meditation. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

c)

2) Give the meaning of the word "lam-rim." Where does the name come from?

3) Which of the five great texts, and the different levels of secret practice, are contained in this text?

Course XVI, Class Six, Quiz, cont.

4) What are the three principles of the death meditation? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c)

5) State briefly the difference between Buddhists of lesser, medium, and greater capacity.

6) Give the definition of quietude (called *shamata* in Sanskrit and *shi-ne* in Tibetan).

7) Give the definition of insight (called *vipashyana* in Sanskrit and *hlak-tong* in Tibetan).

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Seven

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for the Buddhist study of logic and perception, which is the same as the word for "correct or valid perception." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) What is the Buddhist definition of existence? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) What did the Buddha himself say is the purpose of Buddhist logic? (Give the exact quotation, Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

4) Name the two basic types of valid perception, and what levels of reality they are used to perceive. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

5) Describe briefly the three "ground rules" for interpreting the Buddha; that is, for deciding that something which Lord Buddha said was meant only figuratively, and not literally.

a)

b)

c)

6) What does a person have to know in order to be all-knowing?

$\mathbf{\lambda}$	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
R 2	

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Eight

1) The last of the four reasonings of the forward order involves great compassion. What is the difference between great compassion, holy great compassion, and just compassion?

2) Name three reasons why the Charvakas believed that the mind died when the body died.

a) b) c)

3) Explain the meaning of "material cause." (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "material cause.")

4) What is the basic principle underlying Master Dharmakirti's arguments in favor of past and future lives?

5) The key as to why craving triggers your existing karma at the moment of death is how it focuses upon yourself. Describe the four levels of focusing upon yourself, and explain which ones can trigger this karma.

a)	
aj	

b)

c)

d)

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
- 4	

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Nine

1) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)

- a) b) c) d)
- 3) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a)
 - b)

Course XVI, Class Nine, Quiz, cont.

4) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c)

5) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).

a)

b)

c)

6) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the three gateways, and explain the three consequences it will produce.

a) *in body*:

i) "Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii) "Environmental result":

Course XVI, Class Nine, Quiz, cont.

b) *in speech:*

i) "Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii) "Environmental result":

c) in mind:

i) "Ripened result":

ii) "Corresponding result":

iii) "Environmental result":

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Course XVI		
The Great Ideas	of Buddhism	n, Part One

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Ten

1) Maitreya, in his work entitled *The Higher Line*, describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			

2) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explains what is happening when three different beings sitting around of glass of liquid see it as being three different things. Use the concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

3) Name the four parts to a path of action—in the act of killing for example—as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.

a)

b)

- c)
- d)

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
2.2	

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Final Examination

1) Name the author of the *Principal Teachings of Buddhism* (give both his popular name and his monk's name), as well as his dates. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

2) What is the relationship between the three principal paths and tantric practice?

3) Name the ten characteristics of a qualified lama. (Tibetan track students name all in English and give Tibetan for at least five.)

a) b) c) d) e) f) g) h) i) j)

4) Name four principles of action (or *karma*). (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d)

5) Give an explanation of the two parts of the word bodhichitta. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) Does it refer to the mind of the Buddha?

6) Name the two truths, and describe them briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

b)

a)

7) How can the idea of karma (that is, ethics or morality) co-exist with the idea of emptiness, or do they contradict each other? (Tibetan track give the words for "morality" and for "emptiness.")

8) Give a brief definition of the perfection of wisdom. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "perfection of wisdom.")

9) Give the definition of taking refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "taking refuge.")

10) Give the shorter definition of the greater way's Wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "greater way's Wish for enlightenment.")

11) Give the definition of nirvana. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

12) The eighth century master Dharmakirti, in his root text on Buddhist logic, says that two elements must be present for tantra to work. Name them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

13) List the five parts for our study of the practice of meditation.

a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

14) Name three different types of meditation. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) 15) Give the meaning of the word "lam rim." Where does it come from?

16) Name the four parts to the practice of taking yourself to a lama. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c) d)

17) What are three principles of death meditation? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) b) c)

18) State briefly the difference between Buddhists of lesser, medium, and greater capacity.

19) Do you think that it is true that every event in our present kind of life is suffering? Why or why not?

20) What did the Buddha himself say is the purpose of Buddhist logic? (Give the exact quotation, Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

21) Give the definition of valid perception. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

22) What does a person have to know to be all-knowing?

23) What evidence do we have that the Buddha is "unerring"?

24) Explain the meaning of "material cause." (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "material cause.")

25) What is the basic principle underlying Master Dharmakirti's arguments in favor of past and future lives?

26) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)

27) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)

b)

c)

28) Give the abbreviated list of ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			
g)			
h)			
i)			
j)			

29) Name three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).

a) b)

c)

30) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the three gateways, and explain the three consequences they will produce.

a) in body:

- i) "Ripened result":
- ii) "Corresponding result":
- iii) "Environmental result":

b) *in speech:*

- i) "Ripened result":
- ii) "Corresponding result":
- iii) "Environmental result':

c) *in mind*:

- i) "Ripened result":
- ii) "Corresponding result":
- iii) "Environmental result":

31) Maitreya, in his work entitled "The Higher Line," describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a)			
b)			
c)			
d)			
e)			
f)			

32) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explains what is happening when three different beings sitting around a glass of liquid see it as being three different things. Use the concept of parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

33) Name the four parts to a path of action, in the act of killing for example, as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.

a) b) c) d)

34) The second of these four parts has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.

a) b) c)

Please PRINT your name clearly, exactly as you would like it to appear on your certificate, and the address to which the certificate should be sent.

Please circle one or specify other:

Mr.	Ms.	Mrs.	Miss	Venerable	
Name as	you would lil	ke it to appear	on certificate:		
Mailing	name, differen	t:			
Address					
City			State	Zip Code	
Country					

These notes were taken by a student in class and should be used for reference only. Please check them against the audio for accuracy of content.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class One: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

The Root Text and Author:

LAM TSO NAM SUM Path Principal the three

The Three Principal Paths

The text is also known as the *Principal Teachings of Buddhism*

Author: Je Tsongkapa (1357 – 1419)

Je Tsongkapa was the teacher to the first Dalai Lama. The root text is four pages long and is a letter to his disciple, Tsako Wonpo, which means the "Friar from Tsako."

The Commentary to the Root Text and Author:

The commentary to the root text is written by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), whose secret name was Dechen Nyingpo. Pabongka Rinpoche was the teacher of Trijang Rinpoche, the tutor to the 14th Dalai Lama. The introduction to the commentary is written by a disciple of Trijang Rinpoche, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (1921-).

The goal in this lifetime is to see emptiness directly. By doing so, you will perceive your own enlightenment and when it will happen (that is when you will exit the cycle of your current suffering known as *samsara* (sanskrit). The experience of seeing emptiness directly is triggered by intense deep study, and culminating in a deep meditative state that lasts about 20 minutes.

The 3 Principle Paths

By Path, we are referring to a stage of realization, not a road. To achieve Buddhahood, you must realize these three paths or spiritual states.

1. NGEN JUNG Renunciation

You must first realize that this life is suffering. Anything good or bad you have done (actions are referred to as karma) will produce corresponding good or bad results.

Renunciation is the first path. It means, "I recognize that only spiritual things are important. I must find a solution to the problems of this life – and I know that it is possible." It is okay to want things in this life – it all depends on how you will use these things toward your ultimate goal of enlightenment. For example, it's okay if you want money, in order to help others. You will know that you have developed true renunciation when you think day and night of achieving freedom from your suffering, and no longer have any attraction to the so-called good things of this life.

2. JANG CHUB KYI SEM Enlightenment Mind *Bodhichitta (skt.)*

The second path is the wish to achieve enlightenment so that you can really help others. You see that all around you is suffering, and that you will die. You empathize and seek to help others. It is thus also referred to as "Ultimate Compassion." When you achieve this state, you will be in a state of permanent, total bliss, and you will be able to see the future and read minds, so that you can really help others. As a Bodhisattva (Enlightenment Warrior), your goal is to reach paradise as quickly as possible to help others. As an enlightened being, you can emanate other bodies to help others. The wish for enlightenment is not a selfish wish – it is the best thing for you to wish for yourself and for others.

3. YANGDAKPAY TAWA

Pure, Correct World View

Correct View of Emptiness

The third path is attaining a correct understanding of emptiness, and developing a world view based on emptiness.

These Three Principal Paths make you change, and can make you an enlightened being.

The Two Bodies (Parts) of a Buddha

1. SUK KU Physical Body of a Buddha *Rupakaya (skt.)*

A human body is an accident waiting to happen. You are going to die – but you don't know when. The human body has a subtle inner invisible physical body, consisting of "chakras" and "inner wind." Through tantric practice, you can change your body to that of a tantric deity's. By keeping your vows and understanding the laws of karma, and practicing kindness and compassion, your body will gradually change to an angel's body which is like light. Once you achieve the Physical Body of a Buddha, you can emanate limitless other bodies to help others.

2. CHU KU Mental and Ultimate-nature parts of a Buddha *Dharma Kaya (skt.)*

The other parts of a Buddha are a Buddha's mind, omniscience, and knowledge, which can be used to help others. The other element is the emptiness of the parts

(e.g. emptiness of body, and emptiness of mind). In other words, the body has no nature of its own from its own side – how other see it is based on karma.

How do the bodies of a Buddha relate to the Three Principle Paths? If you get really good at the first two paths of renunciation and bodhichitta, you will attain the physical body of a Buddha.

The Dharmakaya of a Buddha is achieved by the third path, understanding emptiness. Why do things happen? As you study and understand this, your mind transforms. You will be able to see things deeply, until eventually you see your future lives and the date of your enlightenment.

Without the Three Principal Paths you will not achieve enlightenment. Tantric practice is based fully on the three principal paths, so much so that without them, one could never be successful in tantric practice, but with them, one would almost certainly succeed in the practice.

Ten Qualities of a Qualified Lama

You must have your own Lama (or teacher), and have close contact with them. A human must bring you to enlightenment, which requires a close relationship between teacher and student. The 10 characteristics of a qualified lama are:

1. DULWA

Controlled

The lama is very good at practicing morality or an ethical way of life. This means refraining from hurting others by refraining from stealing, killing, lying, sexual misconduct, etc. A Bodhisattva's life is dedicated to helping others.

2. SHIWA

At Peace

They should be able to meditate well and have deep meditative concentration.

3. NYER SHIWA

High Peace

They should have attained wisdom, or an extraordinary understanding of emptiness and karma.

4. YUNTEN HLAKPA

Spiritual qualities better than

The teacher must have spiritual qualities that exceed those of the student so that they can help them.

5. TSUNCHE

Effort

The teacher should take joy in doing good things. They should be excited to teach you, and really enjoy helping you. They should be willing to do this for free.

6. LUNG GI CHUK

Scriptural knowledge rich

The teacher must know the holy books well, and have wide knowledge of all the great subjects. They must have had intense study and knowledge in order to help you.

7. DE-NYI RABTOK

Emptiness Perceived

This is the most important quality. If the teacher has understood this, they are forever changed. It is an extremely rare accomplishment. If the lama has not directly perceived emptiness, you should at least find someone with a deep intellectual understanding of emptiness. Note that the general etiquette of realized being is to not actually admit directly seeing emptiness. So you must base your judgment on how the lama describes emptiness and assess whether or not it matches the description in scripture.

8. MAKE DEN

Good teacher

The teacher must be able to express themselves well and communicate at the level appropriate for the student.

9. TSEWAY DAKNYI

Love image of

The teacher should be teaching you dharma because they love you, regardless of what you think or do.

10. KYOWA PANG

Tired never

The teacher should be very patient, and should not care how many times they have to explain dharma concepts to you.

You must try to find a lama. Without a teacher, you can't learn. Find a qualified lama, then devote yourself to them and commit to serious practice. It is very difficult to find someone with all the qualities. The key is to find someone who has at least the first three (morality, meditative concentration, wisdom understanding emptiness).

Three Qualities of a Good Student

As discussed in Aryadeva's 400 Verses:

- 1. Free of preconceptions willing to reconsider their world view, think critically, and be open to new possibilities.
- 2. Intelligent in a spiritual sense A good student should have a high spiritual IQ. For example, they should wonder: where they came from? why do bad things happen? They should be spiritually curious.
- 3. Must have high aspirations in life they should be concerned with death and how to stop suffering.

<u>The Cycle of Life</u> The goal is to escape this cycle of life, or *samsara* (*skt*.)

KORWASamsaraTo go in a circle

The cycle of life is the condition of being forced, though the power of karma and mental afflictions, to take on the impure parts that make up a suffering being, over and over again. Beings in samsara get old, die, and change, helplessly. They lack control. When you break free from samsara, you won't have to get old, and things will work in a new way.

To break out of samsara, you must understand emptiness, which will change how you view phenomena and how you live. For example, human instinct is to yell back when you are yelled at. But if you understand emptiness, you won't yell back.

Using your experience of seeing emptiness directly, you will be able to break out of the cycle of life.

The Eight Worldly Thoughts

These worldly thoughts ruin your spiritual practice:

- 1. Being happy when you get something.
- 2. Being unhappy when you don't get something.
- 3. Being happy when you feel good.
- 4. Being unhappy when you don't feel good.
- 5. Being happy when you become well known.
- 6. Being unhappy when no one knows you.
- 7. Being happy when people speak well of you.
- 8. Being unhappy when people speak badly of you.

By worrying about the above thoughts, you will ruin your spiritual practice. Things happen all the time that you perceive as good or bad – don't worry about it. Don't exacerbate the highs or lows – just accept them, and focus on your practice.

<u>The Four Laws of Karma</u>

1. LE NGEPA Karma is definite Karma definite

If you do good things out of kindness, they can never lead to a bad result. If you do things with a bad motivation, the results will be bad.

Don't let appearances deceive you. While lies may appear to work sometimes, they don't always work – so it should be clear that lies are not are universally helping.

2. LE PEL CHEWA The consequences are greater than the actions Karma always gets bigger

Karmic things work like organic growth. Small irritations can grow to be huge, and have implications for years.

3. LE MAJEPA DANG MI TREPA Nothing will happen from nothing

If you don't do a karma, then you will not have anything happen to you. For example, by avoiding small negative deeds, you will have the huge positive impact of saving yourself from future karmic pain. If you don't make great efforts, you won't make great changes. You must become a vow keeping expert. If you don't know or keep the bodhisattva vows, you won't change.

4. JEPA CHU MISAWA Once you do a karma, it never goes away by itself

Your record everything you do – you can't escape the consequences of your actions. The ways of committing a karmic action are doing it with the body, saying words, or thinking something. Thought is raw karma. The ultimate karma is thought, so you need to control your thoughts. If you think, you are collecting karma. The one exception to having to experience the full force of a karmic consequence is through purification or the Four Powers. The Four Powers describe how you can purify yourself of the consequences of your past negative karma.

Bodhichitta – Ultimate Compassion

JANGCHUB KYI SEM

Bodhi	Chitta (skt.)
Buddha	Mind

The wish for enlightenment for the sake of every living being (so that you can really help others).

This wish to become a buddha can happen long before actually reaching Buddhahood. True bodhichaitta is a rare spiritual breakthrough – it's a mystical experience accompanied by visions and is extremely difficult to attain. You truly see yourself doing everything that helps others by achieving buddhahood. This requires meditation, rather than simply directly helping others. The bodhisattva has one thing in mind – to spend all their energy getting there, with others in mind. bodhichitta puts you on a one track course where each action is toward enlightenment. Uncontrollably, you will also be helping others.

Seven Steps to Develop Bodhichitta

The seven steps in the cause-and-effect method for developing bodhichitta are:

1. MARSHE

Recognize that all other beings have been your mother. Your mother bore you and equipped you with all your basic functions, worrying each minute. Every being in the world has been your mother countless times. Your mind had no beginning and has no end. Thus, you have been every type of being countless times, with no beginning.

2. DRINDEN

Kindness Recall

Consider the ultimate kindness of your mother, who provided the physical material to give you a human body, with which you can achieve enlightenment, the opportunity to exit suffering. So after recalling that all other beings have been your mother, recall their kindness.

3. DRINSO

Kindness pay back

Think of how to pay back the kindness of your mother. Gratitude is a high spiritual level in Buddhism; a wonderful emotion. In scripture, if you don't think of paying back kindness, you are considered a monster.

4. YI-ONG JAMPA

Pretty Love

Love all people with the intensity of a mother for her only child. If a mother could only have one child, that one child would look pretty or beautiful to them, no matter what. The child looks "yiong" to the mother. If you think this of everyone, that is a high state (and very difficult to achieve). "Jampa" means love – you want to give or provide them with everything you can.

5. NYINGJE CHENPO

Compassion Big

Think that you want to remove all the problems beings suffer. Help them identify and get rid of problems (e.g. teach them how to avoid mental afflictions and the tyranny of bad thoughts). Misery is caused by one's own mind – you want to help others stop that by stopping the impure part of the mind.

6. HLAKSAM NAMDAK

Ultimate personal responsibility

Think that "I will take upon myself to do my best to remove their suffering and give them what they need and I don't care if no one helps me." This is a big personal decision to no longer wait around and waste time.

7. SEMKYE

Achieve the wish to become enlightened as soon as possible so that you can show others how to free themselves.

Through study and tantric practice, you will see the importance of reaching enlightenment as quickly as possible. Upon enlightenment, you will have multiple bodies and be able to read minds in order to help others. In the Lam Rim, it is said "Eat first." It is similar in concept to a father eating everything to get the strength necessary to find food for the entire family. In other words, you won't really be able to help others unless you can show them how to exit the cycle of suffering. You must reach the state that enables you to do this.

Three Versions of Dependent Origination

TENDREL

Dependent Origination

Things happen because of dependence. Things occur due to something else. First you must understand this positive aspect of how things exist, which is the flip side of emptiness (the negative aspect – i.e. everything is empty in that nothing exists from its own side without being dependently originated). Then, you will understand why things do not happen self-existently in the way that we normally think. To achieve liberation and happiness, you must see emptiness directly.

There are 3 versions of dependent origination:

- 1. The Functionalist Group, which is comprised of:
 - a) The Abhidharma School
 - b) The Sutrist (Logic) School
 - c) The Mind-Only School

Of the four great schools of India, these are the lower schools. They believe that things are dependently originated in the sense that things depend on causes and conditions. For example, they believe a tree depends upon a seed (cause) and sunlight and water (conditions). However, this fails to cover the interdependence of unchanging things such as empty space. However, understanding this does not remove unhappiness. This is not sufficient.

2. Independence Group is comprised of the Sautantrika Madhyamika, which is the lower half of the Middle Way school.

The Independence Group believes that something is dependently originated if it depends on its parts. This definition is better since it covers things that do not have causes, such as emptiness and empty space. Space is there even when the planets disappear. The parts of space are its directions. However, this still does not remove unhappiness.

3. Consequence Group is comprised of the Prasangika Madhyamika, which is the higher half of the Middle Way school. This is the school of Lord Buddha, the Dalai Lama, and the tantric schools.

This school believes in the power of consequential logic – prove things by showing the consequence of wrong ideas. The Consequence Group believes that everything is dependently originated because they exist as a projection of your own mind, as a projection forced on you by your past karma.

For example, consider your arm. Your mind perceives the flesh colored cylinder as your arm. There is nothing in the arm itself that give it its "armness" – rather, it is your projection. If your karma was worse, you would not perceive it as a human arm, but rather as something like a dog's leg (i.e. if you had the karma to be living a dog's life). In other words, what you see is dependent upon the state of your mind. What you see and experience is imputed by your mind and karma. The arm is dependently originated due to a reasonable basis and the projection of the mind. If your karma was different or shifts, the arm "turns into" a dog's leg.

Alternatively, consider yourself seeing your boss yelling at you. Objectively, all that is happening is a stream of high decibel sounds and waving body parts. The boss is empty of any inherent existence. Your mind forces you to see the situation as an angry person yelling at you. Your mind and karma caused the situation. (Another person – e.g. your enemy – might not see this as a "bad" situation).

If you yell back, you perpetuate the pain and plant seeds for experiencing this again in the future. If you are kind and do not yell back, you can break out of the cycle of suffering.

Everything is dependently originated (a projection forced on you by your mind and past karma). Nothing is not dependently originated. You can plant the karma for yourself to project an enlightened existence in the future.

Drastic karmic shifts can occur in minutes:

Alive -> Die -> Bardo Realm -> Rebirth -> New projection of the mind

This process can happen in minutes to radically shift your projections. That's why it is crucial to get enlightened while you can.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Three: Buddhist Refuge

The Perfection of Wisdom

Refers to the Perfection of Wisdom Sutras, which focus on emptiness. It also refers to 6^{th} of the Six Perfections.

SHERAB KYI PARUL TU CHINPA

Wisdom	Other Side	Gone To
Prajnya	Paramita (skt.)

Wisdom Gone to the Other Side refers to the wisdom that makes you perfect.

The perfection of wisdom is the knowledge of a person of the greater way with which they perceive emptiness, and which is imbued with the Wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta).

The perception of emptiness referred to here does not have to be direct – it could be intellectual. The greater way refers to the Mahayana way, doing things for the benefit of all other sentient beings.

The Root Text and Author:

NGUNTOK GYENOrnament of RealizationsRealizationsOrnamentAbhisamaya Alamkara (skt.)

Author: Jetsun Jampa Lord Maitreya is the future Buddha. Lord Maitreya Loving One

The text was taught by Lord Maitreya to:

Pakpa	Tokme	(~350 AD)
Arya	Asanga (sk	t)
•	Not Obstr	ructed
	Unstoppa	ble

Pakpa Tokme transcribed the text.

The Commentary and it's Author:

The commentary to the root text is written by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493 – 1568) and titled *Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom*. Kedrup Tenpa Dargye was a writer of textbooks for Sera Mey monastery.

<u>Refuge</u>

KYAMDRO

Taking Refuge is to look to some object outside of yourself in hopes that the objet will be of assistance to you. Normal refuge usually involves fear and an object that helps protect you (e.g. you go to the police for help). In Buddhism, the Three Jewels are the refuge. Other refuges (e.g. people, authorities, money, etc.) don't last.

<u>The Three Jewels</u> are: the Buddha Jewel, the Dharma Jewel, and the Sangha Jewel.

<u>The Dharma Jewel</u>

A truth or reality relating to the greater way, and to the enlightened side of the four truths, and which involves either a cessation or a path.

The Dharma Jewel is the most important of the Three Jewels. Your understanding, and the realizations in your mind and in others' minds protects you.

Especially important is the direct perception of emptiness. During this 20 minute experience, you see the day of your enlightenment, how many future lives you will have before your enlightenment, and you know you have met a buddha directly. Once you have glimpsed emptiness, you will be born into good conditions, propelled by the power of your good karma.

You gain a cessation in the form of a permanent end of doubt regarding Buddhism. You perceive that your perception is correct and you will put all your effort into saving others. An example of a path would be reaching true renunciation, which is known as the path of accumulation.

<u>The Five Paths</u>

- **1.** Accumulation cultivate virtue, renunciation and bodhichitta. You have reached true renunciation when you are unceasingly thinking about ending your suffering.
- 2. **Preparation** reaching an intellectual understanding of emptiness.
- 2. **Seeing** the direct perception of emptiness.
- **4. Habituation** Using your perception to permanently remove mental afflictions; using your experience to recondition your life.

5. No more learning – nirvana or enlightenment, depending upon the level of your practice. Hinayana practitioners reach nirvana. Mahayana practitioners reach full enlightenment and buddhahood.

Sangha Jewel

Anyone who has seen emptiness directly is the sangha jewel. Seek protection in those who have seen emptiness directly, which requires great effort, training, and meditation. When you see it directly yourself, you become one who others pray to.

<u>Buddha Jewel</u>

The Buddha sees all that exists (deceptive reality - past, present, future) and the emptiness of everything (ultimate reality) all at the same time. Unless you are a Buddha, you cannot perceive emptiness itself and deceptive reality at the same moment. Buddhas are not omnipotent, but rather are omniscient. They help through teaching.

The common theme of the Three Jewels is emptiness, which is the protection. You yourself supply the reality – things have no inherent reality of their own. In bad situations, you must have love and compassion. What happens is a product of your karma. Take refuge and maintain an understanding of emptiness.

Ways of Describing Bodhichitta

The first way of dividing the Wish into two types:

- **1) MUNSEM** The Wish in the form of intention Prayer State of Mind
- **2) JUKSEM** The Wish through action To Enter

There are two stages: to think like a Bodhisattva, and to take vows and act like Bodhisattva.

The second way of dividing the Wish into two types:

1) **KUNDZOB SEMKYE** Deceptive Bodhichitta

The Wish as it is normally spoken of. It is deceptive in being focused toward objects existing as deceptive reality, as seen by an average person. When you see a person, you think it's a person from its own side. To a normal person, the object deceives even whilst the normal person wants to help.

2) **DUNDAM SEMKYE** Absolute Bodhichitta

The Wish in its ultimate form, which is a code word for the direct perception of emptiness.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Four: Buddhist Refuge

<u>Nirvana</u>

NYUNDRIP MALUPAR PANGPAY SO-SOR TANGOK

Mental In entirety eliminated one-by-one Seeing 4 Arya Truths Affliction

Nirvana (**NYANGDE** in Tibentan) is defined as "The permanent cessation in which one has eliminated the mental affliction obstacles in their entirety, due to one's individual analysis."

The 'individual analysis' refers to a person's realization of the various individual details of the Four Arya Truths, one-by-one, after the direct perception of emptiness. After seeing emptiness directly, you are a "stream-enterer" or Arya (literally, one who has seen emptiness).

<u>The Four Arya Truths</u>

- 1. All is suffering in this realm
- 2. You see the cause of the suffering (mental afflictions)
- 3. You see the end of suffering
- 4. You see the cause of the end of suffering (the path)

To reach Nirvana, you need to stop all mental afflictions. Seeing emptiness directly gives you that capability.

Your mental continuum is a product of your karmic seeds, and of their configuration or impression on your mind. The imprints come together, or configure, leading to outcomes. Every perception you have is a ripening of karmic seeds. After you have seen emptiness directly, you will never do anything except think, speak, and behave in a way so as to create the positive imprints leading to the configuration of your nirvana.

Nirvana is the elimation of all negative imprints and seeds. Emptiness gives you the insight to perform constant virtue, planting positive imprints and potentials. Without knowledge of this, you do not have enough power to achieve nirvana. It gives you the ability to stop creating negative imprints.

Types of Nirvana

1. HLAKCHE NYANGDE

Nirvana with something left over

Something have nirvana

This is also referred to as nirvana with remainder. This means the state of nirvana where you still possess a body that was produced by impure karma.

The body is made up of the **five heaps**, or piles of stuff:

- a) Physical form
- b) Feelings (sensory, emotional, pleasure, pain)
- c) Ability to discriminate (to tell the difference between two things)
- d) Main mind (consciousness, senses, mental functions)
- e) Other factors

Feeling and discrimination are two of the 46 mental functions – they are highlighted specifically because these two mental functions cause your suffering.

2. HLAKME NYANGDE Nirvana with nothing left over

something nothing nirvana left over

This refers to nirvana where you no longer possess such a body.

3. MI-NEPAY NYANGDE Nirvana that does not stay

not stay nirvana

This refers to nirvana that does not stay in either the extreme of suffering, or pure bliss. This is the nirvana of a totally enlightened being.

SITA – wheel edge - the extreme of suffering, where we are now.

SHITA – peace edge - the extreme of peace, which refers to the nirvana of the lower way (hinayana), where a person has eliminated their mental afflictions forever, but not attained total enlightenment.

Three Paths to Nirvana

1. Train in the wisdom of realizing emptiness.

- 2. Undertake the above training under the influence of fine morality and concentration (meditation).
- 3. Become very familiar with the realizations seen when perceiving emptiness directly.

The Object We Deny

GAKJA – the object we deny; a self-existent thing. deny object

This is what we think is out there, but which is not really there. Emptiness is the absence of something. It is a negative state. A "gakja" is what we negate. Without first knowing what a self-existent thing is, you cannot prove that it is not there, which is necessary to realize emptiness.

A gakja is something which exists from its own side. Our usual perception is to think objects exist from their own side. However, it is not true – things only exist in dependence of something. Things exist in dependence on parts, causes, or projections. Things do not existing by radiating their own nature. Things are empty of any self-existent nature.

When you have a negative emotion, you think it is from its own side. But that's not true. You see things that way as a projection, forced upon you by your past karma.

<u>Types of Beings</u> There are those who haven't seen emptiness, and those who have.

1) SOSO KYEWO ordinary person

2) JETOP JANGSEN PAKPA

after get bodhichitta arya

A bodhisattva who has seen emptiness directly. However, things still appear to them to be self-existent, but they don't believe what they see.

3) TONGNYI NGUNSUM DU TOKPAY LOPA

emptiness directly in seeing practitioner

A person who is not a Buddha but who is in the direct perception of emptiness

To see emptiness directly, there are stages. First, you need to lead an ethical life. This enables you to concentrate clearly and achieve deep meditation (unethical living has subtle effects on the mind that prevent deep meditation). Deep meditation enables one to see emptiness.

The metaphor of the Magic Show

In the metaphor of the magic show, a magician throws a small stick on the ground and casts a spell, making the people standing there see the stick as a horse or cow. Other people who join the crowd later do not see the stick as an animal because they weren't there when the spell was cast.

The spectators to the spell are like people who have not yet seen emptiness directly since they see things as self existent and also believe that they are. The magician is like a bodhisattva who has seen emptiness directly – things appear to them as self-existent, but they don't believe what they see. The latecomers are like someone who is not a Buddha but who is in the direct perception of emptiness: things neither appear as self-existent to them, not are they believing them at that time to be self-existent.

Proofs of Emptiness

In Buddhist logic, there are four elements to a proof:

- 1) Basis of consideration
- 2) Assertion of characteristic
- 3) Reason
- 4) Example

#1 and #3 must connect. # 2 and #3 must be valid. If #3 holds, then #2 must hold. If you negate #2, it negates #3 also. Each element must be acceptable individually.

For example:

- 1) Consider the sun
- 2) The sun it not blue
- 3) The sun is yellow

The Emptiness of One or Many

The subject, or basis, of the proof is the "three knowledges".

- 1) Consider the three knowledges
- 2) The three knowledges do not really exist (i.e. are not self existent)
- 3) Because they do not exist really as one, nor do they exist really as many
- 4) For example, they are like a reflection of an image in a mirror

If you disprove something as singular, then you automatically disprove something as plural. Therefore, we must prove that the three knowledges do not really exist as one thing.

Things can be organized as follows

All Things Unchanging Changing Physical Mental

Gross Subtle

If something has parts, then it cannot exist as one thing on its own since the thing exists in dependence upon its parts. Therefore, we must prove that all things have parts.

Gross physical things have parts, so they cannot exist as one. Subtle physical things (like atoms) also have parts (e.g. top and bottom of an atom), so they cannot exist as one. Mental things are composed of moments. The stream of the moments are the parts of the mental things. Unchanging things like emptiness, empty space, and cessations also have parts. The parts of emptiness are the emptinesses of all different things (all things have an emptiness). Empty space has directions. There are different types of cessations. Therefore, everything has parts.

Thus, we have proven that there is no one thing that really exists (since all things have parts, and things with parts do not really exist as one thing). And since we have proven that no one thing really exists, it follows that things do not really exist as many either.

<u>Tantra</u>

The open path of Buddhism and the secret path of Buddhism (tantra) are not to be mixed. There are two elements that must be present in order for tantra to work:

1) The person who has spoken the tantra must be a being of exceptional spiritual power.

2) The person who practices the tantra must be someone who is leading a very pure life.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One **Class Five: Applied Meditation**

GOMPA Habituation

Fixing the mind on something spiritual so the mind will be imbued and imprinted with the qualities of the spiritual object

SAMTEN

The 5th of the Six Perfections – Meditative Concentration.

There are three realms in samsara: the Desire Realm, the Form Realm, and the Formless Realm. Humans are in the Desire realm. Strive in your meditation to get to the 1st level of the Form realm where you can have the direct perception of emptiness.

TING NGE DZIN	The ability to fix mind on anything, single-
Samadi (skt)	pointedly, for a moment.
SHI-NE	The Highest form of Samadhi.

Shamata (skt)

With *shiney*, one can achieve enlightenment. There are nine levels of attainment in this meditation (which is discussed below). When you can achieve them, then you must focus that concentration on emptiness.

Five Parts to Every Meditation

- 1. Preparing to begin meditation (the six preliminaries)
- 2. The six conditions of an ideal meditation environment
- 3. Assume the correct posture for meditation
- Engage in the actual mental process during meditation
- 5. Select the object of meditation

These are explained in detail below.

<u>Preparing to Begin - the Six Preliminaries</u> 1) NEKANG CHI DANG TEN DRAM

Place Arrange Altar Clean and

Set up a sacred place.

2) CHUPA Make Offerings. Offerings

3) **KYAMDRO SEMKYE** Go for refuge and cultivate bodhichitta. Go for refuge chitta

Develop the Wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta) while sitting in meditative posture

4) **TSOKSHING SELDEB** Visualize the Merit Field. assembly place to beseech

Visualize the collected Lamas and Holy Beings in front of you – those who you are going to for refuge.

5) **TSOKSAK DRIPJANG** Collect energy and purify obstacles. together collect obstacle purify

This process is comprised of seven elements and is referred to as the **Seven Ingredients** (see below).

6) **SULNDEP** Request blessings from the Holy Beings to beseech

Request the Lamas (who you envision) to give you blessings (*jinlap*). Ask them to help you increase your spiritual abilities (e.g. to see emptiness).

The Seven Ingredients

These gather positive potential and purify obstacles. The point of spiritual practice is to change the mind. This is the 5^{th} step of the six preliminaries.

1) CHAKTSEL Prostration

Bow to holy beings, to the Dharma (the teachings), and to the Sangha (those who have seen emptiness directly).

- 2) **CHUPA** Visualize making offerings to the Holy Beings
- 3) **SHAKPA** Confessing

Open yourself up – confess your bad deeds to remove negativity. Recall taking refuge and generating bodhichitta, recall you past unkindness and regret the deeds. This is the one step in the seven ingredients that has to do with removing/purifying obstacles (the others have to do with gathering positive energy).

- 4) **YI-RANGWA** Rejoice in the good deeds of yourself and others
- 5) **CHUNKOR KORWAR KUL** Requesting teachings Dharma wheel turn urge

Urge Holy Beings to teach.

- 6) **SULNDEP** Beseech Holy Beings to stay near you
- 7) NGOWA Dedication

Dedicating the goodness you have done for the sake of all beings.

The Six Conditions of the Environment

1) **TUNPAY YUL** Stay in a place which is supportive of concentration. conducive place

For example, places that are quiet and safe.

2) **DUPA CHUNGWA** Have few wants.

Cultivate an attitude where you don't need many things (i.e. live simply).

- 3) **CHOK SHEPA** Be satisfied with the things you have.
- 4) **JA MANG PANG** Give up activity a lot give up

Give up being too busy – do the minimum necessary so as not to distract yourself from meditation.

5) **TSULTRIM DAKPA** Maintain an ethical way of life. ethics pure

Negative energy is detrimental to your focus. Therefore you should live ethically. Teaching Dharma is the highest virtue.

6) **NAMTOK PANG** Give up sense objects

sense object give up

Try to withdraw from the six senses – withdraw the mind and get out of attachment to sensory things.

<u>The Eight Point Posture</u>

1) **KANGPA KYILNTRUL** Cross your legs however you can. legs cross

Usually it means full lotus or half-lotus, but the point is to sit however you can and not distract the mind from focusing.

2) **MIK MIYE MIDZUM** Don't keep your eyes completely open or closed.

Keep them slightly open – this helps avoid external distraction and helps keep you from falling asleep. You should not have any visual distractions in the field of vision.

3)	LU DRANG	Sit up straight. The need to sit up straight has to be with the subtle spiritual body.
4)	TRAKPA NYAM	Make your shoulders level (both at same height).
5)	SO MITU MIMA	Make sure your head is neither tilted up or down.
6)	SU CHU RANGLUK	Let your teeth and lips stay in their natural, loose position. Do not clench your jaws – relax.
7)	CHE YASOY RANGL	UK The tongue should be in a natural position, near the upper palate behind the front teeth.
8)	UK JUNG- NGUP	Make your breath completely quiet. Count each breath beginning with the exhalation part of the breath.

Habituation to the meditation posture is very helpful because it keeps these variables fixed. Keep the left hand below the right hand – this has to do again with the subtle spiritual body and is discussed further in Tantra.

The Five Obstacles and Their Corrections

1) **LELO** Laziness – not wanting to meditate.

Antidotes:

- a) **DEPA** Faith in the results of meditation (moving along the five paths).
- b) **DUNPA** Decide you want to be a good meditator because you want the results.

- c) **TSUNDRU** Make efforts to be a good meditator because you want the results.
- d) **SHINJANG** (practiced ease) If you have meditated enough, it becomes easy and you feel good doing it, and you enjoy it.
- 2) Losing the Object. Antidote: Recall the object.
- 3) **JINGGU** Having dullness or agitation (coarse or subtle)

Fixation is the ability to fix the mind on its object. Clarity is how clear the mind is, not how clear the visualization is. Intensity is a matter of degree.

JINGWA	RAKPA	Coarse dullness is fixation with no clarity.
Dullness	gross	

JINGWA	TRAMO	Subtle dullness is fixation and clarity, but with a lack of
Dullness	subtle	intensity.

Dullness is the biggest enemy because it can fool you into thinking you are progressing (but it can actually make you dumber).

Antidote: SHESHIN Watchfulness

4) **DU MIJEPA** Fail to take action to correct dullness or agitation when you should

Antidote: Tighter focus. Make efforts to correct dullness or agitation.

5) Making corrections when it is not necessary to do so. This can be caused by doubt, which makes it difficult to keep the mind content in single pointed concentration.

Antidote: Self-confidence in what you are doing.

The 9 Levels of Shamata

These are the nine stages of Attainment leading to full shamata.

1) **SEM JOKPA** Putting you mind on the object

At this stage, you place your mind on the object, but the mind has little ability to hold its concentration. Graphically, it can be represented by: * * * * * * (The locations of the * signify moments of concentration on the object, and the spaces in between signify moments where there is lack of concentration.)

2) **GYUNDU JOKPA** Put your mind on an object in a stream

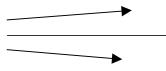
Here the times of concentration become longer in duration, and can be represented graphically by: - - - -

3) **LENTE JOKPA** Patches of concentration

Here you are able to focus on the object longer with strong fixation and recall to quickly patch the gaps when your focus breaks off, represented graphically as:

4) **NYEWAR JOKPA** Placing the mind on the object closely.

Here you have good fixation and clarity, but low intensity. You have coarse agitation (arrow above the line) and dullness (arrow below the line), represented as follows:



5) **DULWAR JEPA** To bring the mind under control to tame do

You have good watchfulness and no longer lose the object. Good fixation and clarity, but still not very intense. There is still subtle dullness that results from too much taming of coarse agitation, represented by:



6) **SHIWAR JEPA** peace do

Making the mind calm

You have powerful watchfullness, and can detect the subtle agitation that results from the uplifting of the mind of the previous state.



Make the mind totally calm 7) NAMPAR SHIWA JEPA totally peace do

Recollection and watchfulness are total, and there is only very faint, subtle dullness or agitation •

..... ►

8) TSE CHIKTU JEPA One pointed make

Making the mind single-pointed

Effortlessly staying focused, once you have brought the mind there. It requires minimal effort to get your there.

9) NYAMPAR JOKPA Even place mind Effortlessly abiding in meditation

You effortlessly abide in meditation, automatically, without effort. This is the final stage of shamata, and is required for you to see emptiness directly.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Six: Applied Meditation

Three Types of Meditation

The mind is like a mirror. There must be content to your meditation. It is pointless to meditate on nothing.

There are three types of meditation:

1) **JOKGOM** Single pointed meditation

Set the mind single pointedly on an object or idea. Success comes from singlemindedness (even in worldly pursuits). For example, visualize the Buddha. Start with the silhouette, then the face, colors, the breathing, the smell, the warmth – it is an all sensory meditation. Feel the entire being. That's real jokgom.

2) **SHARGOM** Review Meditation

Like holding pictures to your mind in a certain order. Create new habits by thinking through the connections. For example, review meditation on Death Meditation will create new thinking in your mind.

3) **CHEGOM** Analytical Meditation

This is problem solving meditation. Set a Buddhist question in your mind and examine it from all angles. For example, ask yourself what is the most important Buddhist thing to do? Each day, struggle with the question – intellectual questioning. Resolve the question. Once you have decided on the answer, apply jokgom meditation.

Lam Rim Meditation

LAM RIM Steps to the path to Enlightenment

Path steps

This is the most important object of meditation. The name is from the Buddha's *Perfection of Wisdom* sutras. They provide a certain order to follow – steps in your spiritual career (although some contest this idea). As in any pursuit (like playing a piano), you need a teacher, guidance, and practice. In Buddhism, the practice is very subtle. If you follow <u>all</u> the steps, you <u>must</u> become enlightened.

The Lam Rim covers the theory of Buddhism and the traditional teachings in a complete though abbreviated way. A course of study based on the steps is referred to as LAM RIMPA.

The Lam Rim encompasses parts of the five great texts that form the basis of the Geshe course of study. "Tsen nyipa" is the monk's way, relying upon reasoning, as is the case in the great monastaries. Tsen Nyipa covers the same material as Lam Rimpa, with very great depth and detail. The results are therefore much greater if you are willing to work hard and understand the details as a geshe does.

Each of the four great schools in India had studies in conjunction with meditation and retreats. Anyone with the perseverance can excel greatly. The five great texts are:

1) **PARCHIN** Perfection of Wisdom Sutras (*Prajnaparamita*, skt.)

This is the study of the lower-half of the middle way school (the Independent School), and takes 12 years in the monastery.

2) **UMA** Middle Way (*Madhyamika*)

This is the study of the upper half of the middle way school, which contain the highest teachings on emptiness, and the Mind-Only School. (4 years in the monastery)

3) **DULWA** Vowed Morality (*Vinaya*)

This is the study of ethics to lead a moral life. Presentation of the Detailist school. (2 years in the monastery.)

4) **DZU** Higher Knowledge (*Abhidharma*)

This is an encyclopedia of Buddist philosophy from the 1st of the four great schools, covering topics such as the parts of the mind, how the universe forms, time, cosmology, karma, meditation and mental afflictions (2 years in the monastery.)

5) **TSEMA** Logic and Perception (*Pramana*)

In the traditional course of study, every year three or four months is devoted to the study of logic and perception, based on the Sutrist of Logic School. Theories of perception, how it works, and why we recognize things are very important to understand to facilitate seeing emptiness directly. How to think clearly is a doorway to seeing. This study typically culminated in the Winter Debates.

The Lam Rim is an abbreviation of all five great texts. To be a teacher, knowledge of the full details of the five great texts is necessary in order to be able to be equipped to confront what arises in meditation.

Lama Meditation

YUNTEN SHIR GYURMA The Set

The Source of All My Goodness

Good Basis Book about Spiritual qualities

This book is about the source of all subtle virtues. The source of all goodness is your Lama, or teacher.

The first Lam Rim discusses the benefits of devotion to your Lama. You must find this person. They need to be qualified, and should have a tight relationship with you to monitor your progress. All the great spiritually realized being have mentors.

To meditate on the Lam Rim do a review meditation, then single-pointed meditation.

The 4 steps of Lama meditation are:

1) **DEPA JANGWA** Develop faith and admiration in your Lama faith develop

Check out the Lama and see if they know what they are talking about. Come to a point where you have faith in the Lama because you have thoroughly investigated the Lama. Once you are satisfied, develop faith in your Lama. Be careful of your choice; you will think and become like them.

2) **SAMPE TENPA** How to think about your Lama in your take self to thoughts

How will you relate to and think about the Lama? Don't break your connection. Think about the Lama as the person (or persons) who will save your life.

The Lama will seem to you as good for a while – then your karma will change and wear out. You think the Lama has changed, but really, your own perception has changed. You must deal with this and handle it. Understand and fight your karmic shift. Understand that the Lama is your challenge – make the connection and place your faith in the Lama. This is Tantric practice. If you view this as someone testing you to get you to enlightenment, that is a good way to think. You must be grateful. Your Lama will keep pushing you forward. Once you decide to shift your mind, you will see their actions as a challenge to you. You must do what you know is right.

3) **JORWE TENPA** How to act towards your Lama Act take self to

To succeed spiritually, you will progress level by level. For example:

Level I – you just soak in information from your Lama Level II – you help your Lama a bit Level III – you help your Lama more Level IV- you help your Lama with a major project etc...

Eventually, you can't distinguish your needs from your Lama's needs. In service with them, you are like family. You need that sort of relationship. Find a Lama that fits you, and who has a mental connection with you. You help them in what they are doing (which should be helping people get enlightened) and eventually, it becomes a total commitment to take the load off their shoulders. Remember, it's not for the Lama (who is already enlightened) but rather it's for you. It should be an honor for you to help and have an opportunity to work for the Lama. To see emptiness directly, get into a dynamic relationship with your Lama. Don't hold back anything and you'll get everything.

4) **GUPA KYEWA** Develop reverence for your Lama

You will feel this devotion – it is an important sign of spiritual development. He has been patiently waiting for years and years, setting up to guide you, so you feel devotion.

Taking the Essence of this Life

What should be your motivation in this life? There are three parts to the subject of taking the essence of this life, as discussed in the Lam Rim.

1) Steps shared with those of lower capacity – motivation to stay out of the lower realms and avoid rebirth in the lower realms.

2) Steps shared with those of medium capacity – motivation to avoid any rebirth at all, for their own sake.

3) Steps for those of great capacity – motivation to benefit others; to avoid lower realms and rebirth and to help every living being do the same. There are two parts to this: learning how to think like a bodhisattva, and learning how to act like a bodhisattva.

Death Meditation

This is one part of the Lam Rim.

- 1) Death is certain. Only your deeds shall remain. Do review meditation, then single-pointed meditation -- try to think of anyone who didn't die. Understand this point.
- 2) There is no certainty when you will die.
- 3) When you do die, only the Dharma can help you.

The Three Trainings

Morality, Concentration, and Wisdom (understanding emptiness).

Morality is the basis of the other two trainings. One must have morality to concentrate well, which is necessary to see emptiness directly

Quietude and Insight

Quietude (*shamata* in Sanskrit and *Shi-ne* in Tibetan) is that single-mindedness which is imbued with the exceptional bliss of practiced ease due to deep, single-pointed meditation on its object.

Insight (*vipashyana* in Sanskrit and *hlak-tong* in Tibetan) is that wisdom which is full of the exceptional blisss of practiced ease by power of the analysis of its object, and which is founded upon quietude.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Seven: The Proof of Future Lives

Buddhist Logic and Perception

TSEMA Correct or valid perception *Pramana* (*skt*.)

Tsema is a valid, correct perception that is tied to a mental image. With a correct mental image, you can see emptiness directly. The use of Logic is in part to see emptiness.

Definition of existence

TSEME	MIKPA	YUPAY	TSENNYI
By a valid	that which	to exist	definition
perception	is perceived		

That which is perceived by valid perception.

I perceive, therefore it is. If I see a thing with a valid perception, then it exists.

Valid vs. Correct

I can buy a stock for valid reasons, but I might not be correct. That is, given the information at hand one can have valid reasons for doing something. Generally, valid means correct, but not necessarily.

Some say that you can have no correct perceptions until you have seen emptiness. Subtle blockages in the mind prevent you from seeing reality correctly. In meditation, these blockages can break down. You can logically work through the blinders. Being with reasoning to see with the mind. Later, you will then be able to perceive ultimate reality directly.

Purpose of Buddhist Logic

NGA-AM NGA DANG DRAWE GANGSAK GI TSU SUNG GI, GANGSAK GI GANGSAK GI TSU MISUNG TE, NYAMPAR GYUR TA RE

Lord Buddha said: "I or someone like myself can judge a person, but no normal person should judge another, for he will fall (to the lower realms)." (From the *Compendium of Stories from the Sutras* by Lord Atisha.)

That is, a Buddha, someone who can read minds can judge other people, but no normal person should try to judge another normal person because he will fail and fall to the lower realms. A normal person should not judge other people, but can judge their actions. A normal person can never be sure why another does something. Know the limits of your direct perceptions.

Types of Valid Perception

1) **NGUNSUM TSEMA** Direct perception

This is the direct perception of things like color, shapes, sounds – obvious reality. The perception of evident objects (**NGUNGYUR**).

This is different from emptiness, which is difficult to see, and the subtle effects of karma, which are very difficult to see.

2) **JEPAK TSEMA** Deductive valid perception deductive valid perception

A perception based on deduction is just as valid or correct as a direct perception. Deductive perception is used to perceive hidden or deeply hidden objects.

To see emptiness, start with deductive perception, and then progress to a direct perception. Get used to deductive perceptions as being valid. However, a direct perception of emptiness gives a certain power, including seeing the Four Arya truths. The effect on the mind stream is not the same as a deductive perception.

KOKGYUR Hidden realities, hidden level of reality (second level of reality)

An example is emptiness itself. To enlightened beings, there is no kokgyur – everything is direct.

To a blind person, everything is kokgyur – it's a deeper level of reality, a mental perception.

SHINTU KOKGYUR Deeply hidden reality

An example is the very subtle workings of karma – levels of reality that are difficult to perceive from deduction. For example, first prove the Buddha does not lie. Then use that fact, plus statements, to deduce truths. For example, Lord Buddha told the truth that all is suffering (no one else had said that), which gives him a certain level of credibility. Of all beings, Lord Budda alone describes our daily suffering

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Seven: continued

accurately. This alone allows us to believe that he is possibly unerring, which cannot be said of those who do not describe our suffering in this way.

The Christian view of God is that he is omniscient and omnipotent. But this raises questions about certain phenomena, such as "why do babies die?" The Buddhist view of Buddhas is that they are omniscient, but not omnipotent. They know what is right and what is wrong, what brings joy and what brings pain. They understand and teach the way to get out of suffering. This is a beautiful vision of omniscience – one who knows perfectly what it is that we must give up in our behavior and worldview, and what we must take up in our behavior and worldview.

Master Dignaga's famous opening statement was as follows:

"I bow down to the Protector, Those Gone to Bliss, the Teacher, those who wish to benefit living beings, and those who have turned into ones with valid perception."

Definition of Valid Perception – a fresh, unmistaken state of mind.

Definition of Person of Valid Perception – an enlightened being (they only have valid perceptions), with the connotation of a person who cannot lie.

Three Main Ways to Show the Buddha is Correct

1) The Teachings cannot be disproved by any direct valid perception.

- 2) The Teachings cannot be disproved by any airtight reasoning (logic).
- 3) The Teachings are free of any internal inconsistency.

Three Ground Rules to Interpret the Buddha

- 1) True Intent: the Buddha must have had something else specific in mind when he said something that was not literal.
- 2) Contradiction: the statement that was made must contradict what we know to be actually true.
- 3) Need: there must be some compelling need or purpose served by the Buddha saying something which is not technically true.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Eight: The Proof of Future Lives

Three Types of Compassion

1) **NYING JE** Compassion *karuna (skt.)*

The wish that others be freed from common suffering

2) NYINGJE CHENPO Great Compassion

maha karuna (skt.)

The wish that all others be freed from all suffering, and the decision to make this happen oneself. Work your whole life to try, each second focusing on helping others. We should seek this state – thinking that if I'm enlightened, I will emanate bodies to help others. This level of compassion is rare.

3) **TUKJE CHENPO** Holy Great Compassion

The compassion of an enlightened being: of someone who actually does help all living beings. This type of compassion is the mindstream of an enlightened being, who does what it takes to help automatically and without thought. It is the result of extraordinary karma.

These three stages usually take lifetimes to develop.

The Charvaka view

The Charvakas did not believe in future lives for 3 reasons:

- 1) The mind is a quality of the body (the way the ability to make someone drunk is a quality of alcohol).
- 2) The mind depends on the body (the way a picture hangs on a wall).
- 3) The mind is a result of the body, like a lamp and its light.

The Material Cause of the Mind

NYERLEN GYI GYU That which turns into a result material cause

For example, seeds turn into a tree, or clay turns into a pot. What is the "material" stuff that became your mind? The consciousness you had an hour ago became the consciousness you have now. Each moment is a seed for the next moment of consciousness. What about the first moment of consciousness at conception?

Your mind is not bounded by the body – it has awareness beyond. The mind has the ability to recall and to know logically that there is some probability of an outcome. Mind/Awareness is not physical and is different from the body. Awareness is pure and continuous. Awareness is ineffable and cannot be hurt – it is just there. The mind has a relationship with the body, but it is not the same as the body. The mind is different stuff from the body (invisible, beyond the limits of the body, crystalline awareness).

The mind has no beginning – this explains how Buddhists understand causation. There is no original cause.

Why can't the cause of your mind be living physical matter?

WANGPOYSUKsense powerliving

There must be similarity or continuity between cause and effect. Living physical matter, such as the parts of the body, is involved with our sense powers of sight, smell, taste, feeling, and hearing. Does the mind do this? No. There is no similarity. Without similarity, there is no cause/effect relationship. Since the mind is not equal to living matter associated with sense powers, it is different, therefore your present awareness is not the result of living matter.

Why can't the cause of your mind be outside physical matter?

CHIY SUK outer form

Can the mind be created by chemicals? It's never been done. Non living physical matter has not been used to create a new, ineffable awareness that's invisible, an ever present mind.

Why can't the cause of your mind be another mindstream?

SHEN GYI GYU other mindstream

For example, does your mind come from your parents' mind? If your tendencies are different from your parents, it shows your mindstreams are different.

Ultimately, awareness is a projection of mind – a much more detailed explanation of this can be found in the study of Madhyamika.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Eight: continued

The Mind at Death

At death, a normal person has desires due to ignorance. As the person dies, the emotion of desire causes the mind to cross over into the next life as a continuation of similar mind.

Proof of Future Lives

The three parts of Master Dharmakirti's main proof for future lives are as follows:

- 1) Consider the mind of a normal person at the moment of death
- 2) That mind will cross to a future mind
- 3) Because that mind possesses desire

Three types of Craving

There are three types of the 8^{th} link of the chain from the Wheel of Life:

- 1) Craving Desire an emotion of craving where you desire, out of ignorance, not to lose an attractive object, which you are willing to hurt someone to get.
- 2) Craving fear an emotion of craving where you desire, out of ignorance, to avoid an unpleasant object, even if it hurts someone.
- 3) Craving for existence an emotion of craving where you desire, out of ignorance, that the "me" continues to exist; this happens at the moment of death, when you are gripped by fear that your being is ending.

Four Levels of Focusing on the Self

How you focus on yourself at death is the key to why craving triggers karma.

- 1) Focusing upon yourself in an ordinary way "this is me" does not trigger existing karma to give a result such as rebirth.
- 2) Seeing yourself in an ignorant way -- that is self-existently -- and then believing that you do exist this way does trigger existing karma for rebirth.
- 3) Seeing yourself as self-existent, but not believing what you see since you have previously seen emptiness directly triggers rebirth.
- 4) Neither seeing or believing yourself as self-existent (Buddhas, or someone in the act of perceiving emptiness directly) does not trigger rebirth.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Nine: How Karma Works

There are no notes for class nine.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Ten: How Karma Works

The Connection between Emptiness and Karma

Lord Maitreya described six different steps in the process through which the tendancy to grasp to some self-nature creates karma.

1) DAKDZIN NYI KYI BAKCHAK

The tendency of seeing things as self-existent comes from a prior life.

2) DAKDZIN NYI KYE

You have a tendency to see the self as self-existent and you hold the parts (e.g. body, mind) to be self-existent. All non-arhat beings have this tendency to see things the wrong way. If something was self-existent, than all beings would see that thing in the same way (e.g. a bug would recognize a "pen" to be a pen).

3) YI-ONG MI-ONG TSUL MIN TOK

nice things not nice wrong way think of things

Things appear either to be attractive or undesirable from their own side.

4) DUCHAK SHEDANG KYE

You feel liking or disliking of things in a stupid (ignorant) way. If these feelings are based on ignorance they are dangerous, as they will cause you to react in ways that are harmful.

For example, if you want to collect wealth it's okay, if you have the right intention and want to give it all up to help others. However, ignorant desire to collect wealth can lead to harmful negative deeds.

5) LE SAK

karma collect it

This step connects emptiness to karma. By doing something in an ignorant way (with wrong motivation), you do things with the emotion of ignorant liking or dislike, and collect karma. For example, you may react with an eye for an eye attitude, which leads you to collect negative karma.

6) KORWAR KOR

circle

You perpetuate your own pain, causing you to circle around in the circle of suffering life.

CLASS NOTES Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Class Ten: continued

You cannot <u>actively</u> understand this process and have feelings of anger and desire. Wisdom always prevails over ignorance.

The Glass of Water

The Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explains what is happening when three different beings sitting around a glass of liquid see it as being three different things.

A hungry ghost see the glass as being full of blood or pus, due to its karma of always being frustrated. A human sees the glass as being full of water. A tantric deity sees the glass as being filled with nectar. These are three valid, simultaneous perceptions.

The glass contains "liquid", but there are three different perceptions of the liquid. Each beings karma causes the perception. In other words, there is no base reality, other than that there is "liquid" present.

Four Elements of a Path of Action

For a complete karma (e.g. of killing), there is:

- 1) The basis or object the person that you kill.
- 2) The thought or intention, which has three parts:
 - i) Identification do you conceive of it as what it is? For example, if you are killing, do you recognize the object as a living thing? (if you recognize something as living, then by wanting to kill, the karma is more complete than if you did not recognize the object as a living thing).
 - ii) Mental affliction did you have an affliction like anger, desire, jealousy or hatred?
 - iii) Motivation did you intend to kill? Something that is pre-meditated is more serious.
- 3) Undertaking the action pulling the trigger.
- 4) Finalization taking ownership of the action (I killed him, and I am happy).

If all these pieces are in place, the result is a complete karma. If an element is missing, then you do not have a karmic path or full karma, and the karmic consequence is lesser.



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class One

1) Name the author of the *Principal Teachings of Buddhism* (give both his popular name and his monk's name), as well as his dates. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

The author of the *Principal Teachings of Buddhism* is Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), whose monk's name was Lobsang Drakpa, or "Pure-Minded One of Wide Renown."

ยิ่งชี้นานา ผู้เกลนาญกุญา

je tsongkapa lobsang drakpa

2) What is the actual name of this work? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The actual name of this work is the *Three Principal Paths*.

lamtso namsum

3) Who wrote the commentary that we are studying? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The commentary that we are studying was written by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), whose secret name was Dechen Nyingpo.

pabongka rinpoche dechen nyingpo

4) Who is the disciple of Trijang Rinpoche who wrote the introduction? Give his full name and correct titles. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The disciple of Trijang Rinpoche who wrote the introduction is Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (1921-).

พุทสาริสานี ซิเรทิเฉติมาสู้ กละเพรา ซูลา

ken rinpoche geshe lobsang tarchin

5) Name the three principal paths. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The three principal paths are renunciation, the wish for enlightenment (or "bodhichitta"), and correct view of emptiness.



6) What are the two bodies of a Buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The two bodies of a Buddha are the physical "body" or part of an enlightened being, known in Sanskrit as the *rupa kaya;* and the combination of the mental and ultimate-nature parts of a Buddha, known in Sanskrit as the *dharma kaya*.



7) Which of the three principal paths cause each of these two bodies?

Renunciation and the wish for enlightenment contribute primarily to the physical "body" or part of an enlightened being, and correct view contributes primarily to the mental and ultimate-nature parts of a Buddha.

8) What is the relationship between the three principal paths and tantric practice?

Tantric practice is based fully on the three principal paths; so much so that, without them, one could never be successful in tantric practice; but with them, one would almost automatically succeed in this practice.

9) Name the ten characteristics of a qualified lama. (Tibetan track students name all in English and give Tibetan for at least five.)

a) They should be a person who "controls themselves well," meaning they practice the extraordinary training of an ethical way of life very well.

5대기 dulwa

b) They should be a person who is "at peace," meaning they have achieved a high degree of the extraordinary training of meditative concentration.



shiwa

c) They should be a person who has "high peace," meaning they practice the extraordinary training of wisdom to a high degree.

केर वि ना

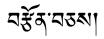
nyer shiwa

d) They should have "spiritual qualities which exceed" those of their student, so that they can help them.

थेंब नुब खुयाया

yunten hlakpa

e) They should be willing to make "great efforts," or take great joy in helping their students.



tsunche

f) They should be "rich in scripture," or have a deep knowledge of the sacred books.

સુઽ ગૈશ્વ સુવ lung gi chuk

g) They should have a "deep realization of suchness," meaning they should either have perceived emptiness directly, or at least have an excellent scriptural and intellectual understanding of it.



h) They should be a "master instructor," meaning they know their student's capacity well, and fit the amount and order of spiritual information to this capacity.

i) They should be the "image of love," teaching the Dharma out of love for students, and not for any worldly motives.



j) They should be "beyond becoming discouraged," never tiring of repeating teachings if necessary to the student.

10) List the three requirements of a good student as found in Aryadeva's 400 Verses.

- a) They are free of preconceptions, willing to try to see things a new way.
- b) They are intelligent, especially in a spiritual sense.
- c) They have high spiritual aspirations in life, and are willing to work hard to reach them.

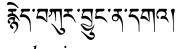
11) Define what is meant by "cycle of life," or *samsara* in Sanskrit. (Tibetan track give the Tibetan word.)

The condition of being forced, through the power of karma and mental afflictions, to take on the impure parts that make up a suffering being, over and over again.



12) List the eight worldly thoughts. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Being happy when we acquire some thing,



nyekur jung na ga

b) And unhappy when we don't.

ম'রু্দ'র'মী'ন্যাবা

majung na miga

c) Being happy when we feel good,



dewa jung na ga

d) And unhappy when we don't.



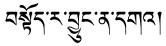
e) Being happy when we become well known,



f) And unhappy when we don't.

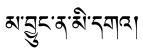


g) Being happy when someone speaks well of us,



tura jung na ga

h) And unhappy when they don't.



majung na miga

- 13) Name the four principles of action (or *karma*.) (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Actions are certain to produce similar results.

ณญ.รูฐานไ

le ngepa

b) The consequences are greater than the actions.

વાર્ચા વસેવા સે ગ le pel chewa

c) One cannot meet a consequence if he or she has not committed an action.

ณฆ.ฆ.ปิฆ.ฑ.ปะ...ซ.เซสีป.ณโ

le majepa dang mi trepa

d) Once an action is committed, the consequence cannot be lost.

ฏุฬานาสูรามีาสาม

jepa chu misawa

14) What is the point at which you know you have developed true renunciation?

When you think day and night of achieving freedom, and no longer have any attraction to the so-called "good" things of this life.



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Two

1) Give an explanation of the two parts of the word "bodhichitta." Does it refer to the mind of a buddha? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

"Bodhi" means "enlightenment," or "Buddhahood," and "chitta" means "mind" or "thoughts." Together, the words mean "the wish to become enlightened [for every living being]." It does *not* mean "Buddha mind" in the sense of a mind which has already reached Buddhahood, or a mind which is somehow already enlightened and only needs to be seen as enlightened.

<u> ମ</u>ୁଦ:କୃଦ:୩ୖୖ):କିଷଷ୍ଠା

jangchub kyi sem

also spelled as:

ล้ม_ีมากฏิรา

semkye

2) Give the seven steps in the cause-and-effect method for developing the wish for enlightenment; explain briefly why each is necessary for the next. (Tibetan track name the seven steps in Tibetan, and explain in English.)

a) Recognize that all living beings have been your mother. Equanimity is necessary to do this because, if you hold some close and others distant, you cannot see *everyone* as a kind mother, deserving your ultimate help—you would exclude some people.

marshe

b) Remember the kindness they have given you when they were your mothers. The first step leads to this one because, if you do not see everyone as having been your mother in the past, then you cannot see everyone as having been kind—you won't think about the good they did for you, if you don't see them all in a beneficent role.



drindren

c) Decide to repay the kindness of your mothers. The second step leads to this one in that—if you don't see your mother as having been kind to you—then you have no reason to pay her back.



d) Love all people with the intensity of a mother for her only child, and wish that they could have every good thing. The previous three points lead to this, for once you recognize everyone as mother, acknowledge her kindness and your debt, and agree to help her in return, the natural result is to want to give her every good thing.

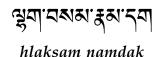
พิราวัราฐมพาย

yi-ong jampa

e) Feel great compassion for all living beings; want them to be free of suffering. The fourth step is a cause for this because—if you do not want them to be happy, to the point of intense love—then you have no reason to want them to be free of suffering.

nyingje chenpo

f) Decide to help everyone even if you have to do it all yourself; regardless of the difficulty, without being discouraged, if no one helps you. The fifth step is a cause for this sixth one because—if you do not want them to be free of suffering—you will certainly not choose to remove their suffering.



g) Achieve the wish to become enlightened for the sake of every living being; that is, develop bodhichitta and become a bodhisattva. The previous step is the cause for this since—once you are determined to help everyone—then you must gain the capacity to do so, by becoming a fully enlightened Buddha.



- 3) Name the two truths, and describe them briefly. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Ultimate truth (ultimate reality): The emptiness of all things; that is, the fact that they are not anything which is *not* simply a projection forced upon you by your past karma.

र्नेब:न्य:यनेब:या

dundam denpa

b) Deceptive truth (deceptive reality, sometimes mistakenly referred to as "relative truth"): all of the normal objects around you, which seem to exist from their own side, or through some nature of their own, but do not, and are therefore "deceptive."

गुतः द्वेन नदेव या

kuntzob denpa

4) Explain what "interdependence" means in each of the three Buddhist schools below. (Tibetan track students give Tibetan word for "interdependence.")

- a) *Functionalist Group:* Things are interdependent in the sense that changing things depend on their causes and conditions. This explanation fails to cover the interdependence of unchanging objects such as empty space or emptiness. (This group consists of the first three classical Buddhist schools of ancient India: the Detailist or Abhidharma School; the Sutrist, or Logic and Perceptual Theory School; and the Mind-Only School.)
- b) *Independent Group:* Things are interdependent in the sense that all objects, changing or unchanging, depend on their parts. This is a comprehensive explanation, but not one which imparts the ultimate meaning of interdependence. (This group consists of the lower half of the Middle Way or Madhyamika School, known as the "Independent" or Svatantrika group.)
- c) *Implication Group:* Things are interdependent in the sense that they are a result of our projecting onto a basis of our projection. This is the ultimate meaning of interdependence. (This group consists of the upper half of the Middle Way or Madhyamika School, known as the "Consequence" or Prasangika group.)

5) Does the self exist?

A "self" or me does exist; there is someone who is writing this homework right now. But there is no "self" or "me" which exists from its own side, through any nature of its own independent of the projections forced upon me by my karma. 6) How can the idea of karma (that is, ethics or morality) co-exist with the idea of emptiness, or do they contradict each other? (Tibetan track students give the words for "morality" and for "emptiness.")

These two ideas are two sides of the same coin: things are "empty" in the sense of being like a blank screen. Whether I see them one way or another depends on my own projections, forced upon me by my past deeds, words, and thoughts. Therefore karma and emptiness are completely intertwined, and anyone who understands emptiness understands the need to be absolutely moral in their everyday life.

ર્તુવા સિમયા ફેંદ પા છેના

tsultrim

tongpa-nyi



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Three

1) Give a brief definition of the perfection of wisdom. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "perfection of wisdom.")

The knowledge of a person of the greater way with which they perceive emptiness, and which is imbued with the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta).

ૡ<u>ૺ</u>ૹૻૻઽૼ૱ૹ૽ૢૻૡૻૻઽૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૡૻૻૢૻૢૢૢૼૡૢૻૺ૱ૻ

sherab kyi parul tu chinpa

2) The root text for our study of the perfection of wisdom is the *Ornament of Realizations*. Who spoke this work, to whom? What is the estimated date of the work? (Tibetan track give both the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for both the work and the authors.)

The Ornament of Realizations was taught by Lord Maitreya to Master Asanga, who lived about 350 AD.

Sanskrit: Abhisamaya Alamkara; Lord Maitreya, Master Asanga



nguntok gyen

<u>દ</u>ે ન ર્સુ તે ન ગુરુષ જ ન ગ

jetsun jampa

রধন্যমান্য ইন্যামান্য

pakpa tokme

3) Who wrote the Tibetan monastic commentary on what we are studying, and what are his dates? (Tibetan track give Tibetan name also.)

The Tibetan commentary is the *Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom*, by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).



parchin tachu

พุณพาสูนารสุสานารุราสูลา

kedrup tenpa dargye

4) Give the definition of the Dharma Jewel, and give one example each of a cessation and a path.

A truth or kind of reality which relates to the greater way, and to the enlightened side of the four truths, and which involves either a cessation or a path. An example of a cessation would be the fact that, after you see emptiness directly, it is impossible to ever doubt the principles of Buddhism again: you gain a cessation for it. An example of a path would be reaching true renunciation, which is known as the "path of accumulation."

5) Give the definition of taking refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "taking refuge.")

A state of mind in which, of your own accord, you put all your hopes into some other object to be of assistance to you.

শ্ভূবঝ'বর্ম্বা kyamdro

6) Describe the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a lesser scope. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for practitioners of the three scopes.)

First, you feel a personal fear that you will be reborn in one of the births of misery. Second, you believe that the Three Jewels can protect you from this suffering. Finally you hope that one or more of the Three Jewels will be able to protect you from these sufferings.



7) Describe result refuge. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for cause refuge and result refuge.)

"Result refuge" is defined as hoping that one or more of the Three Jewels, as they will be achieved in yourself, will render you assistance. In short, it is taking refuge in your own future direct realization of emptiness, and enlightenment.



8) Give the shorter definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "greater way's wish for enlightenment.")

The shorter definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment is "The wish to achieve total enlightenment for the sake of others."

<u>ୖ</u>ଵ୶୲ଌୖ୶ୖ୶୶୶୵୶ୢୖୢୄୠୄ୵୲

tekchen semkye

9) Describe the two types of the wish for enlightenment. (If you know two different ways of dividing the wish into two, you may write either one.) (Tibetan track give the Tibetan names for the two types and describe them in English.)

The first way of dividing the wish into two types:

a) The wish in the form of intention, or thinking like a bodhisattva: The thought to become totally enlightened so that you can be of help to all living beings.



munsem

b) The wish in the form of action, or acting like a bodhisattva: Actually undertaking the activities of a bodhisattva, in order to become a Buddha to help all living beings.



juksem

The second way of dividing the wish into two types:

a) The wish in its "deceptive" form, meaning the wish as it is normally spoken of; the wish to become enlightened so you can help all beings. It is "deceptive" only in being focussed usually towards objects existing as "deceptive" reality, or reality as seen by an average person.

ฑูสายัสาจโลงจาลฏิก kundzob semkye

b) The wish in its "ultimate" form; this is actually just a code word for the direct perception of emptiness.

รัส[.]รุณ[.]พิมพ.จ<u>พ</u>ิรา

dundam semkye

Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Four

1) Give the definition of nirvana. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Nirvana is defined as "The permanent cessation in which one has eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles, in their entirety, due to one's 'individual analysis'."

केंत्र क्षेत्र या युषायर क्षट्याय दे से केंर यह या या वर्षीया

nyundrip malupar pangpay so-sor tangok

2) What does "individual analysis" mean here?

"Individual analysis" here refers to a person's realization of the various individual details of the four realized truths (misnamed by some people as the "four noble truths"), after the direct perception of emptiness.

3) Describe the difference in this school (Madhyamika Svatantrika) between nirvana with something left over, and nirvana with nothing left over. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for both these kinds of nirvana.)

In this school, nirvana "with something left over" means that you have achieved nirvana but still possess a body that was produced by impure karma. Nirvana "with nothing left over" means that you have achieved nirvana and no longer possess such a body.

শ্বনানত্রজাস্তুন:বন্থা

hlakche nyangde

শ্বন্দা মীন মুদ নে ন মা

hlakme nyangde

4) There is a kind of nirvana called "nirvana which does not stay." What is the meaning of the phrase "does not stay"? (Tibetan students give Tibetan for this nirvana, and for the two extremes.)

In this context, "does not stay" describes the nirvana of a totally enlightened being, who stays neither in the extreme of cyclic life (where we are now), nor in the extreme of "peace," which refers to the nirvana of the lower way (the hinayana), where a person has eliminated their mental afflictions forever, but not attained total enlightenment.



- 5) Describe the three main parts of the method for achieving nirvana.
 - a) Become a master of the extraordinary training of wisdom.
 - b) Assure that this extraordinary training is imbued with a mastery of the first two of the extraordinary trainings: morality and meditative concentration.
 - c) Become extremely familiar with the realizations of emptiness which you have already had (referring especially to those you had on the path of seeing.)

6) Why is it important to identify the object that we deny? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "object we deny.")

If we don't know what a self-existent object would look like if it did exist, then we can never come to realize the emptiness, since it consists of the absence of this non-existent thing. This "self-existent object" is known as the "object that we deny."

국지지:31 gakja

7) Explain the three different perceptions of the three different people in the metaphor of the magic show. Who are the three types of real people that these three represent? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for these last three.)

A magician in ancient India throws a small stick on the ground, utters a magic incantation, and sprinkles some special powder in the area. This makes people who have been standing there see the stick as a horse or cow. Other people join the crowd later; they don't see the animal, because they weren't there when the spell was cast.

The spectators see a horse and believe that there is one there. The magician sees a horse as well, since the spell affects him too, but he knows it's not real, and doesn't believe in it. The latecomers neither see a horse nor believe that one is there.

The spectators are like a person who has not yet seen emptiness directly, since they see things as self-existent and also believe that they are. The magician is like a bodhisattva who *has* seen emptiness directly but who is not now in the direct perception of emptiness: things still appear to them to be self-existent, but they don't believe what they see. The latecomers are like someone who is not a Buddha but who is in the direct perception of emptiness: things neither appear as self-existent to them, nor are they believing them at that time to be self-existent.

ส์ ส์ สู่ วั่า ยิ่ง ชั่ว วูร ส่งงง วงกุง บ jetop jangsem pakpa soso kyewo ૹ૾ૣૼૼૼઽ૾૾ૹ૾૾ઽૻૠઽ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૢૻ૱ૻ૱ૻૢૺૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૹૢૻ૱ૻઌ

tongnyi ngunsum du tokpay lopa

8) Write out the reasoning called the "Emptiness of One or Many."

Consider the three kinds of knowledge. They don't exist truly, Because they neither exist truly as one thing, nor do they exist truly as many things. They are, for example, like a reflection of an image in a mirror.

9) Why is it true that if something has parts, it cannot be one thing which really exists?

When we say that something "really exists," we mean that it exists independent of its parts. But this can never be the case, because we perceive something only by perceiving its parts: our eye skips around to the major features of an object, and then our mind organizes this information into one whole object. There could never be a single object that existed in any other way. Therefore no single object can "really" exist.

10) In the section of the commentary known as the *Text of Maitreya*, a debater comes and argues that Maitreya has no state of mind aspiring to fulfill his own needs, and so he has written the *Ornament of Realizations* only for the sake of others. Perhaps the debater is assuming that Maitreya is already a Buddha. If he does assume this, what mistake has he made? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "way which is shared" and "way which is not shared.")

He has mixed the open path of Buddhism with the secret path of Buddhism. In the secret teachings, Maitreya is considered to be a fully enlightened being already. In the open teachings, he is not yet so. In a presentation of the open teachings, one should never mix in the secret teachings, which are meant only for specially qualified disciples. The open teachings are also known as the "way which is shared" (by the open and secret teachings), while the secret teachings are known as the "way which is not shared."

ज्ञुत सेंद मी आसा

tunmong gi lam

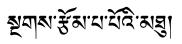
हुत र्रोट सामीत परि लामा

tunmong mayinpay lam

11) The eighth century master Dharmakirti, in his root text on Buddhist logic, says that two elements must be present for tantra to work. Name them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The two elements that must be present for tantra to work are:

a) The person who has spoken the tantra must be a being of exceptional spiritual power.



ngak tsompapoy tu

b) The person who practices the tantra must be someone who is leading a very pure life.



ngak depapoy tsultrim

Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Five

1) List the five parts for our study of the practice of meditation.

- a) How to prepare for meditation.
- b) The six conditions for an ideal meditation environment.
- c) The correct posture for meditation.
- d) The actual mental process during meditation.
- e) The object of meditation: what we meditate on.

2) List just the names of the six preliminaries that should be performed before a meditation session. Be careful not to confuse them with the "seven ingredients." (Tibetan track students answer in Tibetan.)

a) Create a clean and sacred space, with an altar.

nekang chi dang ten dram

b) Set forth beautiful offerings.

ุลธิ์รฺญ

- chupa
- c) Go for refuge, and think about the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta)

ลูกลาวที่ พิมสารลูโร

kyamdro semkye

d) Visualize the collected Lamas and Holy Beings (the "garden for collecting good karma")



tsokshing seldeb

e) Gather good energy and purify obstacles (through the seven ingredients)



f) Request blessings from the Holy Beings



sulndep

3) What are the seven ingredients? (Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

a) Bowing down to the Holy Beings.

धुमा दर्कत्भ chaktsel

b) Making offerings.

য়৾৾য়৾৾৾ৼয়

chupa

c) Confessing (purifying yourself of old bad karma)

ন-পন্মার্মার্মা

shakpa

d) Rejoicing in the good deeds of yourself and others.

yi-rangwa

e) Requesting teachings.

chunkor korwar kul

f) Asking Holy Beings to stay near you.



sulndep

g) Dedicating the goodness you have done to all beings.



4) These seven are part of which of the six preliminaries? Which of them act to gather the power of goodness, and which function to clean away obstacles, for a successful meditation?

They are part of the fifth preliminary, which is called "purifying obstacles and gathering goodness." Confession clears obstacles and the rest help to accumulate virtue.

5) Name the six conditions that must be gathered together for meditation. Do not confuse these with the six preliminaries. (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a) Stay in a place which is conducive to meditation.

સદ્યુત પરે ખુભા

tunpay yul

b) Live simply: don't need many things.



dupa chungwa

c) Be satisfied with the things you have.



chok shepa

d) Give up being too busy.

ฏ.พะ.มีะพโ

ja mang pang

e) Maintain a very ethical way of life.

<u>ส</u>ู้ณาสิมมารุสามา tsultrim dakpa

f) Get rid of sense desires, and desire for worldly pleasures.



namtok pang

6) Briefly describe the eight characteristics of correct meditation posture. (Tibetan track students also give Tibetan for each.)

a) Put your legs in a full lotus or half-lotus position.

માન્યત્ર ગુવાયાના

kangpa kyilntrul

b) Don't keep your eyes completely open or closed.

- mik miye midzum
- c) Sit up very straight.



lu drang

d) Make your shoulders level: neither higher than the other.

ধ্রবা'ন'মণ্ডমা trakpa nyam

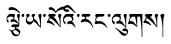
e) Make sure your head is neither tilted up nor down.

so mitu mima

f) Let your teeth and lips stay in their natural, loose position.

su chu rangluk

g) Leave your tongue in a natural position up against the top of your mouth.



che yasoy rangluk

h) Make your breath completely quiet, and follow it for a count of ten.

র্ব্বশৃশ্বর্দু হ'র্ বা uk jung-ngup

7) Name the first of the five problems of meditation. Which four of the eight corrections are used to counteract it? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

a) problem: Laziness, or not feeling like meditating today.

त्रेत्री lelo

b) four corrections:

(1) Feel attracted towards meditation, by thinking about how great it is.

55.21

depa

(2) Decide that you want to be a good meditator.



(3) Make the efforts needed to get good at meditation.



(4) Experience the physical and mental pleasure and ease that comes from meditating regularly.



8) Name the third of the five problems of meditation. What is its correction? (Tibetan track give both in Tibetan.)

The third problem that occurs in meditation is mental dullness or mental agitation. The corresponding correction is watchfulness.



9) Explain the difference between gross and subtle dullness of meditation. (Tibetan track name the two in Tibetan, and explain in English.)

In a state of obvious dullness, you do have fixation on the object but the level of attention of the meditation has lost its clarity: meaning not the clearness of the colors or lines of a visualized object, but rather the alertness or brightness of your state of mind, how "bright and bushytailed it is: how free it is from mental dullness or agitation. With subtle dullness, you have fixation and clarity, but no intensity.

ฏินาราสาขานๆ ฏินารานุามิโ

jinwa rakpa

jingwa tramo

10) What is the fourth of the five problems of meditation? How do you know it has occurred? (Tibetan track give the name for the problem in Tibetan.)

The fourth of the five problems which can occur during meditation is failing to take the action necessary to correct dullness or agitation. You know it has occurred when you have detected their arrival through your watchfulness.

ૡઽૣૻૠ૿૽૽૽ૢૢૺઽૠ du mijepa

11) The correction to the fourth problem can come in two different forms. Name them.

a) Correcting for dullness.

b) Correcting for agitation.

12) Name and describe the nine states of meditation. (Tibetan track give the names in Tibetan and describe in English.)

a) Placing the mind on the object. You receive instructions from your teacher about what object to meditate upon, and can keep your mind on it for only very brief periods of time.

ลิมสาวยัญนา sem jokpa

b) Placing the mind on the object with some continuity. You are able to keep your mind on the object briefly, for the length of time it might take to do a single round of short mantras on a rosary. You have constant agitation and dullness during these first two stages.

क्तुन-रु:व्हेंगाया gyundu jokpa

c) Placing the mind on the object and patching the gaps. You are able to keep your mind on the object for a fairly long time, regaining continuity and "patching the gap" quickly whenever your focus breaks off.



d) Placing the mind on the object closely. You are able to keep your mind on the object without losing it, but still have agitation and dullness.



e) Controlling the mind. Watchfulness is developed to a high degree, detecting subtle dullness when the mind has been withdrawn inside too deeply. Obvious dullness can no longer occur.

f) Pacifying the mind. Watchfulness by this point is powerful, detecting subtle agitation which may occur as a result of uplifting the mind as a correction in the previous stage. There is no longer any great danger of subtle dullness.

g) Pacifying the mind totally. Recollection and watchfulness are total, and there is no great danger of either subtle agitation or subtle dullness.

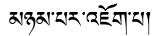
nampar shiwar jepa

h) Making the mind single-pointed. Neither subtle agitation nor subtle dullness still occur at all; some effort is still needed at the beginning of the session to make minor corrections to the meditation.

रे गरेगा हु हु रा भ

tse chiktu jepa

i) Achieving equilibrium. Your mind goes into deep meditation automatically, without any conscious effort.



nyampar jokpa

Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Six

1) Name three different types of meditation. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Fixation meditation, such as a visualization fixed on the image of your Lama.



b) Review meditation, where you go over the same steps of a concept or principle again and again. An example would be going though the various parts of the outline of the death meditation until each succeeding step comes to you almost automatically.

পন-জ্লিশ

shargom

c) Analytical meditation, where you set a problem at the center stage of your mind and then solve it by thinking about it carefully, from many different angles.

নগ্রনা স্থান

chegom

2) Give the meaning of the word "lam-rim." Where does the name come from?

The Tibetan word "lam-rim" means "steps of the path to Enlightenment." The name ultimately comes from the scriptures of the Perfection of Wisdom (the Prajna Paramita). 3) Which of the five great texts, and the different levels of secret practice, are contained in this text?

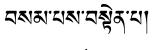
The subject matter of all the five great texts is found in the *lam-rim*. These five are called the Perfection of Wisdom (*Prajnya Paramita*); the Middle Way (*Madhyamika*); Vowed Morality (*Vinaya*); Higher Knowledge (*Abhidharma*); and Logic and Perception (*Pramana*). The *lam-rim* is an open teaching, so the secret practices are mentioned but not explained in detail.

4) Name four parts to the practice of taking yourself to a Lama. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Developing faith and admiration in your Lama.



b) How to think about your Lama. (This and the next part are actually subdivisions of the first one.)



- sampe tenpa
- c) How to act towards your Lama.

สู้ราวสาวสิสาม jorwe tenpa

d) Developing reverence for your Lama.

สูฬานารสิโรานไ

gupa kyewa

5) Name the three parts to the subject of taking the essence of this life. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Steps shared with those of lesser capacity.

kyebu chung-ngu dang tunmongway lam gyi rimpa

b) Steps shared with those of medium capacity.

<u>พ</u>พ.น.น.

kyebu dring dang tunmongway lam gyi rimpa

c) Steps for those of great capacity.



kyebu chenpoy lam gyi rimpa

- 6) What are the three principles of the death meditation? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Death is certain.



ngepar chiwa

b) There is no certainty when you will die.

สมารสิริสงามิรา

nam chi ngepa

c) When you do die, only the Dharma can help you.

<u>୵</u>ୖଈୖୖୖୖୖୖ୷ୖ୕ଈ୕୶୲୕୶୲୶୲ୖୠ୕୶୲୶୲ୖୖୖ୷୲୰୶୲

chi tse chu matok mipen

7) Name the four laws of karma.

a) Actions are certain to produce consequences that resemble them in content (good can only lead to good, bad can only lead to bad).

यश्च:देश:य

le ngepa

b) The consequences are greater than the actions.

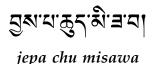
ાર્ચા વર્ષેવા જે ગ

c) One cannot meet a consequence if he or she has not committed an action.

ณฆามาฏฆานารุรามิเฉสุราม

le majepa dang mitrepa

d) Once an action is committed, the consequence cannot be lost.



8) State briefly the difference between Buddhists of lesser, medium, and greater capacity.

Buddhists of lesser capacity seek only to avoid being born themselves in the three lower realms after they die. Those of medium capacity seek to avoid any rebirth at all, but again only for their own sake. Those of the greater capacity (the Mahayana) seek to avoid the lower realms and any rebirth at all, but wish further that they could help every living being to do the same. 9) Do you think that it is true that every event in our present kind of life is suffering? Why or why not?

The outright pain, such a bad back or grief over the loss of a loved one, is obviously suffering. But even the good things—a good home, family, or job—must inevitably change and be ripped away from us. We finally lose even our own bodies; our minds become senile; and even our names are forgotten. Since every event in our present kind of life is either suffering or inevitably degenerates into suffering, then it is true that all these events are suffering.

10) Of the three trainings, why is only the training of morality mentioned at this point?

Morality is the basis of the other two trainings; one must have morality to be able to concentrate deeply, and gain insight into wisdom. These other two trainings are implied since they follow only upon morality.

11) Give the two parts to the steps of the path which are shared with practitioners of the greater scope (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Learning how to think like a bodhisattva.

sem kyepay tsul

b) Learning how to act like a bodhisattva.

ર્શેન માયા સેવા સંવા chupa la loptsul

12) Give the definition of quietude (called *shamata* in Sanskrit and *shi-ne* in Tibetan).

That single-mindedness which is imbued with the exceptional bliss of practiced ease due to deep, single-pointed meditation on its object.

13) Give the definition of insight (called *vipashyana* in Sanskrit and *hlak-tong* in Tibetan).

That wisdom which is full of the exceptional bliss of practiced ease by power of the analysis of its object, and which is founded upon quietude.



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Seven

1) Give the Sanskrit and Tibetan names for the Buddhist study of logic and perception, which is the same as the word for "correct or valid perception." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Tibetan: చ్రాష్

tsema

Sanskrit: pramana

2) What is the Buddhist definition of existence? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The Buddhist definition of existence is "That which is perceived by a valid perception."

ส์รามพารมิฑฺพานาพิรานฉามส์สาติรา

tseme mikpa yupay tsennyi

3) What did the Buddha himself say is the purpose of Buddhist logic? (Give the exact quotation, Tibetan track students in Tibetan.)

"I or someone like myself can judge a person, but no normal person should judge another, for he or she will fall."

ะเฉพาะาระาจรากพากะายกาทาธิ์ราวอูะากิ เกาะายกาทิพากะายกา गीकेंद्रास्नेप्तबुद्राङ्गे अससायरा गुरु हो

nga-am nga dang drawe gangsak gi tsu sung gi, gangsak gi gangsak gi tsu misung te, nyampar gyur ta re 4) Name the two basic types of valid perception, and what levels of reality they are used to perceive. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Direct valid perception: used to perceive evident objects.

અદેવ સુચ જંડ સા અદેવ શુરા ngunsum tsema ngungyur

b) Deductive valid perception: used to perceive hidden or deeply hidden objects.



5) Give the text of Master Dignaga's famous opening statement. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

I bow down to the Protector, Those Gone to Bliss, the Teacher, those who wish to benefit living beings, and those who have turned into ones with valid perception.

& ન સાર શુર માલ્લો બાલવા ન લેન મા કેંવ માનને માને માર્કેન બાલ મા र्व्या थें।

tsemar gyurpa dro la pen shepa, tunpa deshek kyobla chaktsel lo

6) Give the definition of valid perception. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The definition of a valid perception is "a fresh, unmistaken state of mind."

য়৻য়ৼ৾৾ৼৢ৻য়৾৻য়৾য়৾য়৾য়

sardu mi-luway rikpa

7) Describe very generally the meaning of the term, "person of valid perception." (Tibetan track give Tibetan word for this person.)

Generally speaking, the term "person of valid perception," which is used to describe an enlightened being (who has only valid perceptions), has the primary connotation of a person who cannot lie.



8) What are the three main methods for a normal person to determine that the Buddha is totally correct about the very deep teachings He gave? (Tibetan track give the one name for the three, and explain in English.)

- a) The teachings cannot be disproved by any direct valid perception that we have or have had.
- b) The teachings cannot be disproved by any airtight reasoning.
- c) The teachings themselves are free of any internal inconsistency: nothing that Lord Buddha said at one time contradicts what he said at another time.

ন্ধ্রন'ম'শাস্কুমা chepa sum

9) Describe briefly the three "ground rules" for interpreting the Buddha; that is, for deciding that something which Lord Buddha said was meant only figuratively, and not literally.

- a) True intent: Lord Buddha must have had something else specific in mind when he said something which was not literal.
- b) Contradiction: The statement that Lord Buddha made must contradict what we know to be actually true.
- c) Need: There must be some compelling need or purpose served by the Buddha saying something which is not technically true.

10) What does a person have to know in order to be all-knowing?

He or she must know perfectly what it is that we must give up in our behavior and worldview, and what we must take up in the same. It is not enough to know, for example, the scientific names for all things in the universe, or something of the like.

11) What evidence do we have that the Buddha is "unerring"?

Of all the people we have ever met or heard of, it is only Lord Buddha who has described our daily suffering perfectly, in a way we can confirm ourselves. This by itself allows us to believe that he is very possibly unerring, which cannot be said of those who do not describe our suffering in this way. Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Eight

1) The last of the four reasonings of the forward order involves great compassion. What is the difference between great compassion, holy great compassion, and just compassion?

"Compassion" is the wish that others be freed from common suffering, without taking upon oneself the responsibility to bring this about. "Great compassion" is the wish that all others be freed from all suffering, and the decision to make this happen oneself: the decision to protect all beings. "Holy great compassion" is the compassion of an enlightened being: of someone who actually does help all living beings.

2) Name three reasons why the Charvakas believed that the mind died when the body died.

- a) The mind is a quality of the body, in the way that the ability to make a person drunk is a quality of alcohol.
- b) The mind is by nature dependent on the body, in the way that a design that you put on a wall is dependent upon this wall.
- c) The mind is a result of the body, in the way that light is a result of a lamp.

3) Explain the meaning of "material cause." (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "material cause.")

A "material cause" is the main material or stuff that turns into the result: the thing that "flops over" into the result. An example would be a seed for a tree, or clay for a pot; as opposed to other types of causes or factors like fertilizer, water, or sunlight, which are not the main thing that turns into the result.

જેમ ભોષ શું શુ

nyerlen gyi gyu

4) Why can't the cause of your mind at birth be living physical matter? (Tibetan students give Tibetan for "living physical matter.")

All living physical matter is involved with one or more of the sense powers. If living physical matter were the cause of your mind at birth, then it would either be one or a combination of the sense powers which was causing this mind. The mind cannot have come from any one of the senses alone since, if this were the case, then a person who lacked this sense (such as a blind or deaf man) could never have a mind. The mind cannot either have come either from all the senses together, or from some combination of them, because in this case a person who lacked any of the sense powers involved could never then have a mind.

Additionally, if mind were materially caused by the senses, it would have to possess the qualities of the senses: one would have to be able to "see" with the memory, for example, as clearly as one does with the eyes.



wangpoy suk

5) Why can't this cause be outside physical matter? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "outside physical matter.")

If some particular kind of outside physical matter—such as some chemical element—were the cause of the mind at birth, then a new mind would be produced whenever this particular chemical element was present. If a combination of particular elements caused this mind, then the mind would disappear whenever any one of the elements was removed from the combination. Additionally, the mind shares none of the general qualities of physical matter: it is crystal clear, ineffable, aware, without physical boundary, cannot be weighed, and cannot be measured as to its size. It is in fact the complete opposite of physical matter.

6) If this cause is mind, why can't it be the mind of someone else? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mind of someone else.")

The result of a material cause must resemble that cause. Suppose then that the cause of our mind at birth were the mind or minds of others: those of our parents, for example. In this case the minds of children must always resemble the minds of their parents—the child of an artisan, for example, would always have to exhibit the skill of its parent. But it is obvious that this is not generally the case at all.



7) What is the basic principle underlying Master Dharmakirti's arguments in favor of past and future lives?

The basic principle underlying Master Dharmakirti's arguments is that all caused things come from something which is of a similar type, and which came before it.

8) Explain why the mind of a normal person at the moment of death crosses into another state of mind of a similar type.

A normal person has emotions of desire (the emotion of liking things in an ignorant way) in their mind as they die. This emotion causes their mind to cross the line into the next life as a continuation of the current mind.

9) Give the three parts for Master Dharmakirti's main proof for future lives. (Tibetan track in Tibetan with English translation.)

a) Consider the mind of a normal person at the moment of death.

รามณานฉาวสิงานฉาริญานาส์มางสุ

tamelpay chikay rikpa chuchen

b) That mind will cross the line into a future mind;

ริญานาซูามรามสมมาผู้ราวิไ rikpa chimar tsam jor te

c) Because that mind possesses desire.

องกุณ อง ญิ ริ กาน พิงานจิ ซูรา

chakchen gyi rikpa yinpay chir

10) Name and describe the three types of the eighth link of the chain of dependence from the Wheel of Life. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan, describe in English.)

a) Craving desire: an emotion of craving where you desire—in an ignorant way—not to lose an attractive object.



duse

b) Craving fear: an emotion of craving where you desire—in an ignorant way—to avoid unpleasant objects. (Please note that some forms of the Tibetan spelling for this second type can connote "craving destruction," with the same meaning as "craving fear.")

c) Craving for existence: An emotion of craving where you desire—in an ignorant way—that the "me" continues to exist; this happens at the moment of death, when you are gripped by fear that your being is ending.

sise

11) The key as to why craving triggers your existing karma at the moment of death is how it focuses upon yourself. Describe the four levels of focusing upon yourself, and explain which ones can trigger this karma.

- a) Focusing on yourself or "me" in a general way, without checking or examining your true nature. This state of mind is a valid perception and does not trigger this karma.
- b) Seeing yourself as self-existent, or as having some nature of your own or as coming from your own side, and believing what you see. This is a mistaken state of mind which does trigger the karma mentioned.
- c) Seeing yourself as self-existent, but not believing what you see, because you have previously seen emptiness directly. If this person dies without overcoming the inborn habit of seeing things as self-existent, then the karma mentioned will still be triggered. This is why one does not stop rebirth simply by reaching the path of seeing, or the direct perception of emptiness.
- d) Neither seeing yourself as self-existent, nor believing that you are. This refers to a person who has overcome even the inborn tendency of seeing things as self-existent.

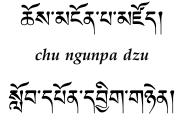


Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Nine

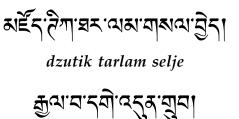
1) Name the main root text for the study of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma); give the author's name and his dates. Then give the name of the main commentary we will be using, the author and his dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) The Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha) of Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD.



lopun yiknyen

b) The *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, by His Holiness the First Dalai Lama, 1391-1474.



gyalwa gendun drup

2) Explain the literal meaning of the words in the Sanskrit title of this root text.

Abhidharma (*chu ngunpa*) means "knowledge." *Abhi (ngunpa)* means "up to" or "approaching." *Dharma (chu)* means an "existing object": anything which holds (*dhr*) its own nature. The highest of all *existing objects* is nirvana, and *knowledge* brings *to* you, or leads you *to*, this state.

chu ngunpa

3) What things does the word "abhidharma" actually refer to? (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The word "abhidharma" means "knowledge." There are two types of this knowledge. Actual knowledge is the three unstained paths (the path of seeing, the path of habituation, and the path of no more learning). These constitute unstained wisdom and its accessories.

สังเพริส.จงเราริเพราะพารรุราจงงา

chungun sherab drime jedrang che

4) Name the four required attributes of a reputable Buddhist book, and explain what they are in this case. (Tibetan track name the four in Tibetan and explain in English.)

a) Subject matter: Stained and unstained types of phenomena.



b) Purpose: To plant in students' minds the wisdom which analyzes phenomena in an ultimate way.



c) Ultimate goal: To have these students achieve the two types of nirvana.

केन नगेंग

nyigu

sometimes also seen as:

ষ্ট্র- 'নর্যাঝা

nyinggu

d) Relation: The purpose is achieved through the subject matter of the book, and the ultimate goal through this same purpose. One can also state the relation as the subject matter (all existing objects) being related to what expresses the subject matter (the text itself).



drelwa

5) Name the two most basic types of karma, or deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The two most basic types are:

a) movement of the mind, which is mental karma

র্মমর্ম'যা

sempa

ષીન્'ગીં'બજા

yi kyi le

b) what it motivates

ধ্যপ্রধানপ্র শ্রিষানা

sempe jepa

6) "Non-communicating" form has five characteristics. Describe them, by using the exact phrases from Master Vasubandhu's root text, and explaining each of them. (Tibetan track give each phrase in Tibetan.)

a) Non-communicating form is possessed by a person even during times of "distraction": even when he is not thinking about it.



sem yengpa

b) This type of form is possessed even when the "mind is stopped": even when he or she is in that deep meditation where the mind is at a very subtle stage (although not actually stopped).

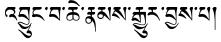
র্মমর্মার্মির্যা

sem mepa

c) This type of form is either "virtue or not": its essence is either a good deed or a bad deed.

d) This type of form "continues on" after a deed, related to the person who did it, in a constant stream.

e) Finally, this type of form "takes the great elements as its causes," which is to say that it is physical matter.



jungwa che nam gyur jepa

7) Give the definitions of virtue, non-virtue, and neutral karma. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Virtue is an action which, in the short term, brings you a karmic result which is a pleasurable experience; and which ultimately protects you from suffering by bringing you to nirvana.

२.७४४.३४४.९४८.५८.२८.४१४.२.२४४.४.२.२४.४.२.२४.४.२.२४.४.२.२४.४.२.२४.४

reshik nammin yi-ong dang ten du dukngel kyobpay le ni gewa

b) A non-virtue is an action which brings you a karmic result which is an undesirable, unpleasant experience.

สมาฏิสาพิรามิาวัราววิเณพาสิามิารกา

nammin yi mi-ongway le ni mi-gewa

c) Neutral karma is an action which gives you a result other than the above two types of results.

yi-ong yi mi-ong le shenpay le ni lungmaten

8) Give the Tibetan words for shame and consideration, and explain the difference between them. (Tibetan track give words in Tibetan and explain in English.)

a) Shame is avoiding bad deeds for reasons relating to yourself: you avoid a bad deed because of your own self-image—because you do not want to know, in your own heart, that you are being bad.

ᡬᡸ

ngotsa

b) Consideration is avoiding bad deeds for reasons relating to others; that is, because you consider the effect or impression that your actions may impart to others.



9) Give the abbreviated list of ten rights and wrongs, and group them by the three gateways. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Three done with your body:

a) Killing

র্ম্মনা নার্তনা

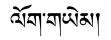
sok chu

b) Stealing



majin len

c) Sexual misconduct



lokyem

Four done in your speech:

d) Lying



e) Divisive talk

র্ম.প্রা

trama

f) Harsh words



g) Idle talk



Three done in your thoughts:

h) Craving



i) Ill will



nu-sum

j) Wrong views



lokta

10) Name the three types of experiences (in three different times) that ripen from deeds (karma).

a) Karma whose results you see in this life.

- b) Karma whose results you see in the very next life.
- c) Karma whose results you see in any life after the next life.

11) Select three bad deeds, one representing each of the three gateways, and explain the three consequences it will produce.

a) in body:

In body, the answer can be for any one of the following three: killing; stealing; or sexual misconduct.

- i) "Ripened result": For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.
- ii) "Corresponding result": Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm comes to you (respectively, you live a short life, and are continually unhealthy; you don't get the things you need to support yourself, or can never have your own things; and there are many people vying against you for your partner) -- and also you are attracted to doing the same wrong things again in your new life (killing, stealing, or committing sexual misconduct).
- iii) "Environmental result": Even in you are born as a human, you live in a place which is dangerous or unhealthy (for killing); you live in a place where crops do not ripen properly, where there is famine and drought (for stealing); you live in a place which is filthy and smells bad (for sexual misconduct).

b) in speech:

In speech, the answer can be for any one of the following four: lying; divisive talk; harsh words; or idle talk.

i) "Ripened" result: For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.

- ii) "Corresponding result": Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm comes to you (respectively, people discredit what you say; you tend to lose your friends; you have to hear many unpleasant things around you; and no one pays any attention to what you say); and also you are attracted to saying the same wrong things again in your new life (lying; divisive talk; harsh words; or idle talk).
- iii) "Environmental result": Even in you are born as a human, you live in a place where your work never has any great result, and there are many dangerous and deceptive people around you (for lying); you live in a place where the environment is inhospitable and dangerous (for divisive talk); you live in a place which is covered with thorny bushes, sharp rocks, and generally rough, without sufficient water, and frightening (for harsh words); and you live in a place where none of the trees or plants give fruits which are ripe, or which ripen at the right time, and there are few parks or places to relax, and many frightening things around (for idle talk).

c) in mind:

- In mind, the answer can be for any one of the following three: craving; ill will; or wrong views.
- i) "Ripened result": For any of the above, a birth in one of the three lower realms.
- ii) "Corresponding result": Even if you are eventually born as a human, then similar harm is done to you (respectively, you are overcome by feelings of desire, dislike, or ignorance); and also you are attracted to thinking the same wrong things again in your new life (craving; ill will; or wrong views).
- iii) "Environmental result": even if you are born as a human, you live in a place where things get worse by the day and month (for craving); you live in a place where there is much illness, and infectious diseases, and dangers, and war, dangerous insects and animals, evil spirits, and criminals (for ill will); and you live in a place where the holy Dharma has degenerated or been lost altogether, where people hold filthy things to be wonderful, and pain to be something pleasant (for wrong views).

12) According to the Mind-Only School, what are you really looking at when you think you are looking at the sense faculty of your eye, and outside physical forms as well? (Tibetan track answer in Tibetan.)

According to this school, you are really looking at the foundation consciousness appearing as the physical faculty of the eye and, by extension, as the outer forms that you think you are seeing.

ग्त-मवि' इस' पर ' विश्व' प

kunshi nampar shepa

13) Explain how mental seeds from karma are planted, and then where they stay, and how they go on until they produce their consequences, according to the Mind-Only School. (Tibetan track give Tibetan for "mental seed.")

a) Mental seeds are planted through your awareness of what you do, say, or think.

ননা.হুযার্শা

bakchak

- b) These mental seeds then stay in the foundation consciousness, even for a very long time, by replicating themselves from moment to moment, and passing their energy on from each older form of themselves to each newer form.
- c) When the conditions are right, the mental seed ripens into a perception of something.

14) There are many places in the sutras where the Buddha stated that the whole universe and everyone in it is "mind only." The Mind-Only School took this to mean that there are no outer, physical objects at all. Explain what two things the Buddha actually had in mind when He said that everything was "mind only."

- a) In a negative sense, the universe is said to be "mind only" in order to deny that it could be the product of anything else, such as some creator being.
- b) In a positive sense, the universe is said to be "mind only" in order to assert that mind is its primary source, due to its role in the creation and ripening of karma.



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Answer Key, Class Ten

1) Maitreya, in his work entitled *The Higher Line*, describes six different steps in the process through which the tendency to grasp to some self-nature causes karma, and thus the world of suffering life. Describe these six. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) When you are born you already have karmic seeds (*bakchaks*) for the two tendencies to see things as self-existent (for seeing yourself and your parts as self-existent), planted there during past lives.

ุ่าวุ่มาวยังามิจงาฏิเวณา ธณุงา

dakdzin nyi kyi bakchak

b) Due to the seeds, you start to have the two tendencies to see things as self-existent.



c) You begin to see things the wrong way: some things appear to you to be attractive, and others appear to be undesirable, from their own sides.

ઔંડ લેંદ સે લેંદ તુવા સેઠ દેવા

yi-ong mi-ong tsulmin tok

d) Based on your misperception of things, you begin to feel ignorant like or dislike of these objects.

पर्नेन:कग्रश्ले:भूनः क्रुंश

duchak shedang kye

e) Due to the emotions of liking and disliking, you do, say, or think negative things, which is collecting karma.



f) This karma causes you to continue to circle around in the circle of suffering life.

م آغم کم کم کم مرکز کم ا korwar kor

2) Describe how the Consequence section of the Middle-Way School explains what is happening when three different beings sitting around of glass of liquid see it as being three different things. Use the concept of three parts, three material causes, and three contributing factors.

The three objects that the three beings perceive (pus, water, or nectar) can be described (initially) as three parts of the base object (the liquid). This liquid provides the "material cause"—the stuff or material that turns into each of these objects—in each case. The three different kinds of karma in the minds of the three different beings are forcing them to see the base object the way they do, and are the "contributing factor" in this case.

3) Name the four parts to a path of action—in the act of killing for example—as explained by Je Tsongkapa, who follows Master Asanga.

- a) The basis, or object involved: Who it is you kill? Who is it you steal from, and what do you steal?
- b) The thinking involved: What thoughts were you having about the killing? (This part is explained further in the next question.)
- c) Undertaking the deed: Did you actually undertake the necessary actions to commit the killing?
- d) Completing the deed: Did you complete the deed (did the person actually die), and did you have a sense of ownership and satisfaction about it?

4) The second of these four part has three parts of its own. Name and describe these for the act of killing.

- a) Correct identification: Did you recognize the thing for what it was? (For example, in the case of an abortion, did you really recognize that the fetus was a living being?)
- b) Mental affliction (bad thought): Did you have a strong and active mental affliction like anger or lust when you committed the deed?
- c) Motivation: Did you definitely wish to hurt the person; did you premeditate what you were going to do to them? Or was the action an accident?

5) What does "most basic virtue" or "root of virtue" refer to? (Tibetan track give Tibetan for this phrase, and for what it refers to.)

The phrase "most basic virtue" or "virtue root" refers most broadly to the entire store of good karma that we possess. In the study of how this "basic" virtue or "base" of virtue is destroyed, the phrase refers specifically to what we call the "collection of merit," or the accumulation of good deeds which is going to produce our two physical bodies when we become an enlightened being. The "collection of merit" produces our mental state when we become a Buddha.

getsa

sunam kyi tsok

ସର୍କିମ୍'ଶ୍ୟଷ୍ୟ'ମ୍ବି'ର୍ଜିସାଷ୍ୟ

ૡૺ૾ૡૺ૱ૹ૿૽ૢૺ૾૾ૺૼ૾ૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼૼ૱ૡ

yeshe kyi tsok

6) Describe the kind of person who can lose this most basic virtue. (Tibetan track also give Tibetan for "loss of basic virtue.")

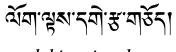
A loss of most basic virtue can occur with humans, male or female (as opposed to beings without a distinct sexual identity), who are intellectually inclined, since they are capable of sustained and powerful wrong views.

getsa chupa

7) Describe two actions which can cause a loss of basic virtue. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Two actions which can cause a loss of most basic virtue are as follows:

a) The development of wrong views wherein you hold, for example, that the laws of karma and the fact of enlightened beings do not exist.



lokte getsa chu

b) Intense anger focussed at a bodhisattva, or other very intense non-virtues.



kongtru getsa chu

8) Why are the five "immediate misdeeds" called "immediate"? Describe also the specific type of birth that one must take because of them. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

These five misdeeds are "immediate" because, as a result of performing them, on must take an "immediate" rebirth in the hells—which refers to the fact that no other kind of rebirth intervenes. Causing a schism in the community always leads to a birth in the lowest hell of "No Respite"; the others lead to this or to some other hell birth.

๛๛ฏิรานฉิญ๛ริเรรารมูณ จฉิจรารุ ฏิเราตุดสาฏิมามสมมามิราย

le jepay lu de dang nyelway bardu kyewa shen gyi tsam mepa

ষর্ম মিশ্

narme

9) Explain the order of severity for the five immediate misdeeds.

The most severe is number four (creating a schism in the Community), due to the fact that it leads to a birth in the lowest hell, No Respite, for a full eon; and because it strikes a blow to the Dharma body of the Buddha, preventing realizations and creating havoc in the spiritual lives of people around the world for the length of the schism. Next is number five (drawing blood from a Buddha with evil intent), three (killing a foe destroyer), one (killing your mother), and two (killing your father).

10) Name four qualities of the person to whom you perform your exceptional giving, giving examples for each.

- a) By type of being: humans are better than animals.
- b) By kind of suffering: a person who's sick, or cold.
- c) By the aid given to you in the past: your parents.
- d) By their good qualities: a stream enterer.



Course XVI The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Tibetan Language Study Guide

Class One

ยิ่งชี้ราคาม สู้เกลราญญพาม

je tsongkapa lobsang drakpa

অমান্বার্ই রমান্বাধ্যুমা

lamtso namsum

pabongka rinpoche dechen nyingpo

พุศสาริสานีาสิ่ารทิเรเติมาสู้เราสราพรราชูลา

ken rinpoche geshe lobsang tarchin

<u>באימטלר</u>ו ngenjung

ঝিমঝ'নষ্ণ্রী semkye

พระรุญาสลิ.ซ.ฮไ

yangdakpay tawa







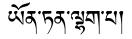
dulwa



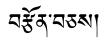
shiwa



nyer shiwa



yunten hlakpa



tsunche



lung gi chuk

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Language Study Guide

de-nyi rabtok



ma-ke den

नहें नदे नन्ग केन

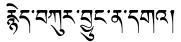
tseway daknyi



kyowa pang

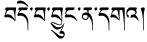


korwa

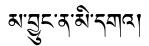


nyekur jung na ga

য়ঢ়ৢৼয়য়৾ঀয়ঀ majung na miga



dewa jung na ga



majung na miga



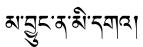
nyendrak jung na ga

ম'ন্ডুম'র'মি'ন্যাণ

majung na miga

नर्हेन्दर्नुदर्भनगवा

tura jung na ga



majung na miga

ณฐาริฐาน

le ngepa

le pel chewa

พพ.พ.ปิพ.ศ.2८.พ.ชสี2.กไ

le majepa dang mi trepa

ฏฺฬานาสูรามิาสารา

jepa chu misawa

Class Two

jangchub kyi sem



semkye



marshe



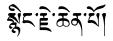
drindren

ইন্ব:শ্ৰ্ৰি

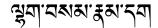
drinso



yi-ong jampa



nyingje chenpo



hlaksam namdak

র্থমার্মান্ট্রীন।

semkye

र्नेबन्द्रायनेबन्ध

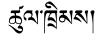
dundam denpa

गुतर्देव नदेव या

kuntzob denpa



tendrel



tsultrim



tongpa-nyi

Class Three

. વિશ્વાસ્ત્ર ગોં! પાર્સે ભારુ 'ધુૈ <mark>ત</mark>ાપ]

sherab kyi parul tu chinpa



nguntok gyen

દે નર્ઝુન નુમયાયા

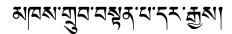
jetsun jampa

রধনাম'ম'র্দ্রনাম'মিশ্।

pakpa tokme

यर सेुब सबत न्युंन

parchin tachu



kedrup tenpa dargye



kyamdro



nyentu



ranggyel

ন্রুহ:মীমম্বা

jangsem



gyuy kyamdro

त्म्नूश्र-मुद्देः भ्रुम्श-दर्मे

drebuy kyamdro

ষিমা'ক্রি'ঝিঝামা'নষ্ক্রীশা

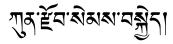
tekchen semkye

র্জুর:ঝিঝঝা

munsem

ন্দ্র্ব্যা ঝিঝঝা

juksem



kundzob semkye

՟֏՟ֈ՟ֈՠ֎ՠՠՠֈ

dundam semkye

Class Four

જેંત્ર સ્રુવિ આ ભુષા પત્ર સુદયા પવે એ એંન ગમના થા વર્ગે ગ

nyundrip malupar pangpay so-sor tangok

শ্বনানগুরু:এইনার্য

hlakche nyangde

ন্থুন্মা মীন মুদ নে ন মা

hlakme nyangde

มิ สาสุลานลิ พูร เลรุลา

mi-nepay nyangde



sita

জি.পাষ্টা

shita

নশান্যান্তা

gakja



soso kyewo

<u>รัพ</u>รัก ฏราพิมพาว หมุพาน

jetop jangsem pakpa

สั้ราชิรามรัสาพูมารูารัสามานจาสัตวาม

tongnyi ngunsum du tokpay lopa

สูส สัรามี เนลา

tunmong gi lam

สูสามั้รามาพิสามฉิามมา

tunmong mayinpay lam

શૂગા સંસંચ પાય તેવે અજ્ઞા

ngak tsompapoy tu

ฐิปลายชีล.ก.ก.รูร.ชีล.เยี่ทลา

ngak depapoy tsultrim

Class Five

শারশাদেশ দ্রী দেশ দ্রী মার্মা

nekang chi dang ten dram



chupa



kyamdro semkye

র্ক্রীমান্ড জিন্দ আর্মান্য মান্দিয়া

tsokshing seldeb

केंगशानश्रमा झून झूना

tsok-sak dripjang

মার্জনে:বর্দ্রমা

sulndep



chaktsel

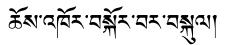


chupa

নিপ্লাশ্বাশ shakpa



yi-rangwa



chunkor korwar kul

মার্জনে:বর্দ্রমা

sulndep



ngowa

સંઘુર પરે ખુવા

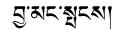
tunpay yul



dupa chungwa



chok shepa



ja mang pang



tsultrim dakpa



namtok pang

אַר־בי־קשַמייאַב־ן

kangpa kyilntrul

มีฤามี รฏิ มี สูมา

mik miye midzum

باه:۲۲.۱

lu drang

ধ্রনা-ম-মন্তমা

trakpa nyam

ลส์เฉิงสร้าสังรุสเ

so mitu mima

র্ঝামক্র'মন'ঝুবাঝা

su chu rangluk

ૡૢ૽ૺૺ૾ૻૡૻૹ૽ૼૡ૽૾ૺ૾ૻૠઽૻૡૣ૾ઌૹૻ

che yasoy rangluk





lelo

55.41

depa









shinjang



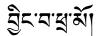
jinggu



sheshin

ฏิราจารสุจาน

jinwa rakpa



jingwa tramo

ૡઽૢૻૢૻઐ૽૽૽ૼૼ૽૽ૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૢૺૼૻૡ

du mijepa

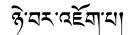
র্মমর্ম হেইন্যা শ্ব

sem jokpa





lente jokpa



nyewar jokpa

<u> र्</u>त्यायम् हिराम

dulwar jepa

ดิ นา ปิานา

shiwar jepa

สมานราดิาสราสิราม

nampar shiwar jepa

रे गरेगा हु हु राभ

tse chiktu jepa

พรพายา เวริญายา

nyampar jokpa

Class Six



jokgom



shargom



chegom



depa jangwa

রঝমানঝারস্ট্রবা

sampe tenpa

สู้ราวสาวสิสาย

jorwe tenpa

สูฬานารสิโรานไ

gupa kyewa

kyebu chung-ngu dang tunmongway lam gyi rimpa

<u>พ</u>ิพ.ป.ช.ชุม.ช.ย.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.ช.

kyebu dring dang tunmongway lam gyi rimpa

kyebu chenpoy lam gyi rimpa

مکم، معدمه ما

ngepar chiwa

नमानके देश मेना

nam chi ngepa

chi tse chu matok mipen

यश्र देश या

le ngepa

<u>अश्वःत्रमेलःकेःन</u>

le pel chewa

๛ฺฆฺ๛ฺฏฺฆฺ๛ฺรุ๛ฺฆํ๛ฺฐฺรฺ๛ฺ

le majepa dang mitrepa

ฏฐาน สูรามิ สา

jepa chu misawa

พิพพ.นฟิว.กรู.ซุลไ

sem kyepay tsul



chupa la loptsul

ส์รุ ฺฆๅ

tsema

Class Seven

ส์รามพารมิฤพานาพ์รานฉามส์สาวิรา

tseme mikpa yupay tsennyi

ะ เฉพาะ เวา เฉา เจา เป็นเป็น เ =गागीकेंन्कोन्चुन्से। अग्रयायम्युन्मने।

nga-am nga dang drawe gangsak gi tsu sung gi, gangsak gi gangsak gi tsu misung te, nyampar gyur ta re

মর্দর জ্বার্জন মর্দর জুন

ngunsum tsema

shintu kokgyur

ngungyur

Èश्र'नम्मार्ळन'या क्रेंगां युग युग येवरह क्रेंगां युग

jepak tsema

ૹૼૼૼૢૻૹૻૻઽ૽ૹૢૢૻૢૻઽૻૡૻૡ૽ૼૹૣ૽ૼૡૻૡૻૡૼૡ૽ૡૢૺૼૢૻૡૢૻ૽૽ૡ૽ૢૼૡૼૡૻૻૡૼ૽૾ૡ૽૿ૡ૽૿ૡ૽૿ૡૻ૽ૡ૾ૻૡ૽ૻૡૼૡૻૡ૽ૼ

tsemar gyurpa dro la pen shepa, tunpa deshek kyobla chaktsel lo

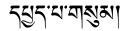
kokgyur

য়য়ৼৼৢ৾য়ৼৣয়৾য়৾য়ৼয়

sardu mi-luway rikpa

র্য-সের্থ-শ্রীশ-দ্রা

tsemay kyebu



chepa sum

Class Eight

કેર બેવ શું શુ

nyerlen gyi gyu

न्नन्येदे यात्र्याश

wangpoy suk

ষ্ট্রি বার্যামা

chiy suk



รามณานลิเฉลิเนลิะกิญานาส์มางสุ

tamelpay chikay rikpa chuchen

ริญานาซูามรามสมมาผู้ราวิไ

rikpa chimar tsam jor te

chakchen gyi rikpa yinpay chir



duse



jikse



sise

Class Nine

สังเพริสานาพยิรา

chu ngunpa dzu

क्रेंच-नयेंब-नयुगायाकेवा

lopun yiknyen

พธิ์ราวิฑายราณพายุพณาฏิรา

dzutik tarlam selje

कुव्य न न मी वर्त्त युग

gyalwa gendun drup

ส์มามรัสเนา

chu ngunpa

ส์ลามรัส จิพารกรุ้ามรายิพารกราจงงา

chungun sherab drime jedrang che



ধ্যপ্রধানপ্র শ্রিপান।

sempe jepa

sem yengpa

র্মমর্মার্মির্যায়

sem mepa

নন্দী'নন্দ'র্মা'নন্দী

ge dang mi ge

דאימלמו

jedrel

৽ঀৢৢ৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾৾য়য়য়৾য়ৢৢ৾৾য়৾৾৾ঀৢয়৾৾য়৾ jungwa che nam gyur jepa

reshik nammin yi-ong dang ten du dukngel kyobpay le ni gewa

สมาฐิสาพิรามิาวัราสวิาณมาสิามารกไท

nammin yi mi-ongway le ni mi-gewa

พิราวัราพิรามิาวัราณมาฤดุสายวิาณมาสิาญรามารรุสุ

yi-ong yi mi-ong le shenpay le ni lungmaten



ngotsa



trelyu

র্মুনা নার্তনা

sok chu

ম'স্ট্রি'মিরা

majin len



lokyem



dzun ma



trama



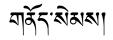
tsik tsub



tsik kyel

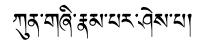
নধ্রন:শ্রুমাঝা

nabsem



nu-sum

र्वेजाःस्न lokta



kunshi nampar shepa

ননা.ছখা

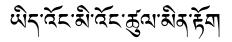
bakchak

Class Ten

dakdzin nyi kyi bakchak

नन्मा रहें र महेरा क्री

dakdzin nyi kye



yi-ong mi-ong tsulmin tok

२र्नेन.क्याश.बु.इंट.भुग

duchak shedang kye

এশ্ব:এশ্বরামা

le sak

वर्षित्र न्य वर्षित्र।

korwar kor



getsa

จพัร สุมุญาริส์ภุพา

sunam kyi tsok

ખે વેશ્વ માં છે તે વાશ

yeshe kyi tsok

ননীস্ত নাইন না getsa chupa

वेंगा क्षू भारती सामें रा

lokte getsa chu

र्विन्दं दिश्वान्त्री संगर्भना

kongtru getsa chu

le jepay lu de dang nyelway bardu kyewa shen gyi tsam mepa



narme



THE **GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM: PART 1**

The Asian Classics Institute

Please cut along the dotted line to make an insert for the binder spine

THIS COURSE USES A 2 INCH BINDER



COURSE

THE GREAT IDEAS OF BUDDHISM PART 1

A Review of The Great Books in Courses 1-5

